



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edw T 1000.465.910

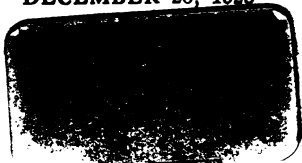


Harvard College Library

THE GIFT OF

GINN AND COMPANY

DECEMBER 26, 1923

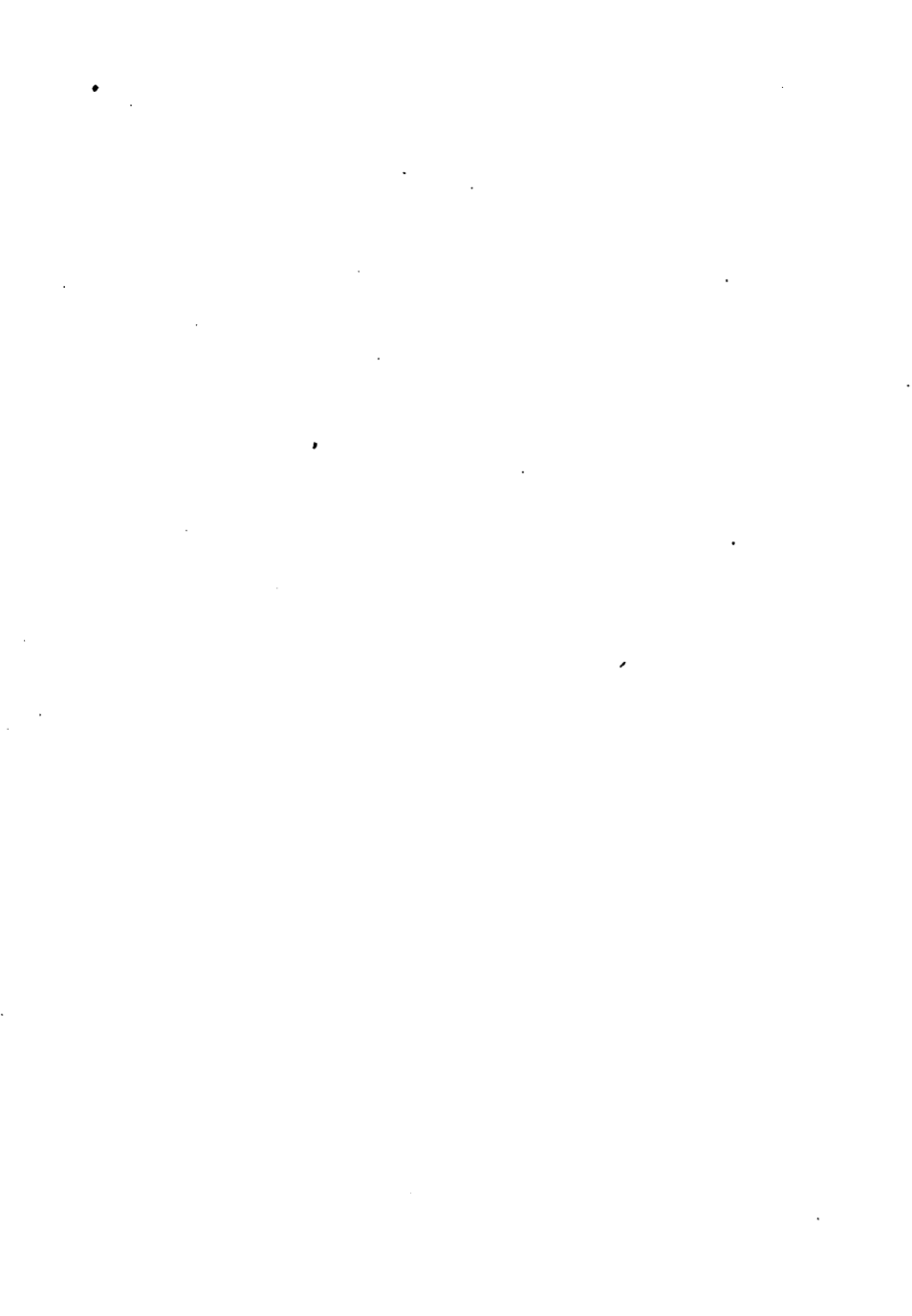


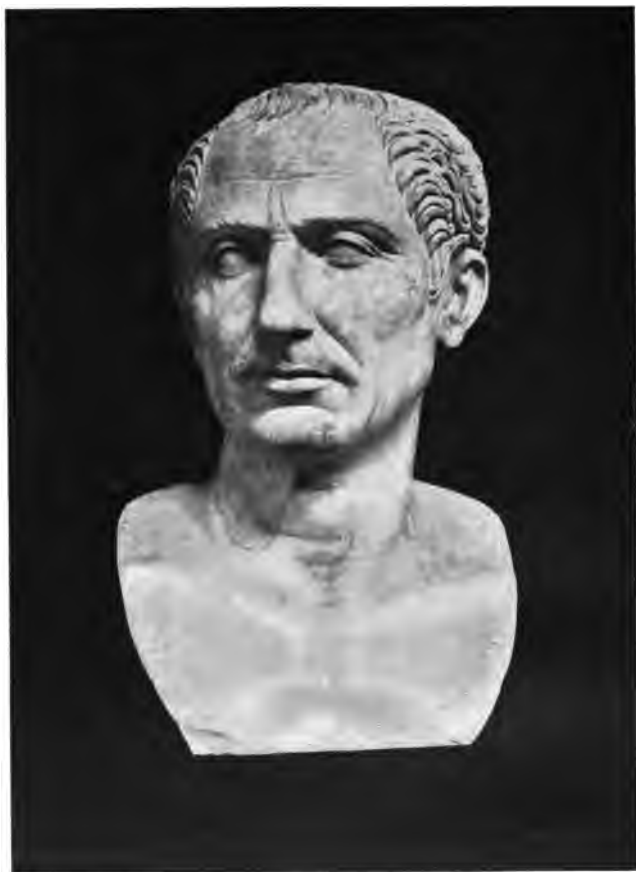
1.00



3 2044 097 076 608

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN





CAESAR.

Bust in the museum at Naples.

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN

A BEGINNER'S LATIN BOOK

BY

WILLIAM A. JENNER

AND

HENRY E. WILSON

OF THE BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK



ILLUSTRATED

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
NEW YORK CHICAGO

Educ T 1000.465.910

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY
DEC. 10, 1903

COPYRIGHT, 1910, BY
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY.

PREFACE.

THE rejuvenation of Latin must begin with the beginning. A first-year book, written a quarter of a century ago, revisions and imitations of the same and so-called Caesar books written on this antiquated plan, depend for interest as well as for apperception on English Grammar, about which the beginner knows little and cares less. After a year of remorseless grinding of forms and rules set in no relations of recognized utility and possessing no human interest, the survivor of this grilling process enters upon the second year's work not only "emptied of all desire to learn," but endowed with a mental attitude of hostility towards Latin. Unaccustomed to finding any vital significance in what he has been doing in the first year, he fails to respond to belated efforts to interest him in really attractive editions of Caesar, for the enjoyment of which his preparation has not only been utterly incompetent but positively prejudicial.

The authors of "Caesar's First Campaign" have earnestly endeavored to make first-year work interesting and valuable in itself, with a view to lessening the "mortality" in the first year as well as to giving the beginner such a mental attitude and equipment as shall make his subsequent Latin course pleasant and profitable. The beginner's natural love of a story, his elementary knowledge of geography and history, have been from the earliest pages depended upon for the promotion of interest and apperception. Through the use of illustrations and suggestive introductory lines a sustained effort has been made to keep the story idea before the pupil. Those who disapprove of the use of such devices in connection with the work of memorizing forms and

principles may profitably recall how powerful an educative force in economics was the political campaign of '96, how stimulative of geographical knowledge has been the recent polar controversy.

The special features that it is believed will make for the success of this book may be briefly summarized as follows :

Interest is awakened and maintained by the development of a story illuminated by appropriate illustrations.

Apperception as well as interest are promoted through geographical and historical rather than grammatical notions.

Development Exercises are provided, breaking up the Caesar text to follow in the next lesson into short and easy sentences, with whose forms and constructions the pupil is already familiar.

The Vocabulary is scientifically selected and is limited, not "principally," but exclusively, to Caesarean words.

A select list of 500 words used six or more times in Caesar is designated in heavy type as words to be memorized.

The Exercises for Practice and other reading Exercises are carefully calculated to utilize each word of the list of 500 six or more times.

Daily assignments of Written Work are given, inflecting in various ways this list of 500, furnishing drills of exceptional merit and saving the teacher the burden of written assignments.

As far as is practicable, the pupil is required to construct his own paradigms after having been given the necessary principles rather than to memorize quantities of printed forms.

Reviews occur recalling the frequently recurring words through derivatives and affording further drill upon these words through ingenious mechanical devices of demonstrated worth.

Rules and principles are taught inductively and concretely without presuming upon more than the most elementary knowledge of English Grammar on the part of the pupil.

The most elementary notions of English Grammar, such as the distinction of voice, are taught as new material as they occur in the lessons. No attempt is made in a "Grammatical Intro-

duction" to teach in a day what was once taught through years of toilsome drill in formal English Grammar.

The vocabularies are arranged, not in the conventional alphabetical order, but with regard to pedagogical principles—nouns together, then verbs, etc.

Pointed questions in the Latin-English exercises call for answers in Latin and serve a threefold purpose: (1) to punctuate the essential nature of the construction newly taught, (2) to recall the facts of the story already studied, and (3) to force the pupil not merely to translate English into Latin, but to compose a Latin expression of his own ideas.

The authors desire to acknowledge a large measure of indebtedness to Professor Gonzales Lodge of Teachers College, Columbia University, for his generous permission to make free use of his invaluable Vocabulary of High School Latin as well as for numerous suggestions of value in the compilation of the book; also to Principal George Swain, of Bay City, Michigan, for the permission to use his excellent photographs of the scenes of the campaign. Many suggestions of value are due to William T. McCoy, of the Wendell Phillips High School, Chicago, and to Miss Ella G. Marthens, of the Shortridge High School, Indianapolis; to Dr. A. F. Nightingale, Superintendent of the Cook County (Illinois) Schools; to Francis H. Lee, of the Central High School, Philadelphia; and to Mrs. C. P. Olmstead, of the Lake View High School, Chicago.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS	xi
INTRODUCTION	xv
LESSON	
I. First Declension of Nouns	1
II. Present Indicative of Sum	4
III. Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.— Accusative of Direct Object	6
IV. Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation.— The Genitive Case	8
V. Second Declension of Nouns.— The Dative Case	11
VI. Present Indicative Active and Passive of the Second Con- jugation	14
VII. Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension.— Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	17
VIII. Third Declension of Nouns: Consonant Stems	20
IX. Present Indicative Active and Passive of the Third Con- jugation	22
X. Third Declension. I Stems (Nouns and Adjectives)	25
<i>First Review</i>	27
XI. Declension of the Demonstrative Hic .— Ablative of Sepa- ration	29
XII. Declension of the Demonstrative Is .— The Possessive Genitive	31
XIII. The Relative Pronoun	34
XIV. Second Declension Nouns in ius and ium .— Ablative of Accompaniment	36
XV. Verbs of the Third Conjugation in io .— Ablative of Means	39
XVI. Perfect Indicative of Sum . Comparison of Adjectives	42
XVII. Perfect Indicative Active of the First Three Conjugations: Principal Parts	45
XVIII. Imperfect and Future of Sum .— Ablative of Specification	48

LESSON		PAGE
XIX.	Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active of Three Conjugations	50
XX.	Imperfect Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. — Ablative of Cause	53
	<i>Second Review</i>	56
XXI.	Imperfect Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation. — Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	57
XXII.	The Fourth Declension of Nouns	60
XXIII.	Future Indicative Active and Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	63
XXIV.	Future Indicative Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation. — The Genitive of the Whole	65
XXV.	Imperfect Indicative Active and Passive of the Third Conjugation in <i>io</i> . — Accusative of Extent	68
XXVI.	Fifth Declension of Nouns. — Declension of the Reflexive and Intensive Pronouns	71
	<i>Third Review</i> : Rules for the Gender of Third Declension Nouns	74
XXVII.	Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of Three Conjugations. — Ablative of Agency	76
XXVIII.	Declension of <i>īdem</i> . — Synopsis of Verbs. — Ablative of Time	79
XXIX.	Present Subjunctive Active and Passive. — Declension of <i>Ille</i>	82
XXX.	Imperfect Subjunctive Active and Passive. — Clauses of Purpose	85
XXXI.	Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Active and Passive. — Result Clauses	88
XXXII.	Place to Which; Place from Which. — Declension of <i>Domus</i>	92
XXXIII.	Fourth Conjugation of Verbs. — Ablative of Place in Which	95
XXXIV.	Participles. — The Dative with Special Verbs	98
	<i>Fourth Review</i>	101
XXXV.	The Use of Participles in the Ablative Absolute	102

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

LESSON		PAGE
XXXVI.	Formation and Uses of Infinitives	105
XXXVII.	Declension of Duo . — Conjugation of Possu m. — Dative with Adjectives	109
XXXVIII.	Infinitive in Indirect Discourse	111
XXXIX.	Deponent Verbs. — The Ablative with Ūtor , etc.	115
XL.	Ablative and Genitive of Quality. — Declension of Vis	118
XLI.	Comparison of Irregular Adjectives, Facilis , Liber , etc. — Conjugation of Eō	122
XLII.	Ablative of Manner. — Cum Temporal.	125
	<i>Fifth Review</i>	128
XLIII.	Comparison of Irregular Adjectives (<i>continued</i>). — Declension of Plūs	129
XLIV.	Comparison of Irregular Adjectives (<i>continued</i>). — Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	132
XLV.	Conjugation of Volō , Nōlō , Mālō	135
XLVI.	Comparison of Irregular Adverbs. — Ablative of Comparison	137
XLVII.	Relative Clauses of Purpose	140
XLVIII.	Ablative of Degree of Difference	143
XLIX.	Cum Causal and Concessive	145
	<i>Sixth Review</i>	148
L.	Conjugation of Ferō and its Compounds	150
LI.	Dative of the Possessor	152
LII.	Compounds of Sum . — Dative with Compound Verbs	155
LIII.	Gerunds and Gerundives	157
LIV.	Formation and Uses of Supines. — Various Ways of Expressing Purpose	160
	<i>Seventh Review</i>	163
LV.	Conjugation of Fīō . — Compounds of Faciō	164
LVI.	The Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of Agent	168
LVII.	Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns. — Interrogative Particles. — Direct Questions	170
LVIII.	Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive. — Verbs of Fearing with the Subjunctive	174

LESSON	PAGE
LIX. Subjective and Objective Genitives	177
LX. Dative of Purpose.—Accusative with Compound Verbs .	179
LXI. The Imperative Mood.—Commands and Exhortations .	182
<i>Eighth Review</i>	184
LXII. Personal Pronouns. — Possessive Adjectives	185
LXIII. Conditional Sentences	188
LXIV. Indirect Questions. — Sequence of Tenses	191
LXV. Defective and Impersonal Verbs	195
LXVI. Verbs with Two Accusatives	198
<i>Ninth Review</i>	201
LXVII. The Optative Subjunctive	202
LXVIII. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. — <i>Quod</i> Causal	204
LXIX. Numeral Adjectives	207
LXX. Temporal Clauses with <i>Postquam</i> , <i>Ubi</i> , <i>Priusquam</i> . — Review of Subjunctives	210
<i>Tenth Review</i>	213
CHAPTERS XVIII-XXIX OF CAESAR'S GALlic WAR	215-243
APPENDIX	
Tables of Declensions, Conjugations, Comparisons, and Numerals	247
Models of Original Schemes for Form Drill	274
List of Five Hundred Words	275
Syntactical Syllabus	279
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	283
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	301
INDEX	309

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

IN presenting to the educational public a text-book of an unconventional type, containing many novel devices for the promotion of interest and apperception, for the acquisition of vocabulary and forms, and for the formation of proper methods of attack in translation, the authors desire at the outset to make an appeal for the sympathetic coöperation of the teacher, and to beg the indulgence of discussing in some detail those features of the work requiring attention in order to get the best results from its pursuit. The teacher who looks upon devices calculated to add attractiveness to his subject as a waste of time is comparable to the teamster who lacks the time to oil his wagon axles. Insistence upon the constant use of maps and of all legitimate helps to the understanding of the story, will surely be repaid in a greatly increased capacity for progress on the part of the class.

The same may be said of the time spent with the class in giving helpful hints as to the preparation of the next day's lesson. All model sentences and observations in the first half of a lesson should be read over with the pupil in advance. Attention should be repeatedly called to the importance of memorizing the words in heavy type in the vocabularies, to any peculiarities in their inflection and in the next day's Written Work to keep the pupil from falling into pitfalls of error. In the second half of a lesson, the benefit to be derived from English-Latin exercises may be greatly increased by preparatory work that will rivet the pupil's attention upon those points requiring emphasis or caution. In this way the teacher makes his requirements so definite as to leave little latitude for excusable error.

The seventy lessons are intended to occupy one hundred forty teaching days. The first ten lessons are somewhat shortened, allow-

ing for abundant oral drill on forms and for emphasis on the sketches of Caesar's life, which the pupil should be required to relate in substance, as essential to interest in the narrative to follow. Beginning with Lesson XIV, the lessons admit of a natural division into two days' work, the first to comprise the reading of the text, the memorizing of the heavy type words in the vocabularies, of the paradigms, and rules, the performance of the Written Work and the translation of the Latin-English division of the Exercises for Practice. The second day's work will then comprise the writing out as a preparation for oral translation of the English-Latin division of the Exercises for Practice, the translation of the Development Exercise with review of the paradigms and rules taught in the first half of the lesson.

Especial attention is requested to the schemes for the acquisition of a vocabulary. To require the pupil to memorize and inflect all words can result only in failure. The words printed in heavy type are those occurring six or more times in Caesar, as shown by the Lodge Vocabulary of High School Latin, and should be thoroughly memorized. In the Word List (pp. 275-278), the most important of these heavy type words are assembled, while they are made to occur six or more times in the various exercises for reading. The aim perfectly to familiarize the pupil with this select vocabulary is still further attained through the Written Work, which as far as is practicable is limited to the inflection in various ways of these frequently used words. The authors have found it helpful in class to assign the Written Work in segments for board work. This board work, when corrected and rated by the teacher, encourages the diligent and enables all pupils to correct their written exercises, relieving the teacher of the burden of revising the same.

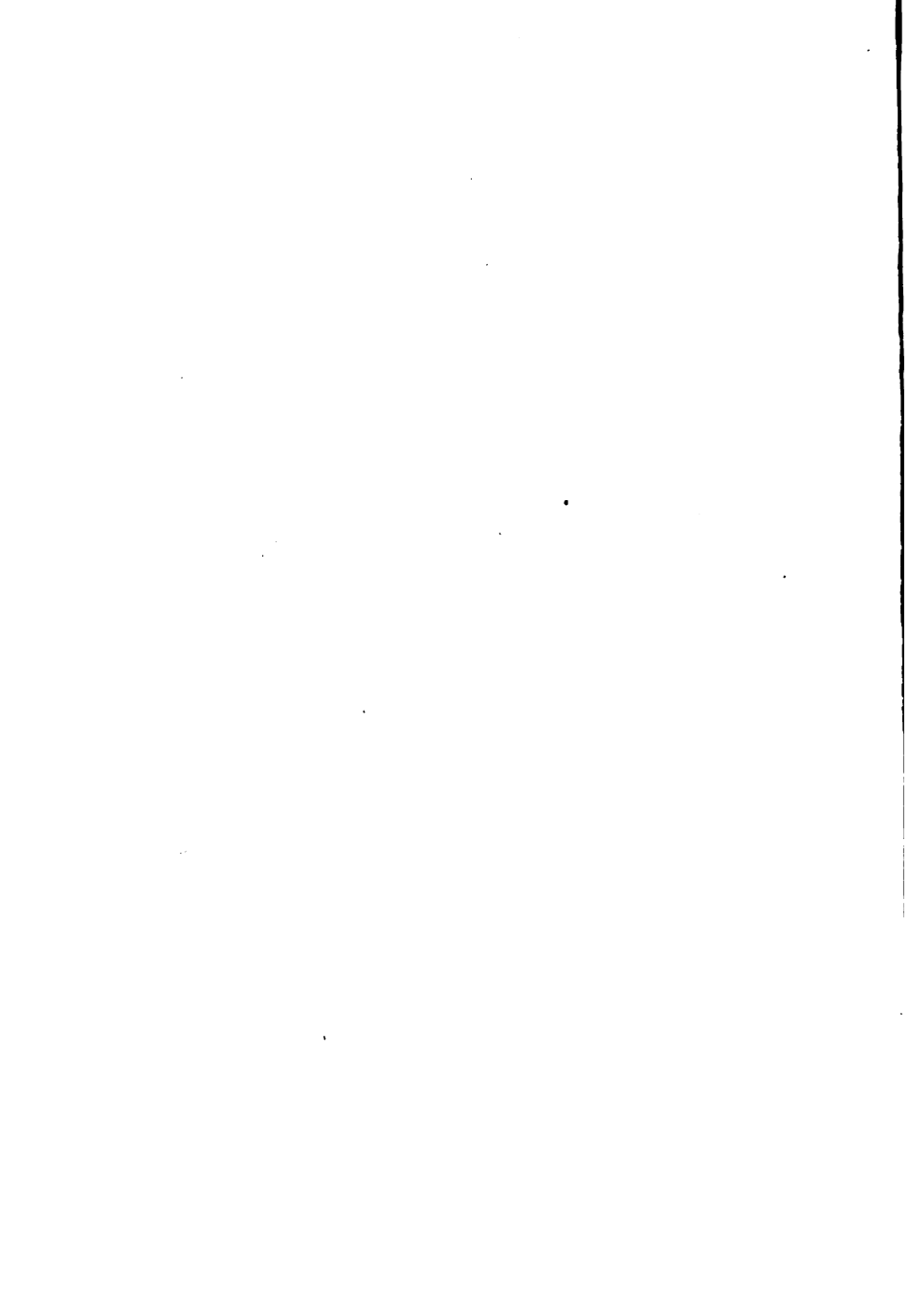
The Reviews also can be made most effective through board assignments, which like the daily Written Work when corrected and rated by the teacher will enable the pupil to correct his own home work. The authors have found it possible to devote two days to these Reviews and still have left twenty-five out of one hundred eighty-five teaching days for the reading of the text beyond the

seventy lessons. Such written tests as they have given, the authors have found it practicable to give on the second day of review work.

The original devices such as consecutive declensions, conjugations, synopses, and consecutive infinitives and participles have been thoroughly tested out and found practicable by the authors. While they may require a little time and patience on the part of the instructor to render intelligible to the pupil, they will be found to repay the effort, as even the dullest pupil will take an active interest in this mechanical form of drill and will acquire a considerable proficiency in forms.

It should be borne in mind that it is of vastly more importance to complete the seventy lessons and the ten Reviews in a thorough manner than to complete the reading of the twenty-nine chapters. The authors believe that the teacher who covers with his class only the seventy lessons—and the weakest teacher will hardly fail to do more than this—will have given his pupils a better preparation to read Caesar than can be obtained by the use of any beginning book heretofore published. At the worst, the class will have only to complete the story of the Helvetian War in the second year in a Caesar text without the help of the Development Exercises.

In conclusion, the authors wish to state that the directions contained in the latter Reviews as to the use of the Word List and Syntactical Syllabus (pp. 275–281) are intended to convey nothing more than hints as to the possibilities of their use in preparation for final examinations. These compilations will be found to afford large opportunities for the exercise of ingenuity in working out final reviews.



INTRODUCTION.

The sections of this chapter are intended only for reference. Pronunciation can be best acquired through imitation. Rules are valuable only as checks and correctives.

1. The Latin Language is so named because it was first spoken by the *Latini*, or Latins, an ancient tribe which lived in the vicinity of Rome. Spreading gradually as the conquests of the Latins increased, it finally became the official language of the Roman Empire, which included at one time the whole western civilized world.

During the long centuries of Roman supremacy in Europe, Latin came to have a peculiar preëminence, which no other language has ever enjoyed. French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese are merely the modern representatives of Latin as it was spoken in various parts of the Roman Empire. Through the Middle Ages and down to modern times, Latin was the language of learning and diplomacy. It is estimated that about forty per cent of all English words are derived from Latin.

THE ALPHABET.

2. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*. The letter *i* does duty for both *i* and *j*.

3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The other letters are consonants. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au, eu, ui*.

PRONUNCIATION (Roman Method).

4.

Vowels.

The mark *˘* over a vowel means that it is short, the mark — that it is long. An unmarked vowel is presumed to be short.

ā is pronounced as the first *a* in *aha*; ă as the last *a* in *aha*.

ē is pronounced as *e* in *met*; ĕ as the *e* in *they*.

ī is pronounced as *i* in *pin*; ĭ as the *i* in *machine*.

ō is pronounced as the first *o* in *oho*; ȝ as the last *o* in *oho*.

ū is pronounced as *u* in *pull*; ū as the *oo* in *pool*.

Comparison of the long and short sounds shows no essential difference in quality, but a difference only in the time taken to pronounce them. Hence the quantity of Latin vowels becomes important.

5.

Consonants.

c and *g* are always hard, as *c* in *come*
and *g* in *go*.

i consonant as *y* in *yet*.

s always sharp, as in *sun*, *sea*.

t always as *t* in *time*, never as in *nation*.

v always as *w* in *wine*.

x like *ks*.

bs like *ps*.

bt like *pt*.

ch like *ch* in *chasm*.

6.

Diphthongs

ae as *ai* in *aisles*.

oe as *oi* in *oil*.

au as *ow* in *owl*.

eu as *eu* in *feud*.

ei as *ei* in *eight*.

ui as *we*.

7.

SYLLABLES.

(1) A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels or diphthongs; as, *mī-les*, *fi-ne*, *mō-re*, *fu-rō-re*, *re-si-de*.

(2) In dividing words into syllables, note that:—

(a) A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the following vowel; as, *ha-bē-mus*.

(b) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are joined with the following as can be pronounced with it; as, *frā-trem*, *cō-gnō-scō*, *for-tis*.

(c) Compound words are divided into their component parts; as, *ab-sum*.

(d) Doubled consonants are separated; as, *fos-sa*.

8. QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

(1) Vowels are long or short. The long vowels in this book are marked long. All others must be considered short.

(2) A syllable is long or short according to the time it takes to pronounce it.

(3) A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as, *dīcō*.

(4) A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by the double consonants *x* and *z*, as in *sex*, or followed by two consonants, as in *para*, except a mute and liquid. The mutes are *b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t*, and the liquids are *l, m, n, r*. The vowel in a syllable long by position is given the short sound in pronunciation; as, *sēx, pārē*.

9. RULES FOR QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

(1) A vowel followed by another vowel or *h* is short; as, *Galī-a, prō-hi-bē-ō*.

(2) Vowels resulting from contraction are long; as, *cō-ā-gō* gives *cō-gō*.

(3) Vowels are long before *nf, ns, nct, ncs*; as, *cōnferō, cōnsilium, iūnctus*.

(4) Diphthongs are long; as, *cāusa*.

10.

ACCENT.

(1) Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as, *bellum, pater*.

(2) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (next to the last syllable) if that is long; as, *Rōmānus*; otherwise they are accented on the antepenult (the syllable before the penult); as, *prōvincia*.

(3) A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls on the syllable before the enclitic; as, *Belgāque, ibisne*.

11. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.**(1) Masculine gender.**

(a) Names of males are masculine gender; as, **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **rēx**, *king*.

(b) Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine; as, **Rhēnus**, *the Rhine*.

(2) Feminine gender.

(a) Names of females are feminine; as, **Cornēlia**, *Cornelia*; **rēgina**, *queen*.

(b) Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine; as, **Dēlos**, *the island of Delos*; **Rōma**, *Rome*.

(3) Neuter gender.

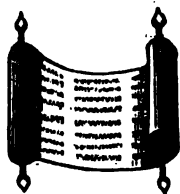
Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, and clauses used as nouns are neuter; as, **nihil**, *nothing*; **fās**, *right*.

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN.

LESSON I.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

A FOREWORD. We are about to begin reading a story of the ancient Swiss, just as it was written in the Latin tongue nearly 2000 years ago. The author of this story, Julius Caesar, was one of the most remarkable men that ever lived. He was born in the city of Rome one hundred years before Christ. Most of the prominent Romans of the time came from rural districts, but Caesar, though city-bred, was too great to lead a life of idle pleasure, as did most of his fellows.



ROMAN BOOKS WERE
SCROLLS WHICH
WERE WRITTEN WITH
AN IRON STYLUS.

1. In English there are three cases: nominative, possessive, and objective. In Latin there are six: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative. The **nominative** is the case of the subject; the **genitive** generally denotes possession and is rendered either by the English possessive or by the objective case with *of*. The **dative** is usually the case of the indirect object; and the **accusative**, of the direct object. The **vocative**, the case of direct address, occurs very infrequently in Latin, and as it is ordinarily the same as the nominative in form, it is omitted in the paradigms to follow. The use of the **ablative** may be best learned from the observation of the paradigms.

2. Latin nouns are divided into five **declensions**, or classes, which are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular. In the First Declension, this distinguishing

ending is *-ae*. By dropping this ending from the genitive singular, we find the *base*, the part of the noun which remains unchanged throughout the declension, as in the paradigm below.

3. Latin nouns of the First Declension end in the nominative in *ā*. All are feminine, except names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months, which are masculine.

4.

PARADIGM.

	<i>fossa</i> , ditch ; <i>BASE</i> , <i>foss-</i> .	
	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>fossa</i> , a ditch (as subject)	<i>-a</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>fossae</i> , of a ditch	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>fossae</i> , to or for a ditch	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>fossam</i> , a ditch (as object)	<i>-am</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>fossā</i> , by, from, in, or with a ditch	<i>-ā</i>
	PLURAL.	
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>fossae</i> , ditches (as subject)	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>fossarum</i> , of ditches	<i>-arum</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>fossis</i> , to or for ditches	<i>-is</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>fossas</i> , ditches (as object)	<i>-as</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>fossis</i> , by, from, in, or with ditches	<i>-is</i>

Observe : —

(1) that the ablative singular ending *-ā* is long.

(2) that there are no articles, definite or indefinite, in Latin. Therefore *fossa* may mean *a ditch*, *the ditch*, or simply *ditch*.

5.

VOCABULARY.

Memorize all words in heavy type. Use other words for reference in written work and exercises.

Belga, *-ae*, *m.*, *Belgian*.

causa, *-ae*, *f.*, *reason*.

fossa, *-ae*, *f.*, *ditch* or *trench*.

fuga, *-ae*, *f.*, *flight*.

Gallia, *-ae*, *f.*, *Gaul*, the Roman name for a country comprising France, Belgium, Switzerland, and northern Italy.

Hispania, *-ae*, *f.*, *Spain*.

lingua, *-ae*, *f.*, *language*.

provincia, *-ae*, *f.*, *province*.

Séquana, *-ae*, *m.*, *the Seine*.

Note : —

- (1) that two of the above nouns are masculine. Why?
- (2) that *Sēquana* has no plural. Why not?
- (3) that four of the nouns have bases ending in a vowel. Give these bases.

6.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline with full names of cases, and with meanings, as in § 4, the words: *fuga, lingua, prōvincia*.¹
- (2) Translate into Latin § 7-II, as a preparation for reciting it orally.
- (3) Mark all long vowels, noting how a long penult must be accented as directed in the Introduction, § 10.

7.

EXERCISES.

(Pronounce, give G. N. C.,² and then translate, noting that several of the forms may be in more than one case and must be translated accordingly.)

I. (1) Belgās. (2) Linguae. (3) Sēquanam. (4) Fugā.
 (5) Belgīs. (6) Lingua Galliae. (7) Fugam Belgārum.
 (8) Prōvinciae Hispāniae. (9) Linguā prōvinciae. (10) Causās Belgārum. (11) Fossā. (12) Causa fugae.

II. (1) Of Gaul. (2) With the Belgians. (3) The Seine (used as object). (4) For the language. (5) To the provinces.
 (6) By the Seine. (7) To the Belgians. (8) Of the provinces.
 (9) In the language of Spain. (10) To the province of the Belgians.

¹ Observe that these words appear in the vocabulary in heavy type, signifying that they occur six or more times in Caesar according to the Lodge Vocabulary of High School Latin. There are over 600 of these words in Caesar's First Campaign. Five hundred that occur most frequently have been assembled in the Word List on pages 275-278.

² Throughout this book, the abbreviation G. N. C. will be used for gender, number, case, and is recommended for use in recitation.

LESSON II.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *SUM*.

A FLOGGING ROMAN SCHOOL-MASTER.

CAESAR'S BOYHOOD. The fact that Julius Caesar was not like other city boys may have been due in part to his mother, who was a very upright and cultivated woman. She took charge of his early education and never sent him to the Roman schools, whose flogging masters were often very cruel to the pupils. She later placed him under a tutor, a learned Gaul, to whom Caesar doubtless owed his lively interest in the people of that country. As was the fashion in that day, the young Roman took a course in oratory, in which he made so marked progress that he became one of the ablest public speakers of his time.

8.

PARADIGM.

CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *Sum*.

PRIN. PARTS: pres. ind. *sum*, *I am*; pres. inf. *esse*, *to be*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1st Person	<i>sum</i> , I am.	<i>sumus</i> , we are.
2d Person	<i>es</i> , you are.	<i>estis</i> , you are.
3d Person	<i>est</i> , he (she or it) is.	<i>sunt</i> , they are.

9. Adjectives of the First Declension are declined exactly like nouns of the same declension. All adjectives given in the vocabulary below are feminine adjectives of the First Declension. Observe the combination *fossa magna*, *a great ditch*; bases *foss-māgn-*.

Note that in Latin the adjective may follow the noun.

10.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Nostra causa est bona.* — *Our reason is good.* (2) *Nostrae causae sunt bonae.* — *Our reasons are good.*

Observe:—

(1) that in the above sentences the subjects *causa* and *causae* are in the nominative case.

(2) that *nostra* and *nostrae*, attributive adjectives and *bona* and *bonae*, predicate adjectives, agree in G. N. C. with these nouns.

(3) that the verb in sentence 1 is 3d singular because the subject is 3d singular, and the verb in sentence 2 is 3d plural because the subject is 3d plural.

11. *RULES.* — 1. *The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.*

2. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

12.

VOCABULARY.

Memorize all words in heavy type. Use other words for reference.

Celta, -ae, m., a *Celt*.

bona, good.

divisa, divided.

magna, great.

in, preposition, with ablative, *in* or *on*; with accusative, *into*, *to*, or *upon*.

nostra, our.

proxima, nearest.

reliqua, remaining, the-rest-of.

tertia, third.

13.

WRITTEN WORK.

Decline together, writing in full, names of cases and meanings:—

Gallia divisa (singular only), *nostra causa*, *provincia proxima*.

14.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) *Magnae causae* (translate in three ways); *proxima provincia*; *nostrarum causarum*. (2) *Gallia est proxima*. (3) *Belgae sumus*. (4) *Provincia est divisa*. (5) *Hispania est proxima*. (6) *Nostrae linguae sunt bonae*. (7) *Sum in Gallia*. (8) *Nostrae provinciae sunt magnae*. (9) *Es in provincia*.

II. (1) Of our reasons; in our trenches; to the great provinces. (2) Gaul is divided. (3) The trenches are nearest. (4) The provinces are large. (5) The third trench is nearest. (6) The Celts are in the great province. (7) You (plu.) are in Gaul.

LESSON III.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—
ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

THE TEMPLE IN WHICH CAESAR SERVED AS PRIEST.

A YOUTHFUL OFFICIAL. Roman boys became voters at seventeen, but even before that age, Caesar was appointed through influential relatives to a priestly office in the temple of Jupiter, the principal god of the Romans. This gave him an honorable social position and a fixed income. Many of his young friends,

finding themselves in such comfortable positions, were so well satisfied that they made no efforts to improve themselves, but Caesar could never rest contented so long as there was any higher honor to be won.

15. Latin verbs are divided into four conjugations, which are distinguished from one another by the vowel preceding *-re*, the ending of the present infinitive. In the First Conjugation, this characteristic vowel is *ā*, as may be seen from the principal parts and stem of *liberō* in the following paradigm.

16.

PARADIGM.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE VERB *Libērō*.

PRIN. PARTS: pres. ind. *liberō*, *I liberate*; pres. inf. *liberāre*, *to liberate*.
PRES. STEM: *liberā-*.

SINGULAR.

1st Person	<i>liberō</i> , I liberate.
2d Person	<i>liberās</i> , you liberate.
3d Person	<i>liberat</i> , he liberates.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

<i>-ō</i> (or <i>-m</i> as in <i>sum</i>), I.
<i>-s</i> , you (or thou).
<i>-t</i> , he (or she or it).

PLURAL.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

1st Person	liberāmus, we liberate.
2d Person	liberātis, you liberate.
3d Person	liberant, they liberate.

-mus, we.
-tis, you.
-nt, they.

Observe: —

(1) that the **personal endings** are so called because they take the place of personal pronouns, which are rarely expressed as subjects. The above endings are used with all tenses of the active voice except the perfect indicative.

(2) that these personal endings are added to the present stem **liberā-** except in the first person singular, where **ā** of the stem is lost.

(3) that the present stem is found by dropping **-re**, the last two letters of the present infinitive.

(4) that **a** is short before **-t** and **-nt** of the third person.

17. MODEL SENTENCE.

Belgae Galliam occupant. — *The Belgians seize Gaul.*

Observe: —

(1) that **occupō** is a transitive verb.

(2) that **Galliam**, its direct object, is put in the accusative case.

18. **RULE.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative case.*

19. VOCABULARY.

appellō, appellāre, *call, name.*

occupō, occupāre, *seize.*

importō, importāre, *import, carry in.*

superō, superāre, *conquer, overcome.*

incitō, incitāre, *incite, arouse.*

västō, västāre, *lay waste, ravage.*

liberō, liberāre, *liberate, free.*

20. WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write the present stem of each verb in the above vocabulary.

(2) Write the present indicative active of **appellō** and **occupō** with meaning of each form.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) Appellāmus; occupātis; vāstant; incitās; superant. (2) Belgae superant. (3) Celtae Belgās superant. (4) Prōvinciam vāstātis. (5) Fossam occupāmus. (6) Galliam superās. (7) Nostra fuga Belgās incitat. (8) Belgae prōvinciam vāstant. (9) Celtae māgnam fossam occupant. (10) Hispānia est māgna prōvincia.

II. (1) You (sing.) call; they are liberating¹; we lay waste; you² are importing; he does arouse Spain. (2) The Belgians are arousing Gaul. (3) The flight arouses the Celts. (4) We are conquering the provinces. (5) You seize the nearest trenches. (6) The Celts are laying waste our provinces.

¹ The Latin verb *liberō* may mean *I am liberating* or *I do liberate* as well as *I liberate*. In other words, the progressive and emphatic forms of the English verb may be translated into Latin by the same word as is used to express the ordinary declarative sense.

² Unless otherwise directed, the pronoun *you* should be regarded as plural.

LESSON IV.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.
— THE GENITIVE CASE.



THE GREAT HALL OF A ROMAN HOUSE.

CAESAR'S WIFE. When Caesar was about twenty years old, he lost his political office and all his property and had to flee from Rome for his life, because he firmly refused to obey the orders of a tyrannical ruler and give up his girl-wife Cornelia. Such loyalty to those he loved characterized Caesar throughout his life.

22. When the subject of a verb does something, we say the verb is in the **active voice**, as *he liberates, he is liberating, or he does liberate*. When something is done to the subject, we say the verb is in the **passive voice**, as *he is liberated, or he is being liberated*.

23.

PARADIGM.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE VERB *Liberō*.

	SINGULAR.	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1st Person	liberor, I am liberated	-r
2d Person	liberāris (liberāre), you are liberated	-ris (or -re)
3d Person	liberātur, he is liberated	-tur
	PLURAL.	PERSONAL ENDINGS.
1st Person	liberāmur, we are liberated	-mur
2d Person	liberāmini, you are liberated	-mini
3d Person	liberantur, they are liberated	-ntur

Observe : —

(1) that the passive forms differ from the corresponding active forms only in the personal endings.

(2) that as in the active voice, the personal endings, which take the place of personal pronouns, are added to the present stem *liberā-* except in the first singular, where *ā* of the stem is lost.

(3) that the *a* is short only before -nt of the plural.

24.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Belgae Galliam prōvinciam appellant.* — *The Belgians call Gaul a province.* (2) *Gallia prōvincia appellātur.* — *Gaul is called a province.* (3) *Fossa Belgārum est lāta.* — *The Belgians' trench is wide.*

Observe : —

(1) that in sentence 1 *prōvinciam*, a predicate noun, describes *Galliam*, means the same thing, and agrees with it in the accusative. This construction is known as the **predicate accusative**.

(2) that in sentence 2 *prōvincia*, a predicate noun, describes

Gallia, means the same thing, and agrees with it in the nominative. This construction is known as the **predicate nominative**.

(3) that in sentence 1 the verb is in the active voice, because the subject, *Belgae*, does something, while in sentence 2 the verb is in the passive voice, because something is done to the subject.

(4) that in sentence 3 *Belgārum* is used to limit or define *fossa* and does not mean the same person or thing, and is put in the genitive.

25. RULES. — 1. *A noun used to describe another noun, and denoting the same person or thing, agrees with it in case.*

2. *A noun used to define or limit another noun, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.*

26.**VOCABULARY.**

accūsō, *accūsāre*, *accuse*, *blame*.

lāta, *wide*, *broad*.

armō, *armāre*, *arm*, *equip*.

longa, *long*.

commeō, *commeāre*, *go often*, *resort*.

27.**WRITTEN WORK.**

Write out with meanings the present indicative, active and passive, of *accūsō* and *armō*, underlining the personal endings.

28.**EXERCISES.**

(Note carefully the voice as well as person and number of all verb forms.)

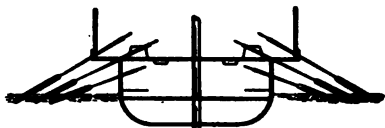
I. (1) *Accūsās*; *accūsāris*; *accūsāmus*; *accūsāmur*; *superātis*; *superāminī*; *appellātur*. (2) *Belgae superantur*. (3) *Prōvincia Celtārum est magna*. (4) *Celtae accūsantur*. (5) *Fossae Belgārum occupantur*. (6) *Reliquae prōvinciae vāstantur*. (7) *Proxima prōvincia Hispānia appellātur*. (8) *Belgae nostrā linguā Celtāe appellantur*. (9) *Belgās nostrā linguā Celtās appellāmus*.

II. (1) We arm, we are armed; you call, you are called (sing.); he conquers, he is conquered; you are accused; they are liberated. (2) The Belgians are liberated. (3) The province is aroused. (4) Spain is called a large province. (5) We call Spain a large vince.

LESSON V.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—THE DATIVE CASE

THE PIRATES. — At one time Caesar went on a sea voyage and was captured by some pirates who were cruising about in an old trireme, or war galley. He took his capture very coolly and charmed the rascals by wit and good humor till his friends could collect money for his ransom. As soon as he was free, he made good a promise, which his captors had taken as a joke; and getting together some ships, he captured and hanged the whole band.



SECTION OF A TRIREME. NOTE HOW THE GALLEY SLAVES ROWED IN THREE ROWS.

29. Nouns of the Second Declension end in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir*, *-um*. Those ending in *-um* are neuter; most others are masculine.

30.

PARADIGM.

Gallus, a *Gaul*; *Base*, *Gall-*.

	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>Gallus</i> , the Gaul (as subject)	<i>-us</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Galli</i> , of the Gaul	<i>-i</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>Gallō</i> , to or for the Gaul	<i>-ō</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Gallum</i> , the Gaul (as object)	<i>-um</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>Gallō</i> , by, from, in, or with the Gaul	<i>-ō</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>Galli</i> , the Gauls (as subject)	<i>-i</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Gallōrum</i> , of the Gauls	<i>-ōrum</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>Gallīs</i> , to or for the Gauls	<i>-īs</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>Gallōs</i> , the Gauls (as object)	<i>-ōs</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>Gallīs</i> , by, from, in, or with the Gauls	<i>-īs</i>

Observe: —

(1) that the ending of the genitive singular is **-i**, which is the distinguishing ending of this declension.

(2) that by dropping this ending from the genitive singular, we obtain the base, **Gall-**.

The vocative singular of Second Declension nouns in **-us** ends in **-e**, *i.e.* **Galle, O Gaul**. In all other nouns of all declensions, the vocative of each number is the same as the nominative of the same number.

31. Masculine adjectives ending in **-us** are declined exactly like **Gallus**. All the adjectives already studied, except **nostra**, have this ending in the masculine, as **magnus Gallus**, *the large Gaul*.

32.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) **Carrōs Gallis damus.** — *We give carts to the Gauls.* (2) **Galli ad Hispaniam commeant.** — *Gauls go-often to Spain.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 **carrōs**, the direct object, is in the accusative, and that **Gallis**, the indirect object, is in the dative.

(2) that in sentence 2 the prepositional phrase, *to Spain*, is used with a verb denoting motion or direction and is expressed in Latin by **ad** with the accusative. On the other hand, in sentence 1 the phrase, *to the Gauls*, is used with the verb *give*, conveying no idea of motion or direction, and is put in the dative.

33. RULE. — *The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative case.*

34.

VOCABULARY.

amicus, **-i**, m., *friend*.

Aquitānus, **-i**, m., *Aquitanian*, a native of the southwestern part of France.

carrus, **-i**, m., *cart*.

dō, dare, *give*.

-d, prep., *to or towards*, governing acc.

Gallus, **-i**, m., *Gaul*, a native of Gallia.

Germanus, **-i**, m., *German*.

numerus, **-i**, m., *number*.

Oceanus, **-i**, m., *ocean*.

vicus, **-i**, m., *village*.

35.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline in full with meanings *bonus amicus* and *proximus numerus*, including the vocative.

(2) Conjugate with meanings in the present indicative, active and passive, the verb *dō*.¹

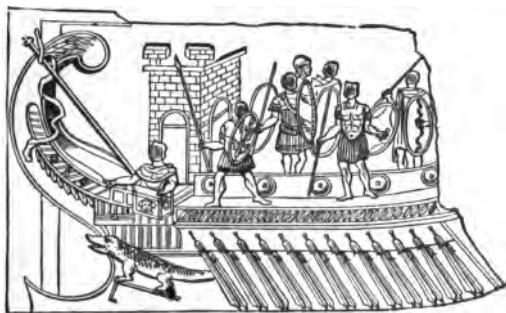
36.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) *Belgās Gallōs appellant; Belgae Galli appellantur.* (2) *Proximī vicī sunt in prōvinciā.* (3) *Ad prōvinciam commeāmus.* (4) *Carrōs Gallīs datis.* (5) *Aquitānī ad proximum Ōceanum commeant.* (6) *Galli proximōs amīcōs armant.* (7) *Reliquī vicī Gallīs dantur.* (8) *Germānī māgnōs vicōs Gallīs dant.* (9) *Germānī ad māgnōs vicōs Gallōrum commeant.* (10) *Nostrā linguā Aquitānī Galli appellantur.*

II. (1) The villages are large. (2) They ravage the large villages. (3) We give the villages to the Gauls. (4) The Gauls often-go-to the villages of the Germans. (5) The Gauls give the trenches to the Germans. (6) We import the rest-of-the carts to our provinces.

¹ Note that *a* of the stem of the verb *dō* is short, but is lengthened in the 2d singular. So we have *dō, dās, dat, damus, datis, dant*, in the present indicative active.



ROMAN WAR GALLEY.

LESSON VI.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.



ROMAN CONSUL WITH IVORY SCEPTER. BEHIND HIM STANDS ONE OF HIS TWELVE ATTENDANTS OR LICTORES WITH THE BUNDLE OF RODS OR FASCES OVER HIS LEFT SHOULDER.

POLITICAL HONORS. When Caesar was only forty-one years old, he had held the highest offices in the Roman government, ending with the consulship. Had he not been a very great man, he would have been satisfied with these honors, and we would then have heard not even his name. However, Caesar realized that great renown in his age could come only through a brilliant military career, and so he scorned an appointment as governor of a rich and tranquil province, where he might have become very wealthy but not at all famous.

37. The present infinitive of the Second Conjugation ends in *-ēre*, therefore the characteristic vowel (the vowel before *-re* of the present infinitive) is long *ē*.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *Movēō*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *movēō*, *movēre*.

PRES. STEM: *movē-*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	ENDINGS.	SINGULAR.	ENDINGS.
1. <i>movēō</i> , I move	-ō	1. <i>moveor</i> , I am moved	-r
2. <i>movēs</i> , you move	-s	2. <i>movēris</i> (<i>movēre</i>), you are moved	-ris or -re
3. <i>movet</i> , he moves	-t	3. <i>movētur</i> , he is moved	-tur

PLURAL.	ENDINGS.	PLURAL.	ENDINGS.
1. movēmus, we move	-mus	1. movēmur, we are moved	-mur
2. movētis, you move	-tis	2. movēmini, you are moved	-mini
3. movent, they move	-nt	3. moventur, they are moved	-ntur

Observe : —

(1) that the personal endings, both active and passive, are exactly the same as those of the First Conjugation verb *liberō*, and are added to the present stem *movē-* in the same manner.

(2) that this stem is found by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive.

(3) that *e* of the stem is not lost before *-ō* of the first person, but is shortened, as *moveō*.

(4) that *e* is short in the same persons and numbers as *a* in *liberō*; § 16 (4), § 23 (3).

(5) that the active may also be translated *I am moving, you are moving, etc.*, and the passive, *I am being moved, etc.*

38.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Galli, amici Belgārum, sunt in provinciā. — *The Gauls, friends of the Belgians, are in the province.* (2) Hispānia, magna provincia, occupātur. — *Spain, a large province, is being seized.*

Observe : —

(1) that in sentence 1 *amici*, an appositive noun, describes Galli, denotes the same persons, and agrees with it in case according to rule in § 25-1.

(2) that in sentence 2 the same is true of *provincia*, denoting the same thing as *Hispānia*.

39.

VOCABULARY.

habēō, *habēre*, *have, hold.*

moveō, *movēre*, *move, disturb.*

obtinēō, *obtinēre*, *hold.*

pertinēō, *pertinēre*, *pertain, extend.*

prohibēō, *prohibēre*, *prevent, keep away.*

ā (*ab* before vowels or *h*), prep. governing abl., *from, away from.*

ē (*ex* before vowels or *h*), prep. governing abl., *from, out of.*

40.

WRITTEN WORK.

Conjugate as in § 37 the present indicative, active and passive, of *habeō*, *obtineō*, *prohibeō*, writing meanings and tabulating the personal endings.

41.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) *Habēmus*; *movētis*; *prohibēs*; *pertinet*; *habēmur*; *movēminī*; *prohibēris*. (2) *Liberāminī*; *habēminī*; *accūsāmur*; *movēmur*; *superantur*; *prohibentur*. (3) *Gallī amīcī Germānōrum appellāntur*. (4) *Germānōs, amīcōs Belgārum, superāmus*. (5) *Celtae Belgās*¹ *amīcōs habent*. (6) *Reliquōs vicōs Celtārum obtinētis*. (7) *Proximī vicī ā Sēquanā ad Ōceanum pertinent*. (8) *Gallī carrōs ē proximīs vicīs inovent*. (9) *Fuga Germānōrum Gallōs, nostrōs*² *amīcōs, movet*. (10) *Gallī Hispāniam, māgnam prōvinciam, obtinent*.

II. (1) We hold, you are held; we move, we are moved; they are kept away; they are held; we are accused; you are being moved (sing.); you are being liberated. (2) The Germans are kept away from Gaul. (3) The Germans have the Gauls (as)³ friends. (4) Spain, a great province, extends to Gaul. (5) The carts are held in Spain. (6) The Belgians move a great number of carts from (out of)³ Gaul. (7) The Gauls give the villages of (their)³ friends to the Germans. (8) You are kept away (from)³ the province.

¹ Supply *as*.

² Masc. plu. acc. of *nostra*.

³ Words enclosed in parentheses are not to be translated.



A SILVER DENARIUS, A COMMON ROMAN COIN,
WORTH 17 CENTS.

LESSON VII.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.—ADJECTIVES
OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

CAESAR IN GAUL. As already stated, Caesar's determination to carve out for himself a great career led him to accept the governorship of Gaul, where by eight years of the hardest sort of campaigning, he greatly extended the boundaries of Gaul and proved himself not only a very clever politician, but also a peerless military captain. As the law did not allow a general to enter Rome while commanding an army, Caesar, during all this time, did not visit that city and was deprived of all the social pleasures and exciting open-air spectacles that made a Roman's life worth living.



ROMAN IMPERATOR.

42.

PARADIGM.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

oppidum, town; BASE, oppid-

	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.	PLURAL.	CASE ENDINGS.
<i>Nominative</i>	oppidum	-um	oppida	-a
<i>Genitive</i>	oppidī	-ī	oppidōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dative</i>	oppidō	-ō	oppidīs	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	oppidum	-um	oppida	-a
<i>Ablative</i>	oppidō	-ō	oppidīs	-īs

Observe:—

(1) that the ending **-um** is the ending of all neuter nouns of the Second Declension according to the gender rule of § 29.

(2) that the nominative and accusative plural end in short **-a**, and that the accusative singular has the same ending as the nominative singular. This is true of neuter nouns of all declensions.

(3) that all other case endings are the same as those of masculine nouns of the Second Declension, § 30.

Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension are declined exactly like neuter nouns of the same declension. Observe the combination *māgnum oppidum*, a great town; bases *māgn-oppid-*.

43. All the adjectives given in the preceding lessons belong to the First and Second Declensions; the masculine and neuter adjectives belonging to the Second and the feminine to the First. These forms are summarized in the paradigm below.

PARADIGM.

THE ADJECTIVE *Lātus*, *wide*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>lāta</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lāta</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>lātorum</i>	<i>lātārum</i>	<i>lātorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātae</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātīs</i>	<i>lātīs</i>	<i>lātīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lātam</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>lātōs</i>	<i>lātās</i>	<i>lāta</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātā</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>lātīs</i>	<i>lātīs</i>	<i>lātīs</i>

44.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Prōvinciam māgnam vāstāmus.* — *We are laying waste a great province.* (2) *Reliquōs Belgās incitātis.* — *You arouse the rest-of-the Belgians.* (3) *Proxima oppida sunt divīsa.* — *The nearest towns are divided.*

Observe :—

(1) that the adjective *māgnam* is in feminine singular accusative to agree with *prōvinciam* in G. N. C.

(2) that the adjective *reliquōs* is masculine plural accusative to agree with *Belgās* in G. N. C.

(3) that the adjective *proxima* is neuter plural nominative to agree with *oppida* in G. N. C.

(4) that all adjectives in these sentences are attributive except *divīsa*. Explain its agreement, § 10 (2).

45. RULE. — *Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in G. N. C.*

46.

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.
institūtum, -ī, n., *custom*.
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.
periculum, -ī, n., *peril, danger*.
rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power*.
respōnsum, -ī, n., *response*.

ADJECTIVES.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*.
māgnus, -a, -um, *great, large*.
multī, -ae, -a (plu.), *many*.
proximus, -a, -um, *nearest*.
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the-rest-of*.

47.

WRITTEN WORK.

Decline together, naming cases: **māgnum bellum**, **periculum proximum**, **bonum respōnsum**.

48.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) In nostrā prōvinciā sunt māgna oppida. (2) Bella Gal-lōrum multa pericula habent. (3) Institūta Germānōrum Galliā¹ prohibentur. (4) Celtae rēgnum obtinent. (5) Germānī multa respōnsa Belgis dant. (6) Germānī reliquōs Belgās multis vicis prohibent. (7) Germānī reliqui Belgās in multis vicis habent. (8) Multa bella proximās prōvinciās vāstant. (9) Proxima bella multās prōvinciās incitant. (10) Reliquae prōvinciae multa oppida habent.

II. (1) The Gauls keep away danger (from) the towns. (2) The Germans have many friends in the villages. (3) The Germans have friends in many villages. (4) Many carts are imported into Gaul. (5) The Belgians import many carts into Gaul. (6) The Gauls hold the royal power in the nearest provinces. (7) The nearest towns are divided.

¹ **Prohibeo** in Caesar is regularly followed by the ablative without a preposition.

LESSON VIII.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS: CONSONANT STEMS.



ROMAN TRIUMPHAL CAR.

CAESAR, DICTATOR. Controlled by Caesar's enemies, the Roman senate not only refused him a hard-earned triumphal celebration, but voted to deprive him of the office in which he had so well served his country. With his loyal army of Gallic veterans, Caesar marched to Rome, where he was elected dictator. No massacres marred Caesar's triumph, which resulted in the best government Rome ever had. His plans for the happiness of his country were cut off by his assassination at the hands of men who owed to their noble victim their honors and lives.

49. In the Third Declension there are two classes of nouns: (1) those whose stems¹ end in a consonant, and (2) those whose stems end in the vowel *i*.

50.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CLASS. — CONSONANT STEMS.

	<i>lēx</i> , f., <i>law</i>	<i>virtūs</i> , f., <i>bravery</i>	<i>mercātor</i> , m., <i>trader</i>	<i>flūmen</i> , n., <i>river</i>
STEM				
OR	<i>lēg-</i>	<i>virtūt-</i>	<i>mercātor-</i>	<i>flūmin-</i>
BASE:				
	SINGULAR.			CASE ENDINGS.
				M. F. N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>lēx</i> (= <i>lēgs</i>)	<i>virtūs</i> (= <i>virtūts</i>)	<i>mercātor</i>	<i>flūmen</i> — —
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>lēgis</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	<i>mercātōris</i>	<i>flūminis</i> -is -is
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>lēgi</i>	<i>virtūti</i>	<i>mercātōri</i>	<i>flūminī</i> -ī -ī
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lēgem</i>	<i>virtūtem</i>	<i>mercātōrem</i>	<i>flūmen</i> -em —
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>lēge</i>	<i>virtūte</i>	<i>mercātōre</i>	<i>flūmine</i> • -e -e

¹ The stem of a noun may differ from the base in the addition of a vowel, which is often dropped before the case ending; e.g. *Gallus*, base *Gall-*, stem *Gallo*, genitive singular *Galli*.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> lēgēs	virtūtēs	mercātōrēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
<i>Gen.</i> lēgum	virtūtum	mercātōrum	flūminum	-um	-um
<i>Dat.</i> lēgibus	virtūtibus	mercātōribus	flūminibus	ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> lēgēs	virtūtēs	mercātōrēs	flūmina	-ēs	-a
<i>Abl.</i> lēgibus	virtūtibus	mercātōribus	flūminibus	-ibus	-ibus

Observe: —

(1) that the genitive singular of all these nouns ends in *-is*, the distinguishing ending of this declension.

(2) that the base (in nouns of this class the same as the stem) is found by dropping this ending *-is* from the genitive singular.

(3) that as the nominative singular is often unlike the stem, it is necessary in nouns of this declension to memorize the genitive singular as well as the nominative singular.

(4) that the nominative and accusative plural of the neuter noun *flūmen* ends in *-a*, while the accusative singular is the same as the nominative singular like neuter nouns of the Second Declension. Compare *oppidum*, § 42.

51.

VOCABULARY.

cōsul, cōsulis, m., <i>consul</i> , one of	lēx, lēgis, f., <i>law</i> .
the two chief magistrates of Rome.	mercātor, mercātōris, m., <i>trader</i> .
flūmen, flūminis, n., <i>river</i> .	nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f., <i>nobility</i> .
hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, f., <i>refinement</i> .	virtūs, virtūtis, f., <i>bravery, virtue</i> .
cum, prep. governing abl., <i>with, in company with</i> .	

52.

WRITTEN WORK.

Decline together, underscoring endings: *māgnus Belga, cōsul bonus, reliqua nōbilitās* (sing. only), *proximum flūmen* (plu. only).

53.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) *Mercātōrēs ad Gallōs commeant.* (2) *Nōbilitās Galliae institūta bona habet.* (3) *Hūmānitās et virtūs cōsulum māgnae appellantur.* (4) *Cōsulēs Hispāniā prohibentur.* (5) *Belgae ad Sēquanam, māgnū flūmen, pertinent.* (6) *Mercātōrēs mul-*

tōs carrōs ad Belgās important. (7) Cōsulēs bonās lēgēs Belgīs dant. (8) Celtae sunt cum mercātōribus in vicīs.

II. (1) The consuls give many laws to the Germans. (2) The traders go-often with the-rest-of the Gauls to the great rivers. (3) The river Seine extends to the nearest province. (4) Many carts are imported to the large villages. (5) The bravery of the consuls keeps the Germans away (from) the nearest towns.

LESSON IX.

PRESENT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.



A BIT OF SWISS SCENERY.

THE ANCIENT SWISS. Caesar's first campaign was against the Swiss, whom the Romans called *Helvētīi*. We all know the sort of country Switzerland is — three-fourths of its surface mountains and glaciers, not one acre in six fit for ploughing and planting. Small wonder that these brave Swiss determined to take away from their weaker neighbors, the Gauls, the green and fertile fields of "the pleasant land of France."

54. The present infinitive of the Third Conjugation ends in *-ere*; therefore the characteristic vowel (vowel before *-re* of the present infinitive) is short *e*.

The verbs studied may be grouped as follows:—

CONJ.	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM.	CHAR. VOWEL.
I.	liberō	liberāre	liberā	ā
II.	moveō	movēre	movē	ē
III.	dividō	dividere	divide	e (variable)

55.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *Dividō*.

PRIN. PARTS: *dividō*, *dividere*.

STEM: *divide-*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	ENDINGS.		ENDINGS.
1. <i>dividō</i> , I divide.	-ō	1. <i>dividor</i> , I am divided.	-r
2. <i>dividis</i> , you divide.	-s	2. <i>divideris</i> (re), you are divided.	-ris (-re)
3. <i>dividit</i> , he divides.	-t	3. <i>dividitur</i> , he is divided.	-tur
PLURAL.			
1. <i>dividimus</i> , we divide.	-mus	1. <i>dividimur</i> , we are divided.	-mur
2. <i>dividitis</i> , you divide.	-tis	2. <i>dividimini</i> , you are divided.	-mini
3. <i>dividunt</i> , they divide.	-nt	3. <i>dividuntur</i> , they are divided.	-ntur

Observe:—

(1) that the personal endings, both active and passive, are the same as in the First and Second Conjugations.

(2) that the short *e* of the stem appears only in the second singular passive.

(3) that in the first singular, active and passive, the characteristic vowel of the stem is lost before *-ō* and *-or* as in the First Conjugation.

(4) that in other forms it becomes *i* or *u*.

56. The adjective **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *our*, differs from other adjectives of the First and Second Declensions only in the nominative singular masculine. It accordingly has as genitive singular forms **nostrī**, **nostrae**, **nostrī**, having as its base **nostr-**.

57.

VOCABULARY.

contendō , contendere , <i>contend</i> , <i>fight</i> , <i>hasten</i> .	dūcō , dūcere , <i>lead</i> , <i>draw</i> . gerō , gerere , <i>carry on</i> or <i>wage</i> .
dividō , dividere , <i>divide</i> , <i>separate</i> .	incolō , incolere , <i>inhabit</i> , <i> dwell in</i> .
inter , prep. governing acc., <i>between</i> , <i>among</i> .	

58.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Present indicative, active and passive, of **dūcō** and **gerō**.
- (2) Decline **noster** in full in all genders.

59.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) **Dūcitis**, **dūcimini**; **dīvidimus**, **dīvidimur**; **incolunt**, **incoluntur**; **dūcis**, **dūceris**; **liberāmur**; **habēmur**; **dūcimur**; **dant**; **prohibent**; **gerunt**. (2) **Belgae nostra oppida incolunt**. (3) **Celtae ab Aquitānīs flūmine dīviduntur**. (4) **Cōsulēs multa bella cum Gallīs gerunt**. (5) **Mercātōrēs ad Sēquanam flūmen dūcitis**. (6) **Virtūs Germānōrum nostrōs cōsulēs movet**. (7) **Bellum cum māgnō numerō Gallōrum geritur**.

II. (1) We lead, we are being led; you divide, you are divided; they inhabit; you (sing.) fight; it is inhabited; they are being divided. (2) A large river divides our provinces from the Gauls. (3) Our consuls carry on many wars with the nobility of the divided Belgians. (4) The nearest towns extend to the large rivers. (5) The traders are led to the nearest rivers. (6) The Germans fight with the Gauls between the rivers and the villages.

LESSON X.

THIRD DECLENSION I-STEMS, NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

A GREAT EMIGRATION. In search of other and better homes, the Swiss started westward, 368,000 strong, driving before them their cattle and carrying with them their wives and children loaded in big wagons, which must have looked something like the "prairie schooners" once to be seen on our Western plains. The story of this great emigration and of the plucky fight put up by these ancient Swiss in their effort to escape from the rough, icebound fastnesses of Switzerland, we shall be prepared to begin in Lesson XI.

60. The stems¹ of the second class of the Third Declension nouns end in -i. Such nouns have (1) nominatives ending in -is and -es, as *finis*, *end*, and no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative; (2) nominatives ending in -ns and -rs, as *cliēns*, *dependent*; (3) neuter nominatives ending in -e, -al, and -ar, as *vectigal*, *tax*; (4) nominatives that are monosyllables ending in an -s or -x preceded by a consonant, as *pars*, *part*.

PARADIGMS.

	<i>pars</i> , f., <i>part</i>	<i>finis</i> , m., <i>end</i> , <i>territories</i> (in plu.).
BASE :	<i>part-</i>	<i>fin-</i>
STEM :	<i>parti-</i>	<i>fini-</i>
	SINGULAR.	CASE ENDINGS.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>pars</i>	<i>finis</i> —
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>partis</i>	<i>finis</i> -is
<i>Dative</i>	<i>parti</i>	<i>fini</i> -ī
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>partem</i>	<i>finem</i> -em
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>parte</i>	<i>fine</i> or <i>fini</i> -e (-ī)
	PLURAL.	
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>partēs</i>	<i>finēs</i> -ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>partium</i>	<i>finium</i> -ium
<i>Dative</i>	<i>partibus</i>	<i>finibus</i> -ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>partēs</i> (-īs)	<i>finēs</i> (-īs) -ēs (-īs)
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>partibus</i>	<i>finibus</i> -ibus

¹ See footnote, page 20.

Observe:—

(1) that, unlike consonant stems, nouns of this second class do not have the base and stem the same.

(2) that the genitive plural ends in *-ium* and accusative plural in *-is* as well as in *-ēs*.

(3) that the ablative singular sometimes ends in *-ī*.

61. Most adjectives of the Third Declension have the masculine and feminine alike, but have distinct forms in the neuter nominative and accusative, as may be observed in the paradigms below. Such adjectives are known as Adjectives of Two Terminations, and have *i*-stems.

PARADIGM.

M. and f. *omnis*, n. *omne*, *all*.

BASE: *omn-*
STEM: *omni-*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>omni</i>	<i>omni</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs, omnis</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>omni</i>	<i>omni</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

Note the ablative singular ending in *-ī* and neuter nominative and accusative plural ending in *-ia*.

62.

VOCABULARY.

animus, -ī, m., mind, spirit.

*finis, finis, m., end (in sing.),
territories (in plu.).*

mōns, montis, m., mountain, hill.

pars, partis, f., part.

effeminō, effemināre, weaken.

et, coördinate conj., and.

dē, prep. governing abl., from, down from, about, concerning.

alius, alia, aliud, other.

fortis, -e, brave.

nōbilis, -e, noble, well-known.

omnis, -e, all.

trēs, tria, three.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

The adjectives *alius* and *ūnus* are somewhat irregular in declension, but the forms occurring in the exercises present no difficulties.

63.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline together: *finis nōbilis, fortis animus*.
 (2) Decline *trēs* in full like the plural of *omnis*.

64.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) *Galli trēs vicōs et omnia oppida obtinent.* (2) *Mercātōrēs animōs omnis nōbilitātis effēminant.* (3) *Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs.* (4) *Belgae ūnam partem incolunt.* (5) *Aquitānī aliam partem Galliae incolunt.* (6) *Flūmen dē montibus ad Ōceanum pertinet.* (7) *Celtae tertiam partem finium incolunt.* (8) *Multa bella in omnibus nostrīs finibus geruntur.*

II. (1) Our territories extend between the mountains and the rivers. (2) The town is divided into many parts. (3) We inhabit three parts of Gaul. (4) (In) our language the river is called the Seine. (5) All the traders weaken the spirits of the brave Belgians.

FIRST REVIEW.

WRITTEN WORK.

I. (a) List in a column on the left margin of a sheet of paper the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: amicable, belligerent, cause, consular, finish, flume, fossil, fugitive, institution, legal, linguist, magnanimous, mercatorial, mountain, nobility, numerical, partial, perilous, provincial, reign, response, virtue.

(b) Index the Latin nouns thus obtained in seven vertical columns as follows, indicating the stem of the Third Declension nouns by *c* or *i* (see § 49) above the number 3:—

NOM. SING.	GEN. SING.	GENDER	DEC.	NOM. PLU.	GEN. PLU.	MEANING.
carrus	carri	M.	2	carri	carrōrum	cart
oppidum	oppidi	N.	2	oppida	oppidōrum	town
virtūs	virtūtis	F.	3 ^c	virtūtēs	virtūtum	bravery (plu. acts of bravery)

II. (a) List in a column the Latin adjectives from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: bonus, fortitude, latitude, longitude, magnitude, nobility, nostrum, omnibus, proximity, relic.

(b) Index the Latin adjectives thus obtained in the following manner:

NOM. SING.	GEN. SING.	NOM. PLU.	GEN. PLU.	MEANING.
māgnus, -a, -um	māgni, -ae, -i	māgni, -ae, -a	māgnōrum, -ārum, -ōrum	great, large.
fortis, -e	fortis, -is	fortēs, -ia	fortium, -ium	brave, strong.
tertius, -a, -um	tertil, -ae, -i	not found in plural. Why?		third.

III. (a) List in a column the Latin verbs from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: accusation, appellation, army, belligerent, contention, devastation, division, effeminacy, essence, habit, incitement, inducement, spectator, (in)superable, liberty, movable, obtain, occupation, pertinacious, prohibition.

(b) Index the verbs thus obtained as follows:

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	STEM.	CONJ.	MEANING.
incolō	incolere	incole-	3	inhabit

RAPID ORAL DRILL.

IV. Make any intelligible combination of Latin adjectives obtained in the second list with Latin nouns in the first list, taking care to make a proper G.N.C. agreement and to use the same noun but once. If time permits, this drill may be profitably extended by giving the genitive singular and the nominative plural of each of these combinations.

V. Translate into Latin, using appropriate prepositions: away from the town, out of the town, down from the town, in the town, to the town, into the town; among the Celts, with the Celts.

VI. Give short original English sentences to illustrate each of the following constructions: predicate noun, predicate adjective, direct object, indirect object, genitive case, appositive (1) of subject, (2) of direct object, (3) of indirect object.

MEMORY WORK.

VII. Review all verb paradigms by giving the corresponding active and passive together, as *liberō, liberor, liberās, liberāris*.

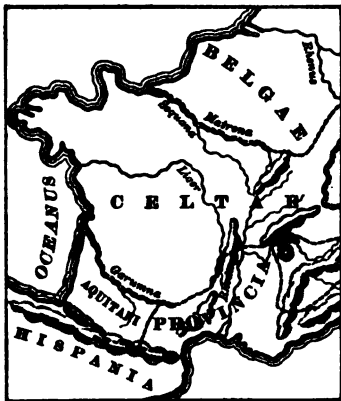
VIII. Review the gender rules of the First and Second Declensions.

LESSON XI.

DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE *HĪC*.—ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

65. *The divisions of Gaul.*

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum¹ ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī¹ ipsōrum² linguā Celtae, nostrā³ Gallī appellantur.



THE THREE PARTS OF GAUL.

¹ quārum, fem. plu. gen. of the relative pronoun, of *which*. quī, masc. plu. nom. of same, *who*; supply antecedent *those*.

² ipsōrum, masc. plu. gen. of pronoun *ipse*, of *themselves*, *their own*.

³ nostrā agrees in G. N. C. with what word understood?

66.

PARADIGM.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE **Hic**, *this*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

67.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) **HI** *omnēs* *oppidō* *mercātōrēs* *prohibent*. — *All these keep the traders away from the town.* (2) **Haec** *flūmina* *Gallōs* & *prōvinciā* *dividunt*. — *These rivers separate the Gauls from the province.*

Observe:—

(1) that in sentence 1 **HI** is used as a demonstrative pronoun and is the subject of *prohibent*.

(2) that in sentence 2 **haec** is used as a demonstrative adjective, agreeing in G. N. C. with *flūmina* according to the rule already given: adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in G. N. C.

(3) that the verbs in these sentences denote separation, and that *oppidō* and *prōvinciā*, the things from which there is separation, are put in the ablative, the latter with and the former without a preposition.

68. RULE. — *Words signifying separation or privation are followed by the ablative with or without the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.*

69.

VOCABULARY.

Garumna, -ae, m.,
the *Garonne*,
Matrona, -ae, m.,
the *Marne*,

} rivers in Gaul.

sē, acc. plu. of the reflexive pronoun, meaning *themselves*.
differō, *differre*, *differ*.

70.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Put *hic* in agreement with each of the following nouns: *virtūs*, *oppidum*, *cōsul*.

(2) Decline together each combination thus formed.

71.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) *Haec flūmina Aquitānōs ā montibus dīvidunt.* (2) *Hi Belgae lēgibus inter sē differunt.* (3) *Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquitānis dīvidit.* (4) *Nostrī finēs hīs montibus ab Ōceanō dīviduntur.* (5) *Reliqui Gallī huius prōvinciae institūtis inter sē differunt.* (6) *Trēs partēs nostrōrum finium incoluntur.* (7) *Nostrī cōsulēs hōs mercātōrēs prōvinciis prohibent.* (8) *Lingua Germāni inter sē differunt.*

II. (1) Many rivers separate the Germans from all these territories. (2) These mountains are between the river and the town. (3) The brave nobility of the Gauls fights with these Germans. (4) The spirits of all the Gauls are weakened (by) these laws. (5) The brave Celts are being led to these large towns. (6) The consuls are giving three parts of these territories to the Gauls.

LESSON XII.

DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*. — THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.72. *The nations of Gaul.*

(1) *Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam ipsōrum lingua Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hi omnēs lingua, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt.*

73. Like the demonstrative *hic*, *is* may be used both as a demonstrative *adjective* and as a demonstrative *pronoun*, meaning *this* or *that* in the singular, and *these* or *those* in the plural. As the Latin language has no third personal pronoun, *is* supplies this want, meaning *he*, *she*, *it*, or *they*, according to its form.

74.

PARADIGM.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	ei, ii	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ei	ei	ei	eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eis, iis	eis, iis	eis, iis

Compare the endings of *is* with those of *māgnus* and *hic*.

75.

MODEL SENTENCES.

- (1) *Mercātōrēs ea in oppida Belgārum important. — The traders import these things to the towns of the Belgians.* (2) *Id flūmen finēs Gallōrum dīvidit. — That river separates the territories of the Gauls.* (3) *Cōsul eam liberat. — The consul frees her.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 *ea* is used as a demonstrative pronoun and is the direct object of *important*.

(2) that in sentence 2 *id* is used as a demonstrative adjective, agreeing in G. N. C. with *flūmen*.

(3) that in sentence 3 *eam* is used as a personal pronoun and is the direct object of the verb *liberat*.

(4) that in sentences 1 and 2 the nouns *Belgārum* and *Gallōrum* are in the genitive case and denote the persons to whom *oppida* and *finēs* belong.

76. RULE. — *The possessive genitive denotes the person to whom or thing to which something belongs.*

77.

VOCABULARY.

cultus, m. (a noun of the fourth declension), *civilization*, abl. *cultū*.
absum, *abesse* (compound of *ab* and *verb sum*), *to be away, to be distant*.

fortis, -e, *brave*; superlative *fortissimus*, -a, -um, *bravest* (declined like *lātus*).
longē, adv. (from adj. *longus*), *far*; superlative *longissimē*, *farthest, very far*.

minimē, adv., superlative degree, *least*; **minimē saepe**, *very seldom*.
saepe, adv., *often*. **atque**, coördinate conjunction, *and, and also*.
-que,¹ a coördinate conjunction, *and*.

78.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Put the demonstrative pronoun *is* in agreement with each of the following nouns: **lēx**, **flūmen**, **mercātor**.

(2) Decline together each combination thus formed, giving double forms of the demonstrative when such occur.

(3) Decline **fortissimus**, **-a**, **-um**, by endings only, writing out the entire nominative singular.

79.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) **Fortissimī Belgārum ā finibus eōrum Aquitānōrum longissimē absunt.** (2) **Mercātōrēs ad ea oppida Gallōrum saepe commeant.** (3) **Carrī in eas prōvinciās minimē saepe importantur.** (4) **Aquitānī Germānique sunt fortissimī hōrum omnium minimēque saepe ad flūmina commeant.** (5) **Eī Germānī ā cultū atque hūmānitāte eōrum oppidōrum longissimē absunt.** (6) **Cōnsulēs cum eis Germānīs saepe contendunt.** (7) **Oppida eōrum mercātōribus dantur.** (8) **Cōsul eōs accūsāt.** (9) **Lēgēs eis damus.** (10) **Mercātōrēs ad eōs dūcuntur.**

II. (1) All the consuls often give laws to those villages of the Celts. (2) These rivers divide the bravest (masc. plu.) of them from the Germans. (3) The trader's friend arms him. (4) You give him a brave spirit. (5) We lead her to that town. (6) He divides it among the traders.

¹ **Que** is called an enclitic because it never stands alone, but is used as a suffix of the word before which it is translated, *e.g.*, **minimēque**, *and least*.



A GOLD DENARIUS WORTH \$4.25.

LESSON XIII.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

80. *The Belgians characterized.*

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea¹ quod¹ a cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs² saepe commeant.

81.

PARADIGMS.

THE RELATIVE Qui.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

MEANINGS OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

<i>Nominative</i>	who, which, that.
<i>Genitive</i>	whose, of whom, of which.
<i>Dative</i>	to or for whom, which.
<i>Accusative</i>	whom, which, that.
<i>Ablative</i>	by, from, in, with whom, which.

Qui, though masculine, may be translated by either *who* or *which*, e.g. cōsul qui, *the consul who*; mōns qui, *the mountain which*. The same is true of the feminine quae.

82.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Gallia quam incolimus in partēs trēs divisa est. — *Gaul which we inhabit is divided into three parts.* (2) Celtae quōs accūsāmus Galliam incolunt. — *The Celts whom we blame inhabit Gaul.*

¹ Propterea quod, a combination usually translated *because*, formed of propterea, adv., *on this account*, and quod, subordinate conj., *because*.

² Mercātōrēs is nominative.

(3) Germānī, quibuscum¹ Belgae bellum gerunt, sunt fortēs. — *The Germans, with whom the Belgians carry on war, are brave.*

(4) Is qui est cōsul accūsatur. — *He (i.e. any one) who is consul is blamed.*

Observe: —

(1) that in each sentence the relative pronoun is in the same gender and number as its antecedent.

(2) that in each sentence the case of the relative pronoun differs from that of the antecedent, if the construction of the subordinate clause requires it.

(3) that in sentence 4 *Is*, the antecedent of the relative pronoun, does not refer to any particular person, but means *the man, he, or one*, a usage of very common occurrence in Latin.

83. RULE. — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its construction in the clause in which it stands.*

84.

VOCABULARY.

Helvētius, -i, m., *Swiss, Helvetian.*

continenter, adv., *continually, constantly.*

Rhēnus, -i, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -i, m., *the Rhone.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

Sēquanus, -i, m., *Sequantian, one of the Sequani.*

quoque, conj., *also (placed after emphatic word).*

trāns, prep. governing the accusative, *across.*

85.

EXERCISES.

I. (1) Mercātōrēs ad eōs Belgās ea, quae animōs effēminant, important. (2) Germānī, quibuscum bellum continenter geritur, sunt proximi eis Belgīs. (3) Hī Germānī, quibuscum Belgae multa bella gerunt, trāns Rhēnum incolunt. (4) Animī reliquōrum Gallōrum, ad quōs mercātōrēs ea important, effēminantur. (5) Germānī Belgaeque hōs mercātōrēs prohibent, qui ea impor-

¹ The preposition *cum* is enclitic with the relative, reflexive, interrogative, and personal pronouns.

- tant. (6) *Helvētīi quoque ā cultū et hūmānitāte longē absunt.*
 (7) *Rhodanus, trāns quem Helvētīi incolunt, longē pertinet.*
 (8) *Id flūmen ad vicōs pertinet, quōs fortissimī Germānī incolunt.*
 (9) *Germānī ea prohibent, quibus animī effēminantur.*

(In sentences 5, 8, and 9, the antecedents are separated by one or more words from the relative pronouns, an arrangement not permitted in English, which lacks distinct G. N. C. forms of the relative.)

(In the sentences below place each verb, except *sum*, at the end of its own clause and determine the G. N. C. of each relative before translating.)

II. (1) The Gauls, whose towns the Germans hold, are nearest to the Belgians. (2) The Helvetians hold these large towns, which are across the Rhone. (3) (From) all these towns are kept away all those (things) that the trader imports from (*i.e.* out of) Gaul. (4) The Sequanians, to whom the Helvetians give customs and laws, are far away from the Aquitanians. (5) The wars, which we carry on, are waged with these Gauls.

LESSON XIV.

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS IN *IUS* AND *IUM*.—ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

86. *Hostile peoples.*



A GAUL.

Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs¹ pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

¹ *Ad effēminandōs animōs* (known as a gerundive construction) is best translated to *weaken their spirits or courage.*

87.

PARADIGMS.

Helvētius, a Swiss; BASE, Helveti- proelium, battle; BASE, proeli-

SINGULAR.

<i>Nominative</i>	Helvētius	proelium
<i>Genitive</i>	Helvē'ti (Helvētīi)	proeli (proeliī)
<i>Dative</i>	Helvētiō	proeliō
<i>Accusative</i>	Helvētium	proelium
<i>Ablative</i>	Helvētiō	proeliō

PLURAL.

<i>Nominative</i>	Helvētīi	proelia
<i>Genitive</i>	Helvētiōrum	proeliōrum
<i>Dative</i>	Helvētiīs	proeliīs
<i>Accusative</i>	Helvētiōs	proelia
<i>Ablative</i>	Helvētiīs	proeliīs

Observe: —

(1) that these nouns differ from the nouns of the Second Declension formerly declined only in the genitive singular, where **ii** is usually contracted to a single **i**.

(2) that the accent of this form is on the same syllable as in the nominative, cf. *cōnsi'li* and *impe'ri* in the vocabulary § 90.

88

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Galli cum mercātōribus ad prōvinciam comitant.* — *The Gauls go often with the traders to the province.* (2) *Bellum cum Germānis gerimus.* — *We carry on war with the Germans.*

Observe: —

(1) that in these sentences **mercātōribus** and **Germānis** are ablatives governed by the preposition **cum** and denote the persons in company with whom the action of the verb takes place.

(2) that this ablative, known as the Ablative of Accompaniment, answers the question "With whom?"

89. RULE. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative regularly with cum.*

90.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cōnsilium</i> , <i>cōnsili</i> , n., <i>plan, design.</i>	<i>ferē</i> , adv., <i>almost, nearly.</i>
<i>imperium</i> , <i>imperi</i> , n., <i>command, control.</i>	<i>aut</i> , coordinate conj., <i>or</i> ; <i>aut . . . aut</i> , <i>either . . . or.</i>
<i>proelium</i> , <i>proeli</i> , n., <i>battle.</i>	<i>cum</i> , subordinate conj., <i>when, while.</i>
<i>cotidiānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>daily.</i>	<i>quibuscum</i> , abl. of interrogative pronoun and prep. <i>cum</i> (§ 82, note), <i>with whom?</i>
<i>suus</i> , -a, -um, poss. adj., <i>his, her, its, their</i> , according to the subject.	
<i>præcēdō</i> , <i>præcēdere</i> , <i>precede, surpass.</i>	

91.

WRITTEN WORK.

Put into agreement and decline together *cotidiānus* and *cōnsilium hic* and *imperium*.

92.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Hi Galli proximōs Belgās hūmānitāte præcēdunt.* (2) *Helvētiī, quōrum cōnsilia et institūta differunt, cum eis Belgīs contendunt.* (3) *Nostri amīci, Galli, in suis finibus cum Sēquanīs aut cum Belgīs cotidiāna proelia gerunt.* (4) *Bellum māgnum cum eis Germānīs geritur.* (5) *Multi Germānī cum Belgīs ad eōs finēs commeant.* (6) *Hōs mercātōrēs cum suis amīcis ad oppida Helvētiōrum dūxērunt.* (7) *Quibuscum Galli bellum continenter gerunt?*

II. (1) The Germans contend (in) daily battles with the Gauls. (2) War is waged with these Germans in the territories of the Belgians or of their¹ friends. (3) We often resort to the towns of the Swiss with our¹ friends. (4) The Belgians carry on wars with the rest of the Gauls. (5) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 7, part I.]

¹ The Romans rarely used a possessive adjective when the possessor was clearly indicated without it. The possessive adjectives should therefore be frequently supplied in translating from Latin into English and omitted in translating from English into Latin.

93.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Quā¹ dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte prae-
cedunt. Reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt quod cum Germānis conten-
dunt. Ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt. Aut
suīs finibus Helvētīi eōs prohibent, aut ipsī² in finibus eōrum
(Germānōrum) bellum gerunt. Helvētīi cum Germānis conten-
dunt, cum eōs suīs finibus prohibent.

¹ Quā, rel. adj. quā dē causā, for which reason, or better, for this reason. At the beginning of a sentence, the relative is usually translated by a demonstrative.

² ipsī, intensive pronoun, nom. plu., themselves.

LESSON XV.

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*.—ABLATIVE OF MEANS.94. *The warlike Swiss.*

Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeced-
unt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum
aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum
gerunt.

95. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *-io* in the first singular, and are conjugated in the present indicative according to the following paradigms.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *Capiō*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: *capiō, capere*.PRES. STEM: *cape-*.

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SINGULAR.

1. *capiō*, I take.
2. *capis*, you take.
3. *capit*, he takes.

1. *capior*, I am taken.
2. *capis* (-ere), you are taken.
3. *capitur*, he is taken.

PLURAL.

1. capimus, we take.
2. capitis, you take.
3. capiunt, they take.

1. capimur, we are taken.
2. capimini, you are taken.
3. capiuntur, they are taken.

Observe:—

That the present indicative of **capiō** differs from that of **dividō** only in the first singular and the third plural.

96.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Nostri finēs flūminibus continentur.* — *Our territories are bounded by rivers.* (2) *Ea carris importāmus.* — *We import these things in carts.*

Observe:—

(1) that in sentence 1 the ablative **flūminibus** denotes the means by which our territory is bounded.

(2) that in sentence 2 the ablative **carris** denotes the instrument or means by or in which we carry these things. This construction, known as the Ablative of Means, answers the question "By what means?"

97. RULE. — *The means or instrument of an action is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.*

98.

VOCABULARY.

initium, *ini'ti*, n., *beginning*.

septentriō, *septentriōnis*, m. (usually plu.), literally the Seven Plough Oxen, the constellation known as the Great Bear or Dipper, hence the *North*.

tēlum, -i, n., *missile, spear*.

quō, abl. sing. of interrogative, *by what?*

attingō, *attingere*, *touch upon*.

capiō, *capere*, *take*.

contineō, *continēre*, *bound, hem in*.

dīcō, *dicere*, *say, appoint*.

iaciō, *iacere*, *throw, hurl*.

vergō, *vergere*, *incline, slope*.

etiam, adv., *also, even*.

99.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate *iacō* in the present indicative, active and passive; *attingō* in the present indicative, active, and *dicō* in the passive.

(2) Decline *septentriō* in the plural only.

100.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Capimus, capimur; iaciunt, iaciuntur; capitis, capimini; iacis, iaceris; capit, capitur.* (2) *Capiunt, dūcunt; caperis, dūceris, movēris; iaciuntur, dīviduntur, continentur.* (3) *Celtae nostrā linguā¹ Galli appellantur.* (4) *Multōs vicōs Gallōrum nostris longis telis vāstāmus.* (5) *Nostrī finēs, quī ad septentriōnēs vergunt, montibus continentur.* (6) *Belgae, quī cum Germānis continenter contendunt, telis Sēquanōrum superantur.* (7) *Quō flūmine Galli ab Aquitānis dīvisi sunt?*

II. (1) We take, we are taken; you (sing.) hurl, you (sing.) are hurled, they hurl, they are hurled. (2) You are thrown; you are divided; you are held; they are being taken; they are being led; they are being held; he is led; he is taken; he is aroused. (3) With our spears we keep away the Germans from the towns. (4) Our friends, the Germans, are hemmed in by many mountains and rivers. (5) Our province is separated from the Germans by three rivers. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 7, part I.]

101.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eōrum finium pars initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. Eam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est.² Pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā Rhodanō. Ea pars continētur Garumnā flūmine, Oceanō, finibus Belgārum. Attingit etiam ab Sēquanis³ et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum. Ea pars vergit ad septentriōnēs.

¹ What ablative is *linguā*?

² *dictum est*, passive ind. perf., 3d sing. of *dicō*, it has been said. *Eam partem . . . dictum est*, it has been said the Gauls hold this part (literally, to hold).

³ *ab Sēquanis*, etc., on the side occupied by the Sequani, etc., i.e. on the east.

LESSON XVI.

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*.—COMPARISON OF
ADJECTIVES.102. *The third part of Gaul.*

SEPTENTRIONES.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārū; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs.

103. The perfect in Latin is the past time tense of greatest importance and of most frequent occurrence.

PARADIGM.

PERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *Sum*.PRINCIPAL PARTS : *sum, esse, fui*.PERFECT STEM : *fu-*.

SINGULAR.

1. *fui*, I was, I have been.
2. *fuisti*, you were, you have been.
3. *fuit*, he was, he has been.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

-ī
-isti
-it

PLURAL.

1. *fuimus*, we were, we have been.
2. *fuistis*, you were, you have been.
3. *fuērunt* (or *fuēre*), they were, they have been.

-imus
-istis
-ērunt (or -ēre).

Observe : —

(1) that the perfect stem *fu-*, to which the personal endings are attached, is found by striking off the ending -ī from the third principal part.

(2) that the perfect tense has a different set of personal endings. These personal endings are the same for the perfect indicative tenses of all conjugations in the active voice.

(3) that the perfect tense has two meanings, corresponding to the English past and to the present perfect respectively.

104. As in English, adjectives in Latin have three degrees of comparison, — positive, comparative, and superlative, — and are regularly compared as follows :

POSITIVE.			COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
fortis, -e (base fort-);			fortior, -ius;			fortissimus, -a, -um		
<i>brave</i>			<i>braver</i>			<i>bravest or very brave</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
longus, -a, -um, (base long-);			longior, -ius;			longissimus, -a, -um		
<i>long</i>			<i>longer</i>			<i>longest or very long</i>		

Observe : —

(1) that the comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter.

(2) that the superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive **-issimus, -a, -um**.

105. The masculine and feminine of comparatives are declined exactly like the noun *mercātor* in § 50, while the neuter conforms to the principles governing the declension of neuter nouns § 42, (2).

PARADIGM.

THE COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVE *Inferior*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
<i>Nominative</i>	Inferior	inferius	Inferiōrēs	Inferiōra
<i>Genitive</i>	Inferiōris	inferiōris	Inferiōrum	Inferiōrum
<i>Dative</i>	Inferiōrī	Inferiōrī	Inferiōribus	Inferiōribus
<i>Accusative</i>	Inferiōrem	inferius	Inferiōrēs	Inferiōra
<i>Ablative</i>	Inferiōre	Inferiōre	Inferiōribus	Inferiōribus

106. Superlatives as *fortissimus, -a, -um*, are, as already stated, declined exactly like *lātus, -a, -um*, in § 43.

107.

VOCABULARY.

sōl, *sōlis*, m. (no gen. plu.), *sun*.
extrēmus, -a -um, sup. adj., *farthest*,
most distant.
inferior, *inferius*, comp. adj., *lower*.
oriēns, m., f., n. (*orientis*, genitive),
 adj., *rising*.

orior (what is known as a deponent
 verb, passive in form but active
 in meaning; conjugated in the
 present like the passive of *capiō*),
begin, *arise*.
spectō, *spectāre*, *face*, *look*.

108.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare *lātus* (*lāt-*) and *nōbilis* (*nōbil-*).

(2) Decline in full: the comparative *fortior*; *oriēns* as *liberāns* in App. § 10. Why is *oriēns* called an adjective of One Termination?

(3) Conjugate the verb *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*, § 77, in the perfect indicative, and *orior* with meanings in the present indicative.

109.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Fuimus*, *fuistis*, *āfuērunt*, *āfuistī*, *fuit*, *āfuī*. (2) *Longius flūmen in finibus Belgārum fuit*. (3) *Nostri finēs fuērunt longissimī*. (4) *Fortissimōs Gallōrum longiōribus tēlis superāmus*. (5) *In vicis fortiōrum Aquitānōrum fuistis*. (6) *Longē āfuimus ab oppidis Germānōrum, quī fuērunt nōbilissimī*. (7) *In lātiōribus partibus nostrōrum finium fuimus*.

II. (1) We were in the widest parts of the territory. (2) He was far away from the three longer rivers. (3) You were between the rivers and the mountains. (4) We lead the traders to the farthest villages. (5) You have been in the territories, which the consuls are laying waste. (6) The consuls were with the braver Gauls in the lower parts of this territory.

110.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Finēs Belgārum initium ab extrēmā parte Galliae capiunt. Id est: Belgae oriuntur ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus. Finēs Belgārum pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī. Belgae spectant in septentrionem et eam partem quā ex parte sōl oritur.

LESSON XVII.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST THREE CONJUGATIONS: PRINCIPAL PARTS.

111. *The Belgians.*

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad Inferiorem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem.

112. The principal parts of a Latin verb consist of: (1) pres. ind. act. 1st sing. (2) pres. inf. act. (3) perf. ind. act. 1st sing. (4) perf. pass. participle.

The principal parts of a verb must be thoroughly memorized, because from them are formed all other parts of the verb. The Latin verb has three stems found in the last three principal parts: the present stem, the perfect stem, and the participial stem. The method of finding these stems from the principal parts is indicated in the following table:

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

CONJ.	PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PASS. PART.
I.	liberō <i>I liberate</i>	liberāre <i>to liberate</i>	liberāvī <i>I liberated</i>	liberātus <i>having been liberated</i>
	STEMS:	PRES. liberā-	PERF. liberāv-	PART. liberāt-
II.	moveō <i>I move</i>	movēre <i>to move</i>	mōvī <i>I moved</i>	mōtus <i>having been moved</i>
	STEMS:	PRES. movē-	PERF. mōv-	PART. mōt-
III.	dividō <i>I divide</i>	dividere <i>to divide</i>	divisī <i>I divided</i>	divisus <i>having been divided</i>
	STEMS:	PRES. divide-	PERF. divis-	PART. divis-
	capīō <i>I take</i>	capere <i>to take</i>	cēpī <i>I took</i>	captus <i>having been taken</i>
	STEMS:	PRES. cape-	PERF. cēp-	PART. capt-

113.

PARADIGM.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *Liberō*.PERFECT STEM: *liberāv-*.

SINGULAR.		PERSONAL ENDINGS.
1.	<i>liberāvī</i> , I liberated, I have liberated, I did liberate	-ī
2.	<i>liberāvistī</i> , you liberated, you have liberated, etc.	-istī
3.	<i>liberāvit</i> , he liberated, he has liberated, etc.	-it
PLURAL.		
1.	<i>liberāvimus</i> , we liberated, we have liberated, etc.	-imus
2.	<i>liberāvistis</i> , you liberated, you have liberated, etc.	-istis
3.	<i>liberāverunt</i> or <i>liberāvēre</i> , they liberated, they have liberated, etc.	-erunt or -ēre

Observe: —

That the personal endings are the same as those of *fuī* in § 103 and are added to the perfect stem.

114. TABLE OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>mōv-</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ī \\ -istī \\ -it \end{array} \right.$	<i>-imus</i>
<i>divis-</i>		<i>-istis</i>
<i>cēp-</i>		<i>-erunt</i> (or <i>-ēre</i>)

Observe: —

That the forms *mōv-*, *divis-*, *cēp-* are perfect stems, to each of which are added the personal endings.

115.

VOCABULARY.

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, *Aquitania*, one of the three parts of Gaul. *Pyrēnaeus*, -a, -um, *Pyrenean* (mountains).

appellō, *appellāre*, *appellāvi*, *appellātus*, *call*, *name*.

dūcō, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*, *lead*, *draw*.

habēō, *habēre*, *habui*, *habitus*, *have*, *hold*.

iaciō, *iacere*, *iēci*, *iactus*, *throw*, *hurl*.

116.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings the perfect indicative active of the verbs of the vocabulary.

(2) Tabulate as in § 112 the several stems of these verbs.

117.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Appellāvimus; dūxistis; habuimus. (2) Appellāvistis; dūximus; habuistis. (3) Appellāverunt; dūxī; iēcistī. (4) Iēcē-runt; liberāvimus; movī. (5) Movit; dīvisistis; cēperunt. (6) Habuimus; dūxistī; appellāvī. (7) Cēpit; liberāvistis; dīvisi-mus. (8) Movērunt; iēcimus; appellāvistis. (9) Multa tēla in oppida iēcistī. (10) Nostrōs finēs dīvisimus. (11) Vicōs Gal-lōrum cēperunt. (12) Belgās amicōs appellāvistis. (13) Gallōs in Aquitāniam dūximus. (14) Aquitānōs liberāvit. (15) Multa oppida cēpistis. (16) Carrōs dūximus.

II. (1) We led; you have had, they have had. (2) You (sing.) have called; he led; you had. (3) They led; we have had; they hurled. (4) We divided; you took; he has moved. (5) They have moved; they have divided; they have taken. (6) We took; I liberated; you (sing.) have hurled. (7) I have divided; they took; we moved. (8) You divide, you divided; he moves, he has moved. (9) You have divided the territories. (10) You have the noblest friends.

118.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Aquitānia est ūna trium partium Galliae. Ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs pertinet. Aquitānia pertinet ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et partem Ōceanī. Ea pars Ōceanī est ad¹ Hispāniam. Finēs Aquitānōrum spectant inter occāsum sōlis² et septentriō-nēs.

¹ ad, towards, near, off.

² occāsum sōlis, setting of the sun, i.e. the west.

LESSON XVIII.

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF *SUM*.—ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.119. *The Aquitanians.*

Aquitānia à Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs. [Cap. I. Finis.]¹

120.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *Sum*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	PRESENT.	
1. sum, I am.		sumus, we are.
2. es, you are.		estis, you are.
3. est, he is.		sunt, they are.
	IMPERFECT.	
1. eram, I was.		erāmus, we were.
2. erās, you were.		erātis, you were.
3. erat, he was.		erant, they were.
	FUTURE.	
1. erō, I shall be.		erimus, we shall be.
2. eris, you will be.		eritis, you will be.
3. erit, he will be.		erunt, they will be.

Observe:—

That the first personal ending of the first two tenses is *-m* instead of *-s*.

121.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Hi omnēs linguā inter sē differunt. — *All these differ from one another in language.* (2) Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt. — *The Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in bravery.*

¹ Capituli primī finis, i.e., end of Chapter I of Caesar's story.

Observe:—

(1) that in sentence 1 the ablative *linguā* denotes that in respect to which all these differ from one another.

(2) that in sentence 2 the ablative *virtūte* denotes that in respect to which the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls.

(3) that with this ablative no preposition is used.

This construction is called the Ablative of Specification.

122. RULE. — *Specification is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.*

123.

VOCABULARY.

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, *fight, hasten.*

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, *carry on, wage.*

incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus, *incite, arouse.*

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus, *hold, obtain.*

superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus, *overcome, surpass.*

quā, abl. fem. sing. of interrogative,
in what? in what respect?

124.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) The imperfect and future indicative of **absum** with meanings.

(2) The principal parts of **pertineō**, *extend* (like **obtineō**), with the meanings of each part as in table, § 112.

(3) The perfect indicative active of **gerō** with meanings.

125.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Erimus, erāmus, fuimus.* (2) *Erunt, fuērunt, erant.*
(3) *Erō, erat, eris.* (4) *Fuistis, estis, eritis, erātis.* (5) *Erat, erit, fuit, fui, eram, sum.* (6) *Oppida, quae cēpimus, sunt tria numerō.* (7) *Gallī, quōs virtūte praecēditis, erant nōbilissimī.*
(8) *Gallī, quōrum vicōs Germānī superāvērunt, lēgibus inter sē differunt.* (9) *Belgae, quibuscum multa bella gessistis, erant divīsī cōnsiliis.* (10) *Quā Gallī Germānōs superāvērunt?*

- II. (1) You (sing.) were, you will be, you are, you have been.
 (2) We shall be, we were, we have been. (3) He is, he was, he will be, he has been, they have been, you were, I shall be.
 (4) We led our friends to the towns, which are many in number.
 (5) You fought in the lower province with the consuls, who are far different in customs and bravery. (6) We, who surpass many in bravery and refinement, have aroused the braver Germans.
 (7) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 10, part I.]

LESSON XIX.

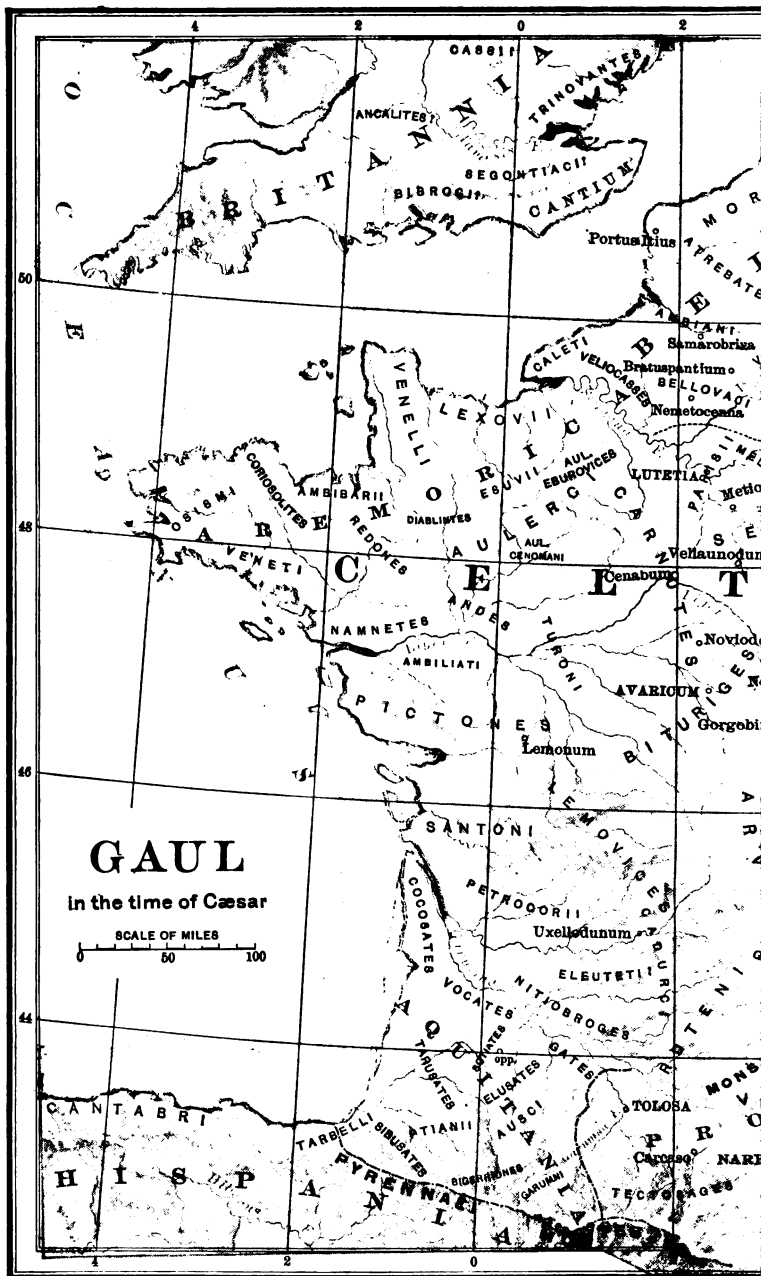
THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THREE CONJUGATIONS.

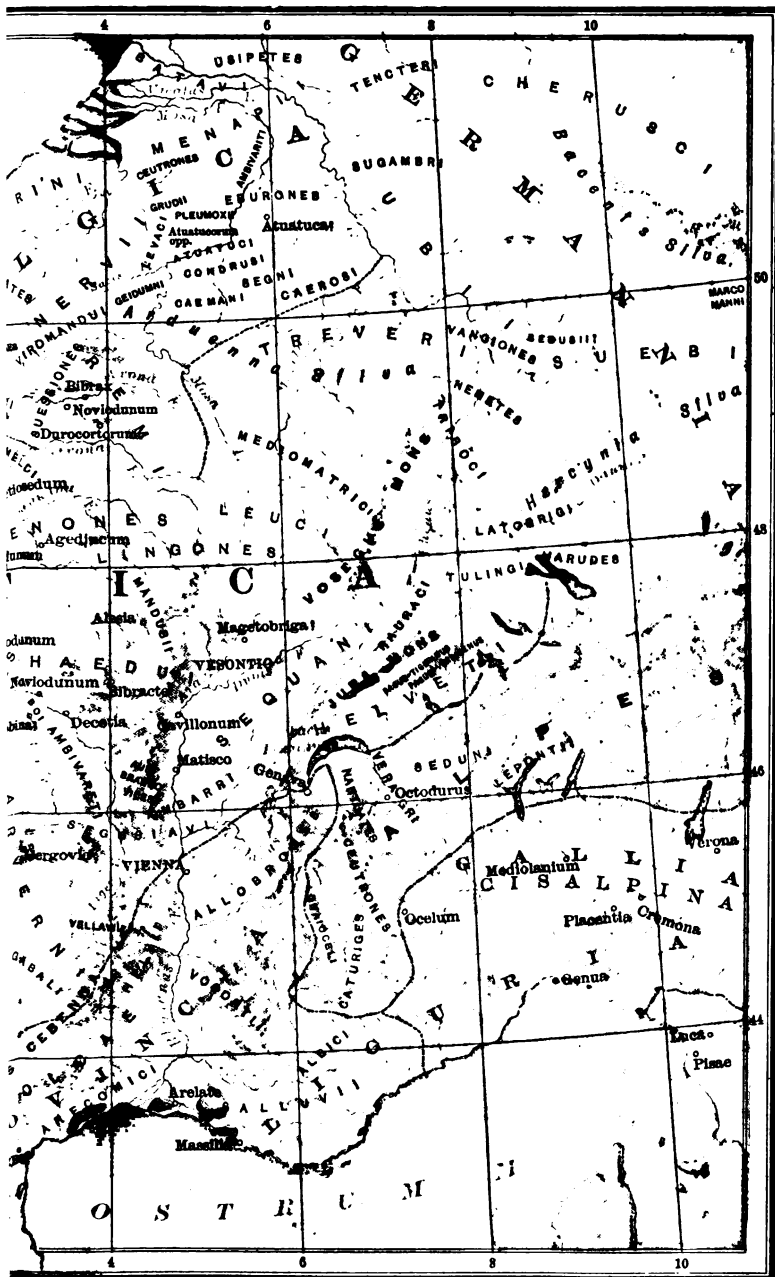
126. *The nations of Gaul and their characteristics.*

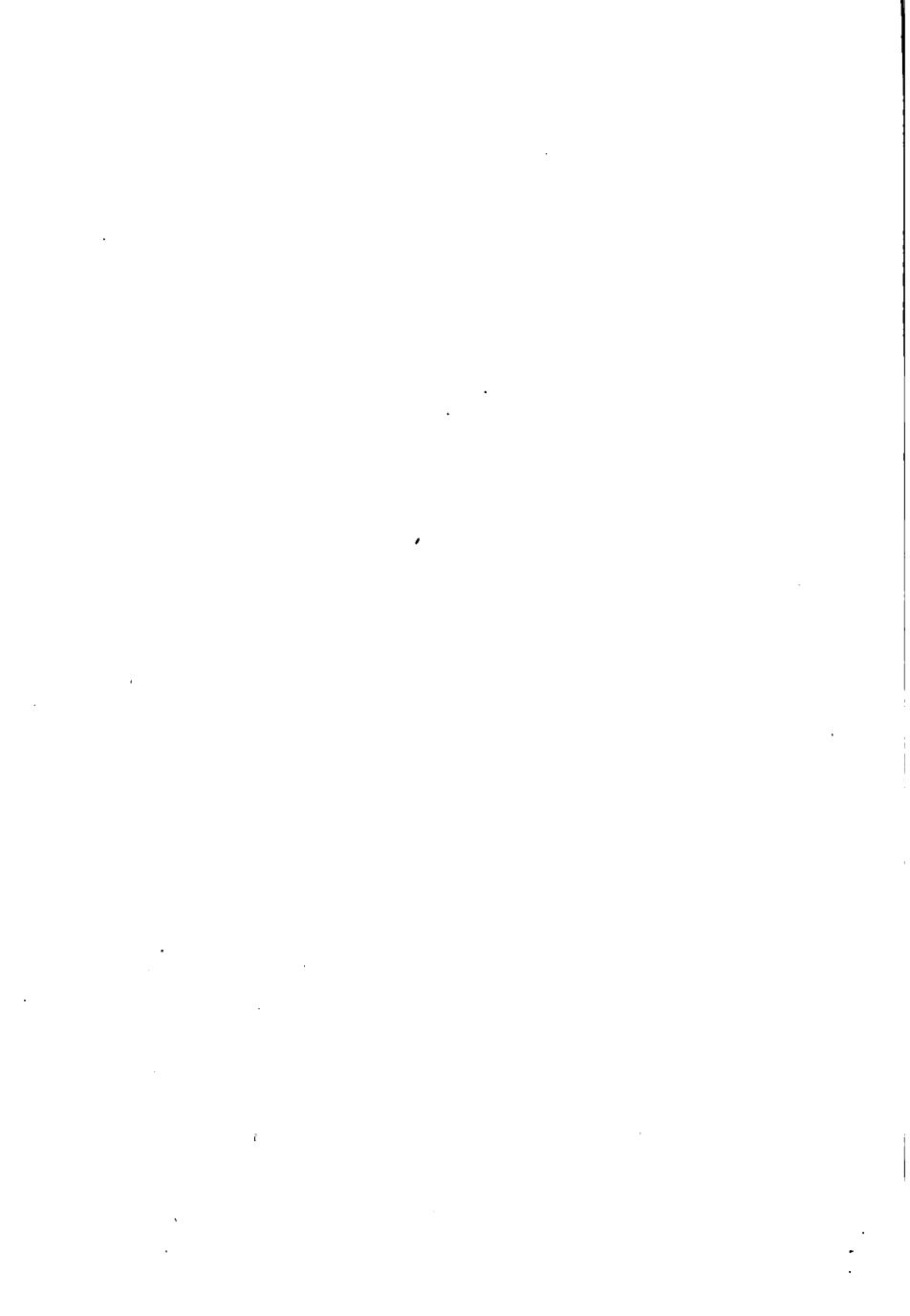
(In reading this description of Gaul, the student should verify on the map the several divisions and boundaries. Remember that Caesar is writing a history, which will be unintelligible without a geographical foundation.)

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, instituti, legibus inter se differunt. Gallös ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissimè absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe comitantur atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quà de causâ Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallös virtute praecedunt, quod ferè cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Quote verbatim the case rules applying to the words underscored in the above passage and show how these rules apply.







127.

PARADIGMS.

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE OF *Liberō*.PERFECT STEM: *liberāv-*.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>liberāveram</i> , I had liberated. | <i>liberāverāmus</i> , we had liberated. |
| 2. <i>liberāverās</i> , you had liberated. | <i>liberāverātis</i> , you had liberated. |
| 3. <i>liberāverat</i> , he had liberated. | <i>liberāverant</i> , they had liberated. |

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>liberāverō</i> , I shall have liberated. | <i>liberāverimus</i> , we shall have liberated. |
| 2. <i>liberāveris</i> , you will have liberated. | <i>liberāveritis</i> , you will have liberated. |
| 3. <i>liberāverit</i> , he will have liberated. | <i>liberāverint</i> , they will have liberated. |

Observe:—

(1) that the pluperfect tense is formed by adding to the perfect stem the various forms of the imperfect of the verb *sum*.

(2) that the future perfect tense is formed by adding to the perfect stem the various forms of the future of the verb *sum* with the exception of the third plural, where *erunt* is changed to *erint*.

128. TABLE OF THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.

PERFECT STEMS. SINGULAR TENSE ENDINGS. PLURAL TENSE ENDINGS.

PLUPERFECT.

<i>mōv-</i>	{	<i>-eram</i>	{	<i>-erāmus</i>
<i>divis-</i>		<i>-erās</i>		<i>-erātis</i>
<i>cēp-</i>		<i>-erat</i>		<i>-erant</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>mōv-</i>	{	<i>-erō</i>	{	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>divis-</i>		<i>-eris</i>		<i>-eritis</i>
<i>cēp-</i>		<i>-erit</i>		<i>-erint</i>

By adding the above tense endings to *fu-*, the perfect stem of the verb *sum*, we obtain the pluperfect and future perfect of this verb. In precisely the same way are formed the same tenses of all verbs.

129.

VOCABULARY.

coniūrātiō, **coniūrātiōnis**, f., *conspiracy, plot.* **cupiditās**, **cupiditātis**, f., *ambition, desire.*

accūsō, **accūsāre**, **accūsāvi**, **accūsātus**, *accuse, blame.*

contineō, **continēre**, **continui**, **contentus**, *bound, hem in.*

faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factus**, *make, do, form.*

indūcō, **indūcere**, **indūxi**, **inductus**, *lead in or on, induce, influence.*

occupō, **occupāre**, **occupāvi**, **occupātus**, *seize.*

prohibeō, **prohibēre**, **prohibui**, **prohibitus**, *keep away, prevent.*

vāstō, **vāstāre**, **vāstāvi**, **vāstātus**, *lay waste, destroy, devastate.*

130.

WRITTEN WORK.

Conjugate fully the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of **sum**, **vāstō**, **indūcō**, and **faciō**, underscoring the perfect stems of each form, and writing the meaning of the third plural of each tense.

131.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) **Accūsāvimus**, **accūsāverimus**, **accūsāverāmus**. (2) **Prohibuerās**, **prohibueris**; **fuisti**. (3) **Fēcērunt**, **fēcērunt**, **fēcērunt**; **fuerant**. (4) **Indūcuntur**, **indūxeris**, **indūxerant**; **fuerit**. (5) **Vāstās**, **vāstāveris**, **vāstāverant**; **fuerant**. (6) **Erās**, **eris**, **erunt**, **fuerunt**, **fuerint**. (7) **Bella gessisti et superāris**. (8) **Fuga eōrum Gallōrum Belgās mōvit**. (9) **Cupiditās rēgni eum Helvētium indūxit**. (10) **Coniūrātiō eius nōbilissimī Helvētī hōs omnēs incitāverat**.

II. (1) They seize, they have seized, they had seized, they will have seized. (2) You lay waste, you laid waste, you had laid waste, you will have laid waste. (3) We hem in, we are hemmed in, we shall have hemmed in, we had hemmed in. (4) You (sing.) are being led, you have led, you had led, you will have led. (5) He has made, he makes, he had made, he will have made. (6) I am kept away, I have kept away, I had kept away, I shall have kept away. (7) The Germans had seized many towns of the Belgians, who were across the river Rhine. (8) The nobility of the Helvetians formed a conspiracy. (9) A

desire of royal power had influenced the noblest of the Helvetians. (10) We threw our missiles down from a great mountain.

LESSON XX.

THE IMPERFECT, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

132. *Boundaries of these nations.*

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad Inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

State the reasons for the cases of all words underscored in the above passage, quoting rules whenever possible.

133. Those forms of the English verb which denote the action as continuous or progressive in past time, as, *I was liberating*, are represented in Latin by the imperfect tense.

134.

PARADIGMS.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB
Liberō.

PRESENT STEM: liberā-.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. liberābam, I was liberating, I liberated.	liberābāmus, we were liberating, etc.
2. liberābās, you were liberating, etc.	liberābātis, you were liberating, etc.
3. liberābat, he was liberating, etc.	liberābant, they were liberating, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. liberābar, I was being liberated,
I was liberated. | liberābāmur, we were being liberated,
etc. |
| 2. liberābāris, you were being liberated,
etc. | liberābāminī, you were being liberated,
etc. |
| 3. liberābātur, he was being liberated,
etc. | liberābantur, they were being liberated,
etc. |

135. TABLE OF THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

PRESENT STEMS.	TENSE SIGN.	PERSONAL ENDINGS.	
	ACTIVE.	SING.	PLU.
occupā- movē- prohibē- }	-bā-	{ -m -s -t	{ -mus -tis -nt
	PASSIVE.		
occupā- monē- prohibē- }	-bā-	{ -r -ris -tur	{ -mur -minī -ntur

Observe: —

(1) that the imperfect tense of these conjugations is formed by adding to the present stem the sign of the imperfect tense, -bā, and the personal endings, both active and passive.

(2) that the tense sign, -bā, naturally long is shortened before final -m, -r, -t, and before -nt.

136.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Nōbilēs virtūte appellantur. — *They are called noble because of their bravery.* (2) Cupiditāte rēgnī id fēcit. — *He did this on account of his desire for royal power.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the ablative virtūte expresses the cause or reason why they are called noble.

(2) That in sentence 2 the phrase cupiditāte rēgnī expresses the reason why he did this. This ablative is called the Ablative of Cause and answers the question "Why?"

137. RULE. — *Cause is expressed by the ablative (usually without a preposition).*

138.**VOCABULARY.**

civitas, civitatis, f., *state*.

copia, -ae, f., *plenty*, in sing.; *forces*, in plu.

Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, m., *Orgetorix*, a leader of the Swiss.

dives, m., f., n. (divitis, genitive), *rich*; superlative ditissimus, -a, -um, *richest*.

quā rē, *on account of what thing*, why?

apud, prep. governing acc., *among*, *with*.

armō, armāre, armāvi, armātus, *arm*, *equip*.

effeminō, effemināre, effemināvi, effeminātus, *weaken*.

importō, importāre, importāvi, importātus, *import*, *carry in*.

persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsi, persuāsus, *persuade* (followed by dative translated as direct object).

spectō, spectāre, spectāvi, spectātus, *look*, *face*.

139.**WRITTEN WORK.**

Conjugate with meanings armō and contineō in the imperfect, active and passive, also persuādeō in the perfect active.

140.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Effēminant, effēminantur, effēminābantur. (2) Armat, armābat, armātur, armābātur. (3) Spectātis, spectābātis, spectāvistis, spectāverātis, spectāveritis. (4) Persuādet, persuādēbat, persuāsērunt, persuādēbant. (5) Prohibēbant, prohibuērunt, prohibēbāmus, prohibēbāmur. (6) Orgetorix rēgni cupiditate inducit. (7) Eā coniūrātiōne nobilitātis Orgetorix Helvētiis persuāserat. (8) Quā rē Orgetorix coniūrātiōnem fecit?

II. (1) We are armed, we were armed, you had armed, you were arming. (2) They were importing, they were being imported, we were importing, we have imported. (3) I was persuading; you (sing.) were facing; he was keeping away; we were accusing; you were moving; they were liberating. (4) On ac-

count of his bravery, he persuaded the Swiss. (5) On account of this conspiracy, the consuls waged these wars. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 8, part I.]

141.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Orgetorix fuit nōbilis et dives. Apud Helvētiōs fuit longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus. Cum (when) Marcus Messāla et Marcus Pīsō erant cōsulēs, Orgetorix cupiditāte rēgnī inducēbātur. Marcō Messālā et Marcō Pīsōne cōsulibus,¹ inductus² cupiditāte rēgnī, Orgetorix coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Cīvītātī Helvētiōrum persuāsit ut (that) dē suis finibus exīrent (they should emigrate). Helvētiis persuāsit ut cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent.

¹ Marcō Messālā . . . cōsulibus, *M. Messāla, etc., being consuls*, a construction known as the ablative absolute, best translated by the cum clause in the previous sentence.

² inductus, a perf. pass. participle. The perfect passive participle, the fourth principal part of a transitive verb, is declined exactly like the adjective *lātus*, -a, -um, agreeing in G. N. C. with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

SECOND REVIEW.

I. List in a column and index as taught in the First Review the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: copious, counsel, flume, imperial, initial, mountainous, solar. Add to this list in the index the following: cīvītās, proelium, tēlum.

II. List in a column and compare as in § 104 the Latin adjectives from which the following English words are derived: fortitude, latitude, longitude, nobility.

III. List in a column the Latin verbs from which the following English nouns are wholly or partly derived and give the conjugation, principal parts, and meaning of each, distinguishing as in § 112 the various stems of each: absence, accusation, appellation, armament, capture, content, contention, (con)tingency, * (de)vastation,

*Only the first two principal parts are required of verbs found from nouns marked with an asterisk.

duct, (e)jection, fact, habit, incitement, inducement, (in)spec-
tion, obtaining, occupation, persuasion, prohibition, (in)superable,
verge.* Add to this list the verb *gerō*.

IV. List the following English adverbs in a column, placing
opposite each in a second column their Latin equivalents: almost,
continually, even, far, least, not, often.

V. Decline consecutively the list of ten nouns formed in I., by
giving the nominative singular of the first noun, the genitive
singular of the second, etc., the nominative plural of the sixth,
the genitive plural of the seventh, etc., and finally the ablative
plural of the tenth noun, thus giving one form of each noun, and
place the demonstrative *hic* in G. N. C. agreement with each form. †
In a second column decline consecutively the same list, starting
with the nominative singular of the fourth and ending with the ab-
lative plural of the third, placing the demonstrative *is* in G. N. C.
agreement with each form. Continue the same exercise, starting
with the sixth noun and placing the relative *qui* in G. N. C. agree-
ment with each form.

VI. Conjugate in full in the active voice the present indicative
of *iacō*, imperfect of *habeō*, future of *absum*, perfect of *persuādeō*,
pluperfect of *faciō*, future perfect of *indūcō*. In the passive voice
present indicative of *obtinēō*, imperfect of *obtinēō*.

* Only two principal parts are required.

† A model of this scheme will be found in the Appendix, § 30.

LESSON XXI.

IMPERFECT ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGA- TION.—IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SEC- OND DECLENSIONS.

142. *A powerful noble plots to make himself king of the Swiss.*

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx.
Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditatē inductus
coniurātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et civitatī persuāsīt, ut dē finibus
suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent.

143. Memorize the imperfect indicative, active and passive, of *dividō*, App. § 21, noting that *ē* of the present stem, *divide*, is lengthened before *-bā*, the tense sign of the imperfect.

144.

PARADIGM.

DECLENSION OF *Tōtus*, *whole*, AN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nominative</i>	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	The plural of this adjective is declined like that of the adjective <i>lātus</i> , § 43.
<i>Genitive</i>	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	
<i>Dative</i>	tōti	tōti	tōti	
<i>Accusative</i>	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	
<i>Ablative</i>	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	

Observe:—

(1) that the singular of *tōtus* is declined exactly like *lātus* in all cases except the genitive and dative.

(2) that the genitive singular ends in *-ius* and the dative singular in *-i* in all genders like the same cases of *ille*.

145. The following nine adjectives have the genitive in *-ius* and the dative in *-i*:

alius, *alia*, *aliud*, *another*.

nūllus, *nūlla*, *nūllum*, *no*.

sōlus, *sōla*, *sōlum*, *alone*.

tōtus, *tōta*, *tōtum*, *whole*, *entire*.

ūllus, *ūlla*, *ūllum*, *any*.

ūnus, *ūna*, *ūnum*, *one*.

alter, *altera*, *alterum*,¹ *the other*, *the second*.

neuter, *neutra*, *neutrum*, *neither*.

uter, *utra*, *utrum*, *which* (of two).

¹ *Alter* usually has short *-ius* in the genitive singular, *alterius*.

146.

VOCABULARY.

locus, *-i*, *m.*, *place*; *plu.* (*neuter*),
loca, *locōrum*.

natūra, *-ae*, *f.*, *nature*, *character*.

perfacilis, *-e*, *adj.*, *very easy*.

facile, *adv.*, from *facilis*, *easily*; *comparative degree*, *facilius*.

undique, *adv.*, *on all sides*, *from all sides*.

cum, *conj.*, with *subj.*, *since*.

quod, *conj.*, *because*, with *indicative* and *subjunctive*.

dīcō, dicere, dixi, dictus, say, speak, appoint.

potior, potiri, potitus sum, get control of. (This verb governs the ablative translated as direct object. Potior is passive in form, but active in meaning. Such verbs are called deponents.)

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestatus, stand before, surpass. (Like *persuādeō* this verb governs a dative translated as a direct object.)

147.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings the imperfect indicative active and passive of *dūcō* and the perfect indicative active of *dīcō*.

(2) Decline in singular and plural *alius*; also *alter* and *locus* in G. N. C. agreement.

148.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Incolēbat, incolēbātur; gerēbat, gerēbātur; dūcēbat, dūcēbātur; dīcēbat, dīcēbātur.* (2) *Gerēbāmus; incolēbāmus; dūcēbāmus, dūcēbāmur; dīcēbāmus, dīcēbāmur; dīvidēbāmus, dīvidēbāmur.* (3) *Dīcēbant, dīcēbāris; dūcēbar, dūcēbāminī; gerēbātis; dīvidēbāminī.* (4) *Helvētīi indūcēbantur; flūmina vergēbant; bella gerēbantur; aliōs praecēdēbātis.* (5) *Aliī cōsulēs cupiditatē rēgnī indūcēbantur.* (6) *Orgetorix sōlus omnēs nōbilissimōs et dītissimōs virtūte praecēdēbat.* (7) *Quod undique flūminibus lātissimīs continēbāmur, eōs facilius prohibēbāmus.* (8) *Aliud flūmen Rhēnus appellābātur.*

II. (1) We were leading, we were being led; we were dividing, we were being divided; we were inhabiting. (2) You were dividing, you were being divided. You (sing.) were leading, you (sing.) were being led; you were hastening. (3) We were carrying on war; they were touching upon another river; you were surpassing the whole state. (4) The rivers of the whole of Gaul are very wide and deep. (5) The noblest Helvetians were led by Orgetorix, the richest (man) of the whole state.

149.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Imperium tōtius Galliae erat perfacile. Tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri erat perfacile. Id erat perfacile cum (since) Helvētīi vir-

tūte omnibus praestārent.¹ Orgetorix dixit id esse perfacile cum Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praestārent.¹ Orgetorix dixit potiri imperiō tōtius Galliae esse perfacile cum Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praestārent. Helvētiī undique loci natūrā continentur. Hōc² id³ eis facilius persuāsit, quod Helvētiī undique loci natūrā continentur.

¹ praestārent, imperfect subjunctive; translate here as imperfect indicative.

² An ablative of cause, translated *on this account, for this reason*.

³ Id is the direct object of persuāsit. Since the indirect object, eis, is translated after this verb as direct object, supply "to do" before id.

LESSON XXII.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

150. *The bravery and restlessness of the Swiss favor the plans of Orgetorix.*

Dixit perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci natūrā Helvētiī continentur.

151. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in -us and -u. Those ending in -us are usually masculine; those in -u are always neuter.

152.

PARADIGMS.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS: STEMS ENDING IN U.

passus, m., *pace*.

STEM: passu-.

BASE: pass-.

cornū, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).

STEM: cornu-.

BASE: corn-.

SINGULAR.			CASE ENDINGS.	
			M.	N.
<i>Nominative</i>	passus	cornū	-us	-ū
<i>Genitive</i>	passūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
<i>Dative</i>	passui	cornū	-ui	-ū
<i>Accusative</i>	passum	cornū	-um	-ū
<i>Ablative</i>	passu	cornū	-ū	-ū

	PLURAL.		CASE ENDINGS.	
			M.	N.
<i>Nominative</i>	passūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Genitive</i>	passuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
<i>Dative</i>	passibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Accusative</i>	passūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
<i>Ablative</i>	passibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

Observe : —

That the quantity of the -u in *passus* serves to distinguish cases otherwise alike in form.

Lacus, m., *lake*, is declined exactly like *passus* with the exception of the dative and ablative plural, which end in -ubus instead of -ibus.

153.

VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., *field, territory* (declined like the masculine of the adjective *noster* in § 56).

cornū, cornūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).

exercitus, -ūs, m., *trained army*.

Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains, a range extending from the Rhone to the Rhine.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake*.

Lemannus, -ī, m., the ancient name for Lake Geneva.

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting*.

passus, -ūs, m., *pace* (the distance covered in two steps, about five feet).

alter, -a, -um, *the other*, the second of a series.

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire*.

154.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline in full *lacus*, *exercitus*; *occāsus* in sing. only.
- (2) Decline *ager*; also *altera pars*.
- (3) Compare with meanings *altus* (*alt*).

155.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

- I. (1) *Passū*, *passuum*; *lacubus*; *cornua*; *passibus*; *lacuī*.
- (2) *Inter lacūs et montēs sunt lātissima flūmina*. (3) *Unā ex parte* (on one side) *nostrī finēs ad inferiōrem partem Rhēnī pertinēbant*. (4) *Tertiā ex parte nostra prōvincia ab Helvētiis lacū Lemannō dividitur*. (5) *Cōsulēs ad agrōs Helvētiōs¹ cum ūnō cornū exercitūs contendēbant*. (6) *Omnēs aliōs virtūte facile*

praecedebamus quod cotidiana proelia cum exercitu Germanorum contendebamus. (7) Nobilissimi eramus, quod institutis et legibus differebamus. (8) Orgetorix coniurationem fecit et toti nobilitati persuasit. (9) Totum exercitum ex agris duxerat et imperium alterius partis Galliae occupabat. (10) Lacus Lemannus altissimus agrum Helvetium¹ a nostra provincia dividebat.

II. (1) Of many paces; of one lake; in the other lakes; by the wings of the other army. (2) On one side our fields are separated from the Germans by the highest mountains. (3) Those places were hemmed in by other rivers. (4) One Gaul was leading a wing of the army, a second held the control of the fields, a third was hastening to the lake. (5) This river, which was called the Rhine, was very far away from our fields. (6) Many paces were between our armies and the army of the whole of Gaul. (7) We were separated from these traders by wider rivers and deeper lakes.

156.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISES.

Unā ex parte finēs Helvetiorum flumine Rhēnō continentur.



ROMAN CENTURIONS OR CAPTAINS
CARRYING THEIR STAFF OF OFFICE.

Rhēnus est flūmen altissimum et lātissimum, quod flūmen agrum Helvetium¹ a Germanis dividit. Ei finēs alterā ex parte monte Iūrā continentur. Is mōns altissimus est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. Tertiā ex parte finēs Helvētiōrum lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. Id flūmen nostram provinciam ab Helvētiis dividit.

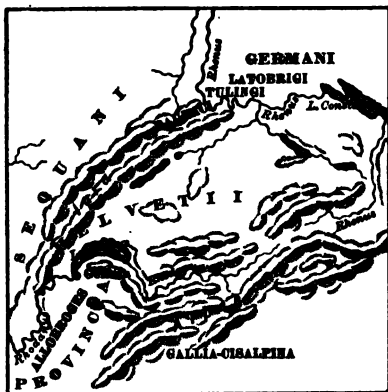
¹ This word, usually used substantively, is here an adjective.

LESSON XXIII.

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE FIRST
AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

157. *The ancient Swiss were hemmed in by mountains and rivers.*

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germanīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.



ANCIENT SWITZERLAND.

158.

PARADIGMS.

FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *Liberō*.PRESENT STEM: *liberā-*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.

1. *liberābō*, I shall liberate.
2. *liberābis*, you will liberate.
3. *liberābit*, he will liberate.

PLURAL.

- liberābimus*, we shall liberate.
- liberābitis*, you will liberate.
- liberābunt*, they will liberate.

PASSIVE VOICE.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>liberābor</i> , I shall be liberated. | <i>liberābimur</i> , we shall be liberated. |
| 2. <i>liberāberis</i> , you will be liberated. | <i>liberābimini</i> , you will be liberated. |
| 3. <i>liberābitur</i> , he will be liberated. | <i>liberābuntur</i> , they will be liberated. |

Observe: —

That the future tense of this verb is formed by adding to the present stem the sign of the future tense *-bi*, and the personal

endings, both active and passive. In the first singular active, the *i* of the *-bi* is lost before *ō*, while in the third plural, active and passive, the *i* becomes *u*. In the second singular passive, the *i* becomes *e*.

All verbs of the First and Second Conjugations form their futures in the same way, as may be seen by the following: present *occupō*, future *occupābō*, present *moveō*, future *movēbō*.

159.

VOCABULARY.

dolor, *dolōris*, m., *grief*.

homō, *hominis*, m. or f., *man*, *human being*.

iumentum, -i, n., *beast of burden*.

cupidus, -a, -um, *fond*, *desirous*, *eager for* (followed by genitive).

finitimus, -a, -um, *near*, *neighboring*;

when used substantively, *neighbor*.

lātē, adv., from *lātus*, *widely*.

minus, adv., in comparative degree, *less*.

afficiō, *afficere*, *affēci*, *affectus*, *affect*, *afflict*.

bellō, 1,¹ *wage war*, *bellandī*, gen. of what is known as the gerund, translated, *of warring*.

fiō, *ferī*, *factus sum* (used as the passive of *faciō*), *be made*, *become*, *happen*.

inferō, *inferre*, *intuli*, *illātus*, *wage (war) upon*; *bellum finitimis* *Inferre*, *wage war upon neighbors*.

possum, *posse*, *potui*, *be able*; *possent*, imperfect subjunctive.

vagor, *vagāri*, *vagātus sum* (deponent verb), *wander about*, *roam*.

160.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings *armō*, *moveō*, and *contineō* in the future indicative, active and passive.

(2) Compare *cupidus* (*cupid-*).

161.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Appellābit*, *appellābitur*; *habēbit*, *habēbitur*; *prohibēbit*, *prohibēbitur*. (2) *Superābimus*, *superābimur*; *prohibēbimus*, *prohibēbimur*; *accūsābimus*, *accūsābimur*. (3) *Obtinēbunt*, *obtinēbuntur*; *dabunt*, *dabuntur*; *incitābunt*, *incitābuntur*.

¹ A numeral to the right of a verb indicates that its principal parts are regular; that is, like those of the model verb of the conjugation indicated.

(4) Effeminābitis; importābuntur; commeābis; prohibēberis; habēbiminī. (5) Haec iumenta magna cornua habēbant et latē vagābantur. (6) Magnō dolōre afficiēbāmur quod montibus et fluminibus a Gallis dividēbāmur. (7) Fortissimī Gallōrum suis finibus (see § 68), Germānōs cotidiānis proeliis prohibēbunt. (8) Germānī agrōs Gallōrum obtinēbunt quod eis virtūte praestābunt. (9) Haec oppida quae sunt inter montēs et lacūs, multis bellis vāstābuntur. (10) In nostris finibus ad vicōs Gallōrum vagābimur.

II. (1) He will move, he will be moved; he will conquer, he will be conquered; he will hold, he will be held. (2) We shall call, we shall be called; we shall give, we shall be given; we shall move, we shall be moved. (3) They will accuse, they will be accused; they will prevent, they will be prevented; they will free, they will be freed. (4) You will wander; we shall be weakened; I shall hold; they will resort. (5) The Gauls will resort with all their forces to these lakes and rivers.

162.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

His rēbus (abl. of cause, on account of these facts) minus latē vagābantur. His rēbus fiēbat ut minus latē vagārentur (imperf. subj., trans. as if vagābantur). Fiēbat ut bellum finitimis minus facile inferre possent (trans. last word as if imp. ind.). Quā ex parte (abl. of cause, trans. *on this account*) magnō dolōre afficiēbantur.

LESSON XXIV.

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.
—THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.

163. *The Swiss long for opportunities of war and conquest.*

His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus latē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur.

164.

PARADIGM.

FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB *Dividē*.PRESENT STEM : *divide-*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.

1. *dividam*, I shall divide.
2. *dividēs*, you will divide.
3. *dividet*, he will divide.

PLURAL.

- dividēmus*, we shall divide.
- dividētis*, you will divide.
- divident*, they will divide.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. *dividar*, I shall be divided.
2. *dividēris*, you will be divided.
3. *dividētur*, he will be divided.

- dividēmur*, we shall be divided.
- dividēmini*, you will be divided.
- dividentur*, they will be divided.

Observe : —

(1) that in the future of the Third Conjugation the final *e* of the stem is lengthened, and to this modified form are added the personal endings.

(2) that this final *e* of the stem is lost in the first singular and is short before final *-t* and before *-nt*.

165.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Unam partem Galliae Belgae incolunt.* — *The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul.* (2) *Finēs multa mīlia passuum patēbant.* — *The territories extended many thousands of paces; i.e. many miles.*

Observe : —

(1) that in sentence 1 *unam partem* denotes a part, while the genitive *Galliae* denotes the whole to which the part belongs.

(2) that the same will be seen to be true of *mīlia* and *passuum* in sentence 2. This construction is known as the Genitive of the Whole.

166. RULE. — *The whole, depending upon a word denoting a part, is expressed by the genitive.*

167.

VOCABULARY.

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f., *bravery*.
glōria, -ae, f., *glory*; glōria belli atque fortitūdinis, *reputation for bravery in war*.

lātītūdō, lātītūdinis, f., *width*.

longitūdō, longitūdinis, f., *length*.

mille, n., *thousand*. In singular indeclinable and usually an adjective. The plural, **mīlia**, **mīlium**, a noun, is declined like the neuter plural of **omnis**, § 61.

arbitror, arbitrāri, arbitrātus sum (deponent verb), *think*.
pateō, patēre, patul, —, *extend*.

multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *multitude, a large number*; multitūdō hominum, *population*.

sē, reflexive pronoun, acc. or abl. case, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*, according to the meaning of the subject.

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.

autem, conj., *moreover, however*.

prō, prep. governing abl. case, *for, in view of*.

168.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings the future indicative, active and passive, of **dūcō** and the future indicative active of **gerō**.

(2) Put **omnis** in agreement with **mille** in the plural and decline them together.

(3) Compare **angustus** (**angust-**) showing all gender endings.

(4) Decline **lātītūdō** in the singular only.

169.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) **Dūcēmus**, **dūcēmur**; **dīvidēmus**, **dīvidēmur**; **incolet**, **incolētur**. (2) **Dīvidet**, **dīvidētur**; **bellum geret**, **bellum gerētur**; **dūcet**, **dūcētur**. (3) **Prohibēbimīnī**; **indūcēminī**, **indūcētis**; **dīcent**, **dīcēmur**. (4) **Agri eius Helvētī tria mīlia passuum patēbant**. (5) **Haec flūmina Germānōs ā finibus Gallōrum dīvidēbant**. (6) **Cum tribus mīlibus Germānōrum bellum gerēmus**. (7) **Helvētīī multa mīlia passuum ad finēs Gallōrum vagābantur**. (8) **Haec oppida Gallōrum omnibus nostris cōpiīs occupābimus**. (9) **Omnēs finitimōs glōriā belli atque fortitūdinis praecēdēmus**. (10) **Hī hominēs erant bellandī cupidī et ad nostram prōvinciam vagābantur**.

II. (1) You will lead, you will be led; you will divide, you will be divided; you will inhabit; you will wage. (2) We shall influence, we shall be influenced; we shall say; we shall prevent, we shall be prevented. (3) He will lead, he will be led; it will be inhabited; he will hasten; it will be waged. (4) The consuls with a large part of their forces will hasten into the territories of the Swiss. (5) In the number of large towns, the Gauls surpassed the Swiss. (6) The Swiss will lead a great number of troops into the territories of their neighbors and will fight (in) many battles.

170.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Helvētīi angustōs finēs habēbant. Helvētīi arbitrābantur sē habēre angustōs finēs. Eī finēs erant angustī prō multitūdine hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis. Finēs Helvētīōrum multa milia passuum in lātitudinem et longitūdinem patēbant.

LESSON XXV.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*. — ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.171. *Their bravery and population entitle them to larger territories.*

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant. [Cap. II. Finis.]

172. The imperfect and future of *capiō* differ from the same tenses of other verbs of the Third Conjugation only in the insertion of *i* before *e* of the present stem.

Review the present and memorize the imperfect and future of *capiō*, App., § 22.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

173. (1) *Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat.* — *He had held the royal power for many years.* (2) *Agri tria mīlia passuum patēbant.* — *The fields extended three miles.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the accusative *multōs annōs* denotes the time during which he had held the royal power.

(2) that in sentence 2 the accusative *mīlia* denotes the extent of space over which the fields extended. This accusative, known as the Accusative of Extent, answers the question "How far?" "How long?"

174. *RULE.* — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*

175.

VOCABULARY.

amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance.*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

auctoritās, auctoritātis, f., *authority, influence.*

frumentum, -ī, n., *grain; in plu., standing grain.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

sēmentis, sēmentis, f., *planting, sowing.*

māximus, -a, -um, greatest, superlative of adj. māgnus.
quot, interrogative, how many?

iter, itineris, n. *road, march, route; iter facere, to march.*

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead to, influence.

coēmō, coēmere, coēmi, coēptus, buy up, purchase.

comparō, 1, prepare.

cōfirmō, 1, confirm, establish.

cōstituō, -stituere, -stitul, -stitutus, decide.

permovēō, 2, move thoroughly, arouse, alarm.

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus, be available, hold out.

176.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate with meanings *afficiō, iaciō, and dīcō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

(2) Decline *iter* and *prōximus* in agreement.

177.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Iacis, iaceris; afficis, afficeris; capiēbās, capiēbāris.*
 (2) *Afficiunt, afficiuntur; iaciēbat, iaciēbātur; capient, capientur.*
 (3) *Iaceris, iaciēris, iaciēbāris; capiētis, capiēbant.* (4) *Affici-*
mus, afficiēmus; iaciēbantur, iaciuntur, iaciuntur, iaciētis.
 (5) *Auctōritāte Orgetorigis adducti, bellum multōs annōs gerēbā-*
mus. (6) *Agri, quī flūmine Rhēnō continēbantur, multa milia*
passuum patēbant. (7) *Helvētiī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur et*
ad finēs Gallōrum vagābantur. (8) *Quot milia passuum finēs*
Helvētiōrum patēbant?

II. (1) They hurl, they are hurled, they will be hurled; they will take, they were being taken. (2) You were being affected, you will be affected; you will be alarmed; you will be hurled. (3) We were making, we shall make; we shall establish, we shall be established; we shall be affected. (4) We shall have narrow territories, which will extend many miles in (in with acc.) length. (5) They will make a march three miles with all their forces. (6) Because of their bravery the Helvetians waged war for many years. (7) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 8, part I.]

178.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

His rēbus (by these things) Helvētiī adducēbantur. Auctōritāte Orgetorigis permovēbantur. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti, Helvētiī cōstituērunt ea comparāre. Ea ad proficiscendum (to starting out) pertinēbant. Cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent (imp. subj., transl. as if pertinēbant) comparāre. Cōstituērunt iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum (transl. greatest possible) numerum cōmēre. Cōstituērunt quoque sēmentēs quam māximās facere ut (that) in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret (imp. subj., transl. might be available). Cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmābant. Ea omnia Helvētiī cōstituērunt facere.

LESSON XXVI.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.—DECLENSION OF REFLEXIVE AND INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

179. *The Swiss make elaborate preparations for their great trek.*

His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiēdum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.



ANCIENT PLOUGHBOY.

180. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine except *diēs*, which is usually masculine, though often feminine in the singular.

181. PARADIGM.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

diēs, m., f., *day*.

STEM : *diē-*.

BASE : *di-*.

rēs, f., *thing*.

STEM : *rē-*.

BASE : *r-*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		CASE ENDINGS.	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs	-ēs
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>	-ēi	-ērum
<i>Dative</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ēi	-ēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ē	-ēbus

Observe : —

That in *diēs* *e* is long except in the accusative singular, although according to the general law of quantity one would expect to find a short vowel before another vowel.

Diēs and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension which are fully declined in the plural.

182. **Sui** is a reflexive pronoun, reflecting back to the subject for its meaning, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*. Memorize its declension in the App., § 15. It will be found to have no nominative. Why?

183. **Ipse, -a, -um** is an intensive pronoun, ordinarily an appositive, *himself, herself, itself*. Memorize its declension in the App., § 16.

184.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Sē amīcōs Belgārum appellāt.* — *They call themselves friends of the Belgians.* (2) *Helvētīī ipsī eōs suīs finibus prohibent.* — *The Helvetians themselves keep them away from their (the Helvetians') territories.* (3) *In eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.* — *They wage war in the territories of these (i.e. their enemies).* (4) *Cōpiās sēcūm dūxit.* — *He led his forces with him.* (5) *Suās cōpiās cum eō mīserunt.* — *They sent their forces with him.*

Observe : —

(1) that in sentence 1 *themselves* is a reflexive pronoun referring to the subject of the verb and is translated by **sē**, while in sentence 2 *themselves* is in apposition with *Helvetians*, intensifies its meaning, and is translated by **ipsī**.

(2) that in sentence 4 *him* refers to the subject *he* and is translated by **sē**, while in sentence 5 *him* does not refer to the subject and is translated by **eō**, the ablative of **is**.

(3) that in sentence 4 the preposition **cum** becomes enclitic with **sē**.

(4) that in sentence 2 *their* denotes the same person as the subject and is translated by the possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um**, while in sentence 3 *their* does not refer to the subject and is translated by **eōrum**, the genitive plural of **is, ea, id**.

(5) that in sentence 4 the possessive is omitted because not required for clearness or emphasis.

SUMMARY.

A third personal pronoun is translated by the reflexive when referring to the subject ; otherwise by a demonstrative. Similarly, possession in the third person is translated by *suus*, -a, -um, when referring to the subject, otherwise by the genitive, singular or plural, of a demonstrative. When merely intensive and not reflexive, the compound personal pronouns, *himself*, etc. are translated by *ipse*, -a, -um.

185.

VOCABULARY.

biennium, -i, n., *a period of two years.*

diēs, *diēi*, m., *day.*

lĕgātĭō, *lĕgātĭōnis*, f., *embassy, mission.*

profectiō, *profectiōnis*, f., *departure.*

rēs, *rei*, f., *thing.*

ipse, -a, -um, intensive pronoun,
himself, herself, itself.

suī, genitive of the reflexive pronoun,
meaning of *himself, themselves*,
etc., according to the subject.

satis, adv., *enough.*

cōficiō, *cōficere*, *cōfici*, *cōfectus*, *accomplish, complete, exhaust.*

dĕligō, *dĕligere*, *dĕlēgi*, *dĕlēctus*, *choose, select.*

suscipiō, *suscipere*, *suscēpi*, *susceptus* (sub, *under*; *capiō*, *take*),
undertake; *sibi suscipere*, *to take upon one's self.*

186.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write out the imperfect and future indicative, active and passive, of *dĕligō* and *suscipiō*.

(2) Decline *annus* and *lĕgātĭō*.

187.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Belgae ipsī sē et eōs accūsant.* (2) *Orgetorix ipse hās rēs fēcit*; *Orgetorix hās rēs ipsās fēcit.* (3) *Gallī suās cōpiās in eōrum finēs multōs diēs dūcent.* (4) *Mercātōrēs ipsī eōs fortēs appellant.* (5) *Helvētiī eās rēs sibi suscēpērunt.* (6) *Ipsī sua oppida occupant*; *ipsī eōrum oppida occupant.* (7) *Gallī ipsī lĕgibus et Institūtīs inter sē differunt.* (8) *Arbitrābantur sē¹ angustōs finēs habēre.* (9) *Sunt inter eōs montēs et flūmina.* (10) *Suās cōpiās sēcum dūxērunt.*

¹ Masculine plural accusative. Accusative because subject of the infinitive *habēre*. Why masculine plural?

II. (1) The Belgians are liberating themselves. (2) The Belgians themselves liberated them. (3) The town itself was near to them. (4) Orgetorix arouses him. (5) Orgetorix arouses himself. (6) Orgetorix himself arouses the Gauls. (7) They will complete these things for themselves. (8) They will march with him into his territories. (9) He will give his territories to them.

188.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISES.

Ad eas res cōficiendās (for completing these things) biennium est satis. Biennium esse sibi satis dūxerunt.¹ In (for) tertium annum profectiō lēge cōfirmātur. Lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs Orgetorix sibi suscepit.

¹ With the accusative and infinitive dūcō means, *consider*.

THIRD REVIEW.

I. List in a column with meanings the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: authoritative, locality, itinerary, lake, pacify, agrarian, real, human, pace, multitudinous, natural, million, latitude, legation, annual. Add to this list the Latin nouns for friendship, grain, departure.

II. List in a column and index as in the First Review the Latin adjectives meaning: easy, neighboring, great, desirous, comparing the last named.

III. List in a column and give the principal parts and meanings of each Latin verb from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: vagrant, potent, patent, adduce, constitution, confirmation, confection, delegation. Add to this list the Latin verbs meaning: prepare, alarm, get possession, undertake.

IV. Write in a column the following English words, placing opposite each its Latin equivalent: from all sides, moreover, than, enough.

V. Decline consecutively as in the Second Review the first ten nouns in I., starting (a) with the third noun and putting **tôtus** in G. N. C. agreement with each form; (b) with the sixth noun, putting **alius** in agreement with each form; (c) with the eighth, putting **alter** in agreement with each form. Index as in the previous review lessons the remaining nouns in I, noting that one of these nouns varies in the meaning of the plural.

VI. Conjugate in full the imperfect and future indicative, active and passive, of **permoveō**, **dēligō**, and **suscipiō**, marking all long vowels with care.

VII. Review the translation of the text at the head of Lessons XXI-XXV, inclusive. Select in this text all examples of the Genitive of the Whole and of the Accusative of Extent, illustrating these constructions by short original Latin sentences translated into English.

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS.

VIII. (1) Most nouns in **-ēs**, which increase (have more syllables) in the genitive, nouns in **-er**, **-or**, and **-ōs** are masculine.

(2) Most nouns in **-ēs**, which do not increase in the genitive, nouns in **-ō**, **-ās**, **-is**, **-ūs** (genitive **-ūtis** or **-ūdis**), **-x**, and in **-s** preceded by a consonant are feminine.

(3) Nouns in **-c**, **-i**, **-t**, **-y**, **-l**, **-a**, **-n**, **-e**, **-ar**, **-ūs** (genitive **-oris** or **-eris**), are neuter.

Many exceptions to these rules will be found, but these are best learned from practice. Remember that, whatever their endings, nouns denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine.

Apply these rules to the following third declension nouns, giving the gender only of each: **pater**, **tempus**, **ōrātiō**, **iūs**, **frāter**, **mōs**, **mors**, **reditiō**, **facultās**, **urbs**, **altitūdō**, **ratia**, **nox**, **servitūs**, **nōmen**, **animal**.

LESSON XXVII.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE
PASSIVE OF THREE CONJUGATIONS.—ABLATIVE OF AGENCY.

189. *Orgetorix secretly develops his ambitious schemes to make himself king.*

Ad eas res cōficiendās biennium satis esse dūxerunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eas res cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit.

190.

PARADIGMS.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE
PASSIVE OF THE VERB *Liberō*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

PERFECT.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. liberātus, -a, -um sum, I was
(or have been) liberated. | 1. liberātī, -ae, -a sumus, we were
(or have been) liberated. |
| 2. liberātus, -a, -um es. | 2. liberātī, -ae, -a estis. |
| 3. liberātus, -a, -um est. | 3. liberātī, -ae, -a sunt. |

PLUPERFECT.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. liberātus, -a, -um eram, I had
been liberated. | 1. liberātī, -ae, -a erāmus, we had
been liberated. |
| 2. liberātus, -a, -um erās. | 2. liberātī, -ae, -a erātis. |
| 3. liberātus, -a, -um erat. | 3. liberātī, -ae, -a erant. |

FUTURE PERFECT.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. liberātus, -a, -um erō, I shall
have been liberated. | 1. liberātī, -ae, -a erimus, we shall
have been liberated. |
| 2. liberātus, -a, -um eris. | 2. liberātī, -ae, -a eritis. |
| 3. liberātus, -a, -um erit. | 3. liberātī, -ae, -a erunt. |

Observe:—

(1) that these tenses are formed by adding to the perfect passive participle: for the perfect, the present of the verb *sum*; for the pluperfect, the imperfect of the verb *sum*; and for the future perfect, the future of the verb *sum*.

(2) that this participle, like an adjective, agrees in G. N. C. with the subject

191. TABLE OF THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

SINGULAR.		PERFECT.		PLURAL.
mōtus, -a, -um	}	sum, es, est.	mōtī, -ae, -a	sumus, estis, sunt.
divisus, -a, -um			divisī, -ae, -a	
captus, -a, -um			captī, -ae, -a	

PLUPERFECT.

mōtus, -a, -um	}	eram, erās, erat.	mōtī, -ae, -a	erāmus, erātis, erant.
divisus, -a, -um			divisī, -ae, -a	
captus, -a, -um			captī, -ae, -a	

FUTURE PERFECT.

mōtus, -a, -um	}	erō, eris, erit.	mōtī, -ae, -a	erimus, eritis, erunt.
divisus, -a, -um			divisī, -ae, -a	
captus, -a, -um			captī, -ae, -a	

192. MODEL SENTENCES.

- (1) *Helvētīī agrōs vāstāvērunt. — The Swiss devastated the fields.*
 (2) *Agri ab Helvētīīs vāstātī sunt. — The fields were devastated by the Swiss.* (3) *Agri flūminibus vāstātī sunt. — The fields were devastated by the rivers.*

Observe: —

(1) that sentences 1 and 2 have the same meaning, the one being active, the other passive.

(2) that the *Helvētīī*, persons and voluntary agents, while the subject in the active, sentence 1, are put in the ablative with *ab* in the passive, sentence 2. This ablative is called the Ablative of Agency and answers the question "By whom?"

(3) that *fluminibus* in sentence 3 is put in the Ablative of Means without a preposition, since rivers are not persons and voluntary agents.

193. RULE. — *The voluntary agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.*

194.**VOCABULARY.**

Casticus, -i, *Casticus*, a leader of the Sequani.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., *Catamantaloedes*, a former leader of the Sequani.

filius, fili, m., *son* (voc. sing. fili).

pater, patris, m., *father*.

populus, -i, m., *people*, *nation*.

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um (an adj. often used substantively), *Roman*.

ante, adv., *before*.

quō, masc., abl. sing. of interrogative, (*by*) *whom*.

ā or *ab*, prep., *by* (with Ablative of Agency).

195.**WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Conjugate, with meanings, *prohibeō*, *gerō*, and *faciō* in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive.

(2) Decline *filius*, *pater*, *senātus*.

196.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) *Superātus* est; *mōtus* erat; *gestum* erit; *iactus* es; *prohibitū* sumus. (2) *Gessistī*, *gestum* est; *dūxerās*, *ductus* erās; *dīviseris*, *dīvīsus* eris. (3) *Comparāverās*; *dixērunt*, *dictī* erātis, *liberātī* sunt; *captī* sumus; *armātī* erunt. (4) *Multōs* annōs *proximīs* cum *civitatibus* *pāx* ab *Helvētiīs* *cōfirmāta* est. (5) *Nostrī* *finēs* *biennium* *ā* *Casticō* *vastātī* sunt *quod* *pācem* *nōn* *cōfirmāverāmus*. (6) *Fortitūdine* et *gloriā* *belli* *Helvētiī* *Gallōs* *omnēs* *praecēdebant*. (7) *Exercitus* *Sēquanōrum* *ex* *prōvincia* *ab* *Casticō* *ductus* erit. (8) *Ā* *quō* *Orgetorix* *ad* *eās* *rēs* *cōficiendās* *dēlēctus* est?

II. (1) They have been prevented, they have prevented; you have been led, you have led; he had been called, he had called. (2) They shall have been given, they shall have given; you have been chosen, you had chosen; she has been affected, she has af-

fected. (3) We shall have been conquered, we shall have conquered; I had been accused; you (sing.) have been influenced; it will have been weakened. (4) For many years we were weakened by the wars. (5) A large part of these territories had been seized by the Belgians. (6) The Germans, whose towns had been seized by the Romans, did not make peace for many years. (7) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 8, part I.]

197.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

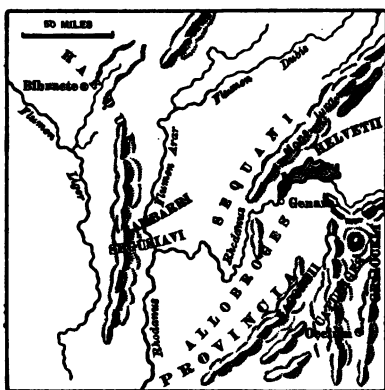
In eō itinere Orgetorix Casticō, Sēquanō, persuāsit, ut (that) rēgnum in suā civitatē occupāret (should seize). Casticus erat filius Catamantaloedis, qui rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuerat. Catamantaloedēs populi Rōmāni amicus ā senātū appellātus erat. Orgetorix Casticō persuāsit ut rēgnum occupāret quod pater ante habuerat.

LESSON XXVIII.

DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ĪDEM*.—SYNOPSIS OF VERBS.—ABLATIVE OF TIME.

198. *Orgetorix appeals to the noblemen of neighboring states to set up monarchies.*

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanis multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmāni amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat.



TO THE WEST OF THE SWISS.

199. The demonstrative **idem**, used as a pronoun or adjective, is a compound of the demonstrative **is** and the suffix **dem**. Memorize its declension in the App., § 16.

200. SYNOPSES OF THE VERB DŪCĪ IN THE INDICATIVE.

	ACTIVE 3D SINGULAR.	PASSIVE 2D PLURAL.
<i>Present</i>	dūcit, he leads.	dūcimini, you are led.
<i>Imperfect</i>	dūcēbat, he was leading.	dūcēbāmini, you were being led.
<i>Future</i>	dūcet, he will lead.	dūcēmini, you will be led.
<i>Perfect</i>	dūxit, he led.	ducti estis, you were led.
<i>Pluperfect</i>	dūxerat, he had led.	ducti erātis, you have been led.
<i>Future Perfect</i>	dūxerit, he will have led.	ducti eritis, you will have been led.

Such an arrangement of a verb as is shown above, giving each tense in some designated person and number, is called a synopsis.

201. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Eōdem tempore principātum obtinēbat. — *At the same time he was holding the leadership.* (2) Tribus annis eas res cōficiemus. — *Within three years we shall accomplish these things.*

Observe:—

That in sentence 1, the ablative phrase **eōdem tempore** denotes the Time When he was holding the leadership, and in sentence 2, the ablative phrase **tribus annis** denotes the Time Within Which we shall accomplish these things.

202. RULE. — Time When or Within Which is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

203. VOCABULARY.

Aedui , -a, -um, <i>Aeduan</i> , one of the <i>Aedui</i> , an important Gallic nation.	dux , ducis, m., <i>leader, guide, general.</i>
Diviciacus , -i, m., <i>Diviciacus</i> , an Aeduan leader.	filia , -ae, f., <i>daughter</i> (dat. and abl. plu. filiabus to distinguish from filijs).
Dumnorix , Dumnorigis, m., <i>Dumno-</i> <i>rix</i> , brother of Diviciacus.	frāter , frātris, m., <i>brother.</i>
	mātrimōnium , -i, n., <i>marriage.</i>

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*.

principātus, -ūs, m., *leadership*.

tempus, temporis, n., *time*.

acceptus, -a, -um, *acceptable* (followed by dative).

item, adv., *likewise*; for itemque see -que, § 77.

māximē, adv., *very, especially*.

idem, eadem, idem, dem. pro. and adj., *the same*.

ac, conj., *and also* (atque before vowels).

204.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write with meanings, synopses of *prohibeō* in active 1st plural and *gerō* in the passive 3d singular, assuming the subject of *gerō* to be neuter.

(2) Put *idem* into agreement with each of the following nouns and decline each combination in full: *filia, frāter, tempus*.

205.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Nostra prōvincia ab Helvētiis eisdem flūminibus dividitur. (2) Tertiō annō Orgetorix, rēgnī cupiditatē inductus, coniūratiōnem fecit. (3) Quot annis eadem res ab Helvētiis confectae erunt? (4) In¹ eundem annum profectiō lēge cōfirmāta erat. (5) Multa bella ipsis cum Germānis hōc annō gerentur. (6) Trēs annos Orgetorix principātum suae cīvitātis obtinuerat. (7) Finēs Gallōrum eōdem annō vāstātī sunt. (8) Māgnum numerum carrōrum et māgnam cōpiam frūmentī sēcum dūxerunt. (9) Belgae ipsī suās cōpiās ex agris Sēquanōrum in oppida eōrum dūcent. (10) Auctōritatē eiusdem ducis permovēbantur ac pācem proximis cum cīvitātibus cōfirmāvērunt.

II. (1) Marcus Messala was selected consul for one year. (2) In the same year Orgetorix was chosen leader and led the Swiss into our province. (3) Within three days a large number of carts was bought in the villages of the same people. (4) For many days he held the royal power in his state. (5) Our fields will not be laid waste this year. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 3, part I.]

¹ In as here may have the sense of *for* or *against* followed by the accusative. Compare English "against that day."

206.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Item Dumnorīgi, quī erat frāter Diviciāci, persuādet. Diviciācus eō tempore principātum in civitāte Aeduōrum obtinēbat ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat. Dumnorīgi persuāsit ut (that) idem cōnārētur (imp. subj., transl. should attempt). Ei filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

LESSON XXIX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.—THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ILLE*.

207. *Orgetorix wins the support of an ambitious Aeduan by making him his son-in-law.*

Itemque Dumnorīgi Aeduō, frātri Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eiūque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

208. The indicative mood states the action of the verb as a fact, while the subjunctive states the action of the verb as desired, doubtful or dependent for its truth upon a statement of fact either expressed or implied. No meanings are given for subjunctive forms because the meanings vary widely according to the degree of uncertainty expressed or implied.

209.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB
Liberō, AND *Sum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. liberem	liberēmus.	1. liberer	liberēmur.
2. liberēs	liberētis.	2. liberēris or -re	liberēmini.
3. liberet	liberent.	3. liberētur	liberentur.
1. sim	sīmus.	(No Passive.)	
2. sis	sitis.		
3. sit	sint.		

Observe:—

(1) that the active first personal ending is **-m** instead of **-s**.

(2) that the vowel preceding the personal endings is long, except before **-nt** and **-m, -r, -t** final.

These observations are true of all tenses of the subjunctive of whatever conjugation.

210. TABLE OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THREE CONJUGATIONS.

ACTIVE.			PASSIVE.		
libere-	}		libere-	}	
movea-		-m, -s, -t,	movea-		-r, -ris or -re, -tur,
divida-		-mus, -tis, -nt.	divida-		-mur, -mini, -ntur.
capia-			capia-		

How does the present subjunctive of **dividam** and **capiam** differ from their future indicative?

The present subjunctive of any verb in the Latin language can be formed without difficulty by any student who will memorize the following five forms: **sim, liberem, moveam, dividam, capiam**.

211. Memorize the declension of the demonstrative **ille, illa, illud**, in the App., § 16. **Ille** (transl. *that* in sing., *those* in plu.) is contrasted as to use with **hic** (transl. *this* in sing., *these* in plu.). In general, **hic** is used to designate what is thought of as near in time, place, etc., to the speaker, while **ille** denotes what is remote. For this reason **hī**, the plural of **hic**, is used very frequently by Caesar to refer to his own soldiers, while **illī** is made to refer to the enemy. **Hic** often means *the latter*, and **ille**, *the former*.

212.

VOCABULARY.

cōnātum, -ī, n., attempt.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.

ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. or pro., that.

propterea, adv., therefore, for that

reason; regularly followed by conj., **quod**, with which it is translated by the single word *because*.

quā, conj. (followed by subj., often trans. as ind.) that, but that.

conciliō, 1, conciliate, win over.

dō, dare, dedi, datus, give.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus, accomplish.

probō, 1, prove, approve.

213.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write, with careful attention to marking long vowels, the present subjunctive, active and passive, of *conciliō*, *prohibeo*, *dēligō*, and *perficiō*, and write a synopsis of the last-named verb in the 2d plural passive indicative.

(2) Put *ille* in agreement with each of the following nouns and decline together: *exercitus*, *coniūratiō*, *cōnātum*.

214.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Hi finēs angustī, illi lātī sunt.* (2) *Belgae et Helvētī eōs finēs incolunt; illi lātissimōs, hī angustissimōs.* (3) *Illi sunt in nostris finibus.* (4) *Trēs diēs nostrī agrī ab Gallis vāstātī sunt.* (5) *Dux Helvētiōrum Casticō exercitum dedit quem in Galliam dūxit.* (6) *Orgetorix rēgna suis amicis suō exercitū conciliābit.* (7) *Helvētīi arbitrantur sē fortēs cōpiās habēre.* (8) *Galli ipsī sē liberābunt.* (9) *Trēs partēs illōrum finium ab Helvētiis vāstatae erant.* (10) *Illis probat sē esse fortem.*

II. (1) These towns were captured, those were freed. (2) These rivers are wide, those are long. (3) We were holding the royal power in the state at that time. (4) For three years the fields of the Gauls were laid waste by those Germans. (5) The Swiss were afflicted with great distress on account of (their) narrow territories.

215.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

1. *Cōnāta perficere est perfacile factū.*¹ 2. *Illis probat cōnāta perficere esse perfacile factū*¹: id erat perfacile factū¹ propterea quod suae civitatis imperium obtenturus² esset (imp. subj. of sum: transl. as imp. ind.). 3. *Nōn erat dubium quīn Helvētīi tōtius Galliae plūrimum possent* (were the most powerful). 4. *Dixit nōn esse dubium quīn Helvētīi tōtius Galliae plūrimum possent.* 5. *Suis cōpiis suoque exercitū illis rēgna conciliāturus*³ erat. 6. *Illis rēgna sē conciliātūrum esse cōfirmat.*

- ¹ *factū*, what is known as the supine in ā of *faciō*, transl. as present infinitive.
² *obtentūrus*, future active participle of *obtineō*, transl. *going to get* or *obtain*.
³ *conciliātūrus*, future active participle of *conciliō*, transl. *going to win over*.

Note how in the above short sentences the even-numbered sentences express the same thought as those immediately preceding with the addition of an introductory word of saying or thinking, as *probat*, *dixit*, or *cōfirmat*. After such introductory words the main verbs of the thought, as *est* and *erat*, are changed into the infinitive, though best translated by the indicative in English. Point out how the same change has taken place in the development exercises of Lessons XXI, XXIV, and XXVI. A thought thus expressed is said to be in indirect discourse because it is indirectly stated.

LESSON XXX.

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.—
CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

216. *Orgetorix explains to his confederates the grounds of his confidence.*

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: [dixit] nōn esse dubium quān tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat.

217.

PARADIGMS.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB
Liberō.PRESENT INFINITIVE *liberāre*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>liberārem</i>	<i>liberārēmus.</i>	1. <i>liberārer</i>	<i>liberārēmur.</i>
2. <i>liberārēs</i>	<i>liberārētis.</i>	2. <i>liberārēris</i> or <i>-re</i>	<i>liberārēminī.</i>
3. <i>liberāret</i>	<i>liberārent.</i>	3. <i>liberārētur</i>	<i>liberārentur.</i>

Observe :—

(1) that the imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings, both active and passive, to the present active infinitive. This is true of all verbs of all conjugations.

(2) that the principle already stated in § 209 holds true regarding the length of the vowel preceding the personal endings.

218. TABLE OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF OTHER VERBS.

ACTIVE.				PASSIVE.			
PRESENT INFINITIVES.				PRESENT INFINITIVES.			
movēre-	{			movēre-	{		
dividere-		-m,	-s,	dividere-		-r,	-ris, or -re,
capere-		-mus,	-tis,	capere-		-mur,	-mini,
esse-		-t,	-nt.				-ntur.

219. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Coniūrātiōnem facit ut rēgnum occupet. — *He forms a conspiracy in order to seize the royal power* (literally, *that he may seize the royal power*). (2) Coniūrātiōnem fēcit ut rēgnum occupāret. — *He formed a conspiracy-in-order to seize the royal power* (literally, *that he might seize the royal power*). (3) Caesar bellum geret nē Helvētīī finēs Galliae obtineant. — *Caesar will make war, that the Swiss may not hold the territories of Gaul*. (4) Caesar bellum gesserat nē Helvētīī finēs Galliae obtinērent. — *Caesar had made war, that the Swiss might not hold the territories of Gaul*.

Observe :— .

(1) that the verbs in the subordinate clauses are all in the subjunctive mood.

(2) that these subordinate clauses express the purpose or will of the action of the principal clauses, *ut* affirmative and *nē* negative.

(3) also that when the main verb is in the present or future tenses, as in sentences 1 and 3, the subordinate verb is in the present subjunctive. On the other hand, when the main verb is

in a past time tense (i.e. imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect), the subordinate verb is in the imperfect subjunctive.

220. RULE. — *Purpose is expressed by the subjunctive mood with ut (or utī) affirmative, and nē negative.*

221.**VOCABULARY.**

fīdēs, fideī, f. (nom. and acc. only in plu.), *pledge, trust, loyalty.*

iūs iūrāndum, iūris iūrāndī, n. (a compound noun, with both parts declined, d. iūri iūrāndō, acc. iūs iūrāndum, abl. iūre iūrāndō, nom. and acc. plu. iūra iūranda), *oath.*
orātiō, orātiōnis, f., *speech, plea.*

firmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm.*

potēns m., f., n., (potentis, gen.), *powerful.*

per, prep. governing acc., *through, by means of.*

ut (utī), conj., *as, with the ind., that, in order that, with subj.*

nē, conj., *with subj., that not.*

quō cōnsiliō, *with what purpose?*

spērō, 1, *hope (followed by inf., usually fut., with subject acc.).*

222.**WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Conjugate in the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, **spērō**, **obtineō**, **dūcō**, **afficiō**.

(2) Decline in G.N.C. agreement: **īdem** and **orātiō**; **fīrmior** and **fīdēs**.

(3) Compare **firmus** (firm-) and **potēns** (potent-).

223.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Orgetorix dēlēctus est ut eās rēs cōnficeret. (2) Hīs rēbus adductī sunt nē cum finitimīs bellum gererent. (3) Helvētiīs persuādet ut frūmentum cōēmant.¹ (4) Hī lātissimōs, illī angustissimōs finēs incolunt. (5) Multa bella gerēbant ut lātiōrēs finēs obtinērent. (6) Dumnorix et Casticus coniūrātiōnem fecērunt ut rēgnum in suis cīvitātibus occupārent. (7) Ea bella biennium gerimus ut Germānōs nostrīs finibus prohibeāmus. (8) Pācem cum Germānīs fecimus nē nostrī finēs vāstārentur. (9) Orgetorix ab Helvētiīs dēlēctus est ut cōpiās ad eōsdem finēs dūceret. (10) Quō cōnsiliō ad nostram prōvinciam mercātōrēs saepe commeant?

¹ ut . . . cōēmant, a Substantive Clause of Purpose. Why substantive?

II. (1) He gave the Belgians his forces that they might wage war with the Germans. (2) They had established peace with their neighbors that their fields might not be devastated. (3) We shall march three miles into the territories of the Sequanians to lay waste their fields.¹ (4) (In order) to free themselves¹ the Swiss prepared these (things). (5) We purchased many beasts of burden that we might have a supply of grain on the march. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing a purpose clause the question in sentence 10, part I.]

224.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hāc oratione adducebantur. Hāc oratione adducti, inter se fidem et ius iurandum dant.² Regno occupato (the royal power having been seized), imperio totius Galliae potentur (Fut. Ind. of potior). Sperant, regno occupato sese posse potiri imperio totius Galliae. Per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos sperant imperio³ totius Galliae sese potiri posse.

¹ Purpose cannot be expressed by the infinitive in Latin prose as is done in English.

² dant inter se = *exchange* (literally, *give among themselves*).

³ imperio may be omitted allowing potiri to be followed by the genitive instead of the ablative. See § 146.

LESSON XXXI.

THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. — RESULT CLAUSES.

225. *The princely conspirators plan to extend their kingdoms over the whole of Gaul.*

Hāc oratione adducti inter se fidem et ius iurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant. [Cap. III. Finis.]

226. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, OF THE VERB *Liberō*.

ACTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

PERFECT TENSE.

1. liberāverim.	liberāverimus.
2. liberāveris.	liberāveritis.
3. liberāverit.	liberāverint.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

1. liberāvissē.	liberāvissēmus.
2. liberāvissēs.	liberāvissētis.
3. liberāvisset.	liberāvissent.

PASSIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

PERFECT TENSE.

1. liberātus, -a, -um sim.	liberātī, -ae, -a sīmus.
2. liberātus, -a, -um sis.	liberātī, -ae, -a sītis.
3. liberātus, -a, -um sit.	liberātī, -ae, -a sint.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

1. liberātus, -a, -um essem.	liberātī, -ae, -a essēmus.
2. liberātus, -a, -um essēs.	liberātī, -ae, -a essētis.
3. liberātus, -a, -um esset.	liberātī, -ae, -a essent.

Observe:—

(1) that the perfect and pluperfect active subjunctive are formed by adding to the perfect stem *liberāv-* the suffixes *-erim*, *-eris*, etc., and *-issem*, *-issēs*, etc., respectively. In what person does the perfect active subjunctive differ from the future perfect active indicative?

(2) that the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive differ from the corresponding tenses of the indicative only in the mood of the auxiliaries.

(3) All verbs in Latin form these tenses in precisely the same way, as may be seen by reference to the Appendix.

227.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Belgae tam potentēs sunt ut Germānōs suis finibus prohibeant. — *The Belgians are so powerful that they keep the Germans from their territories.* (2) Helvētīi montibus et flūminibus continēbantur ut nōn vagārentur. — *The Swiss were hemmed in by mountains, so that they did not wander about.*

Observe: —

(1) that **prohibeant** and **vagārentur**, the verbs in the subordinate clauses, are in the subjunctive and express, not purpose, but a fact resulting from the action or state expressed by the main clause, **ut** (*that*) denoting affirmative, and **ut nōn** (*that not*) denoting negative result.

(2) that these subjunctives are translated by the indicative.

Note that the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the same principles as in purpose clauses in § 219 (3).

228. RULE. — *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut, that, so that (negative, ut nōn).*

229.

VOCABULARY.

causa , -ae, f., <i>cause, reason, case</i> ;	mōs , mōris, m., <i>custom.</i>
causam dicere , <i>to plead a case.</i>	poena , -ae, f., <i>punishment.</i>
ignis , ignis, m. (an i-stem with abl. sing. igni), <i>fire.</i>	vinculum , -i, n., <i>chain, fetter</i> ; ex vinculis , <i>in chains.</i>
indiciū , indicī, n., <i>information, evidence.</i>	quam , interrog. adv., <i>how?</i>
	tam , adv., <i>so.</i>

cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactus, *compel, collect.*

cremō, 1, *burn* (igni cremāre, *to burn to death*).

damnō, 1, *condemn.*

ēnūntiō, 1, *announce, tell.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impersonal¹ verb, *it is necessary.*

sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, deponent verb, *follow.*

¹ An impersonal verb is one used only in the third person and having no personal subject.

230.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Conjugate in full the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of *ēnūntiō*, *moveō*, *cōgō*, *iaciō*, and *sum*.

(2) Decline *ignis* and *mōs*.

231.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Hae cōpiae fuērunt firmissimae ut eas nōn superārēmus.* (2) *His rebus fiēbat ut minus latē vagārentur.* (3) *Hi montēs eōs undique continēbant ut mercātōrēs ad eōs nōn commeārent.* (4) *Hāc orātiōne adducēmur ut rēgnum occupēmus.* (5) *Pācem Helvētiī cōfirmant nē agrī vāstentur.* (6) *Ex vinculis causam dixit nē ignī cremārētur.* (7) *Orgetorīx erat tam potēns ut ad eas rēs cōficiendās deligerētur.* (8) *Finēs tam angustī erant ut magnō dolōre afficerentur.* (9) *Casticus est tam acceptus Orgetorīgī ut hīc suam filiam in mātrimonium illī det.* (10) *Quam acceptus plēbī erat Orgetorīx?*

II. (1) The Belgians were so brave that they surpassed all the-rest-of the Gauls. (2) They are very far away from the province so that they are least weakened by the traders. (3) This Sequanian was very acceptable to the common people, so that he easily persuaded them. (4) The trader imports all these things, that he may be the richest of the Gauls. (5) They contend so often in almost daily battles that they are very brave. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing a result clause the question in sentence 10, part I.]

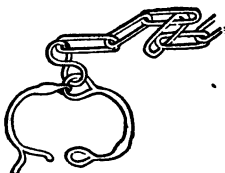
232.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ea coniūratiō est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis (abl. of cause) Orgetorīgē¹ ex vinculis causam dicere (to plead) coēgērunt. Oportēbat poenam Orgetorīgē damnātum sequī. Haec poena erat ut ignī cremārētur.

¹ *Orgetorīgē*, accusative, subject of the infinitive *dicere*.

LESSON XXXII.

PLACE TO WHICH AND FROM WHICH. — DECLENSION OF
DOMUS.

ANCIENT FETTERS.

233. *Discovering his conspiracy, the Swiss arrest Orgetorix.*

Ea res est Helvētīs per indicium enūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur.

234.

PARADIGM.

DECLENSION OF THE NOUN **Domus**, *house, home*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Genitive</i>	domūs	domuum, domōrum
<i>Dative</i>	domuī, domō	domibus
<i>Accusative</i>	domum	domōs, domūs
<i>Ablative</i>	domō, domū	domibus
<i>Locative</i> ¹	domī, at home.	

Observe: —

(1) that **domus** is declined according to the Fourth Declension but also shows certain forms of the Second Declension.

(2) that in the ablative singular and the accusative plural these second declension forms occur more frequently than the alternative form, and should therefore be learned first.

Domus is feminine, though we should expect to find it masculine, whether regarded as a fourth or second declension noun.

235.

MODEL SENTENCES.

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| (1) Exercitum dūcit, <i>he leads the army.</i> | { | ad Galliam, <i>to or towards Gaul.</i>
in oppidum, <i>into the town.</i>
Genāvam, <i>to Geneva.</i>
domum, <i>home.</i>
rūs, <i>to the country.</i> |
|--|---|---|

¹ The locative case (denoting place where) occurs in names of towns and a few other words.

- (2) *Exercitum dūcit, he leads the army.*
- | | |
|---|--|
| { | <i>ab Hispāniā, away from Spain.</i> |
| | <i>dē monte, down from the mountain.</i> |
| | <i>ex oppidō, out of the town.</i> |
| | <i>Genāvā, from Geneva.</i> |
| | <i>domō, from home.</i> |
| | <i>rūre, from the country.</i> |

Observe : —

(1) that in sentence 1 Place To Which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

(2) that in sentence 2 Place From Which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.

(3) that in both constructions, with names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs*, the prepositions are omitted.

These constructions may also refer to persons, as *ad Caesarem*, to Caesar; *ā Caesare*, from Caesar.

236. RULES. — 1. Place To Which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, but with names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs* the preposition is omitted.

2. Place From Which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, but with names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted.

237.

VOCABULARY.

cliēns, *clientis*, m. or f., *retainer*.

dictiō, *dictiōnis*, f., *pleading*.

domus, -ūs, f., *home, house*.

familia, -ae, f., *house servants, retinue*.

Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the

Allobroges.

iūdicium, -i, n., *trial*.

obaerātus, -i, m., *debtor*.

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.

rūs, *rūris*, n., *country* as opposed to the town.

decem, numeral adj., indeclinable, *ten*.

eōdem, adv., *to the same place*.

quō, int. adv., *whither ? to what place ?*

unde, interrog. adv., *whence ? from what place ?*

condūcō, 3, *lead together, lead*.

ēripīō, *ēripere*, *ēripui*, *ēreptus*, *snatch away, rescue*.

238.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline *cliēns* in full.

(2) Write synopses of *ēripīō* in the active 3d plural, and *cōstituō* in the passive 3d singular, indicative and subjunctive.

239.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Decem milia obaerātōrum ad iūdicium contendunt. (2) Cōsulēs exercitum Rōmā ad oppida Belgārum dūxērunt. (3) Gallī domum cum suō exercitū contendērunt. (4) Helvētīi, ā quibus haec oppida capta sunt, Genāvā iter facient. (5) Suam filiam Orgetorīgī dedit ut ei persuādēret. (6) Rōmā rūs iter faciam. (7) Orgetorīx delēctus est ut lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs susci-peret. (8) Vicī, ad quōs mercātōrēs commeābant, ā Belgīs captī erant. (9) Nostri finēs dē montibus ad haec flūmina pertinent. (10) Unde et quō Orgetorīx lēgatiōnem dūxit?

II. (1) Orgetorix led a powerful army from these states to Geneva. (2) Caesar hastened from Rome and led his friends with him into the country. (3) Dumnorix will hasten home to collect¹ a large army. (4) The towns frōm which Orgetorix will lead his forces will be captured by the Belgians. (5) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 10, part I.]



A SIGNIFER, OR BEARER OF THE SIGNUM, WHICH WAS THE STANDARD OF A COHORT.

240. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diēs causae dictiōnis cōstitutā est. Diēs cōstitutā Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam undique coēgit. Ea familia erat ad² hominum milia decem. Omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs eōdem condūxit. Eōrum māgnū numerum habēbat. Per eōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, sē ēripuit nē causam diceret.

¹ Not infinitive in Latin. Why not? § 220.

² ad, used as an adverb, *nearly, about*.

LESSON XXXIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.—ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH.

241. *Orgetorix assembles a large number of supporters, who interrupt the trial and rescue him.*

Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam diceret sē ēripuit.

242. The characteristic vowel of the Fourth Conjugation is *i* preceding *-re*, the ending of the present infinitive.

PARADIGMS.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *Impediō*.

PRIN. PARTS : *impediō, impedire, impedivī, impeditus.*

PRESENT STEM : *Impedi-*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>impediō, I impede, am impeding.</i> | <i>impedimus, we impede, are impeding.</i> |
| 2. <i>impedis, you impede, etc.</i> | <i>impeditis, you impede, etc.</i> |
| 3. <i>impedit, he impedes, etc.</i> | <i>impediunt, they impede, etc.</i> |

PASSIVE VOICE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>impedior, I am impeded, am being impeded.</i> | <i>impedimur, we are impeded, etc.</i> |
| 2. <i>impediris, you are impeded, etc.</i> | <i>impedimini, you are impeded, etc.</i> |
| 3. <i>impeditur, he is impeded, etc.</i> | <i>impediuntur, they are impeded, etc.</i> |

Observe: —

That the present of this Fourth Conjugation verb is exactly the same as the present of *capio*, the model verb of the Third Con-

jugation in *to*, except in the second singular passive and in the quantity of the characteristic vowel.

All other tenses, both indicative and subjunctive, are formed in precisely the same way as the same tenses of *capio*.

243.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) In *eis finibus bellum gerunt*. — *They wage war in these territories.*

(2) *Exercitus est, the army is* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in oppidō, in the town.} \\ \text{Genāvae, in Geneva.} \\ \text{domi, at home.} \\ \text{rūri, in the country.} \end{array} \right.$

Observe:—

That Place in Which is expressed by the ablative with *in*, but names of towns, *domus* and *rūs*, omit the preposition and show a form known as the locative. This case in names of towns of the First and Second Declensions is the same as the genitive singular, in names of towns of the Third Declension is the same as the dative.

Domī, at home, and *rūri, in the country*, are the only other locative forms in common use.

244. RULE. — Place In Which is expressed by the ablative case with the preposition *in*, but with names of towns, *domus*, and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted and the locative is used whenever such a form occurs.

245.

VOCABULARY.

<i>arma, armōrum, n., arms, weapons</i>	<i>cum, conj. (with past time tenses usually followed by subj. trans. as ind.), when, while.</i>
(wanting in sing.).	
<i>iūs, iūris, n., right.</i>	<i>neque, conj., and not, nor, neither (neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor).</i>
<i>magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistrate.</i>	<i>ob, prep. governing acc., literally, against, facing; freely, on account of.</i>
<i>mors, mortis, f., death.</i>	
<i>suspiciō, suspiciōnis, f., suspicion.</i>	
<i>ubi, interrog. adv., where?</i>	

audiō, audire, audiui, auditus, hear.

cōnscisco, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, decree, ordain (mortem sibi cōnsciscere, to decree death to one's self, i.e. to commit suicide).

exsequor, exsequi, exsecutus sum, follow out, perform, execute.

impediō, impedire, impedivi, impeditus, hinder, impede.

incitō, 1, urge on, impel, arouse (perf. pass. part. incitatus, -a, -um, aroused).

morior, mori (moriri), mortuus sum, die.

246.**WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Decline *magistrātus* and *mors*.

(2) Write synopses as directed in § 200 of the following Fourth Conjugation verbs: *impediō* in 3d plural active; *audiō* in 2d plural passive.

(3) Write the imp. subj. act. and pass. of *impediō* and *audiō*, § 217 (1).

247.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) *Impediunt, impediuntur; audiunt, audiuntur, audient, audientur.* (2) *Impedivimus, impediti sumus; audiverās, auditus erās; impediēbāmus, impediēbāmur.* (3) *Impediēris, impedivisti, impediveris.* (4) *Ei persuādet ut orationem audiat.* (5) *Eis persuāsimus ut oratio audiretur.* (6) *Genāvae multī clientēs igni cremāti sunt.* (7) *Mercatōrēs ad multa oppida commeant in quibus sunt nostrae cōpiae.* (8) *Germānī in finibus Helvētiorum ab Orgetorige impediuntur.* (9) *Exercitus, quem Helvētiī domi habēbant, erat in agris.* (10) *Ubi fuit Caesar cum esset¹ cōsul?*

II. (1) He is impeding, he is being impeded, you will impede, you will be impeded; they will have heard, they will have been heard. (2) He is heard, he was being heard, he will be heard. (3) You (sing.) were at home; I was at Geneva. (4) He will persuade Casticus to seize the royal power in his state. (5) Ten thousand men will be led from their homes to Geneva. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence the question in sentence 10, part I.]

248.**DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis ius suum exsequi cōnābatur.² Magistrātus multitudinem hominum ex agris cōgēbant.

¹ Translate by same tense of indicative. ² A deponent verb, translate as active voice.

Cum ea facerent,¹ Orgetorix mortuus est. Ut² Helvëtiî arbitrantur, ipse mortem sibi cōscīvit. Neque abest suspīciō quīn mortem sibi cōscīverit.³

¹ Translate by same tense of indicative.

² For translation of ut see § 221.

³ Perfect subjunctive, see § 212 under quīn.

LESSON XXXIV.

PARTICIPLES. — THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.

249. *The Swiss prepare to rearrest him. Orgetorix unexpectedly dies.*

Cum cīvītās, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvëtiî arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit. [Cap. IV. Finis.]

250. The participle is a verbal adjective, often governing a case as a verb and always agreeing as an adjective in G. N. C. with its substantive. Participles are so much more frequently used in Latin than in English that a thorough knowledge of their forms and uses becomes of great importance. Before attempting to study the table given below, the student must thoroughly review the treatment of verb-stems in § 112.

251.

TABLE OF PARTICIPLES.

ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
PRESENT TENSE.	
liberāns, liberating	Latin has no present passive participle.
movēns, moving	
dividēns, dividing	
capiēns, taking	
impediēns, impeding	FUTURE TENSE.
liberātūrus, -a, -um, going to liberate	liberandus, -a, -um, to be liberated
mōtūrus, -a, -um	movendus, -a, -um
divisūrus, -a, -um	dividendus, -a, -um (commonly known
captūrus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um as gerundives)
impeditūrus, -a, -um	impediendus, -a, -um

PERFECT TENSE.

Latin has no perfect active participle.

liberātus, -a, -um (having been) liberated
mōtus, -a, -um
divisus, -a, -um
captus, -a, -um
impeditus, -a, -um

Observe:—

(1) that the present active and future passive (or gerundive) participles are formed by adding to the present stem **-ns** and **-ndus** respectively. The verbs in **io** form their present active and future passive participles in **-iēns** and **-iendus**.

(2) that the future active and perfect passive participles are formed on the participial stem. To this stem **-ūrus** is added to form the future active, while the perfect passive participle is simply the fourth principal part.

252. All present participles and adjectives ending in **-ns** present the peculiarities of **i-stems**. Memorize the declension of the present participle **liberāns** in the App., § 10.

253.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Id eis persuāsit.* — *He persuaded them (to do) this.* (2) *Dumnorigī ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit.* — *He persuaded Dumnorix to attempt the same thing.* (3) *Galli Germānis resistēbant.* — *Gauls resisted the Germans.*

Observe:—

That in the English sentences the words, *them*, *Dumnorix*, and *Germans* are the direct objects of their verbs, while the Latin equivalents are put in the dative case, becoming indirect objects though translated as direct objects. This construction is called the Dative with Special Verbs.

254. RULE. — *Many verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative translated as direct object.*

255.

VOCABULARY.

aedificium, i, n., *building*.duodecim, num. adj., *twelve*.parātus, -a, -um, *ready*.privātus, -a, -um, *private, personal*.quadringenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *four hundred*.iam, adv., *at that or this time, now*.nihilō minus, adv., *nevertheless*.post, prep. governing acc., *after*.ubi, conj., *where, when*.exeō, -ire, -ī, -itus, *go forth, emigrate*.incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus, *set on fire*.resistō, resistere, restitī, —, *withstand, resist*.studeō, studēre, studui, —, *be eager or zealous for, desire (with dative)*.

256.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline oriēns, present participle of orior, like liberāns, in App., § 10.

(2) Tabulate in vertical columns as below, with meanings, the four participles of the following verbs: cōfirmō, persuādeō, dūcō, faciō, audiō.

Present Active

movēns, moving.

Future Active

mōtūrus, going-to-move.

Perfect Passive

mōtus, having been moved.

Future Passive

movendus, to-be-moved.

257.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Gallī quoque Germānīs nōn facile resistēbant. (2) Cīvītās autem, ob eam rem incitāta, coniūrātiōnī Orgetorīgis restitit. (3) Hīs rēbus adductus, Orgetorīx Casticō persuāsūrus est. (4) Helvētīi, studentēs amicitiae finitimōrum, lēgātiōnem suscipient. (5) Ea aedificia sunt incendenda. (6) Eōs resistantēs superat. (7) Orgetorīgī rēgnum occupantī Helvētīi restitērunt. (8) Gallī aedificia capta incendunt. (9) Id māgnū aedificiū item incēnsūrī sumus. (10) Quibus Orgetorīx persuāsit?

II. (1) They are going-to-hasten into Gaul. (2) The Swiss overcame the neighbors resisting them. (3) He also persuaded the Swiss to resist them. (4) At that time all the Gauls were zealous for peace. (5) He will likewise desire our friendship. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing a purpose clause sentence 10 in part I.]

258.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīī cōnantur¹ ē finibus suis exīre. Id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus exeant.² Iam arbitrātī sunt sē ad eam rem parātōs esse. Ubi iam sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia incendunt.¹ Atque vicōs numerō ad quadringentōs et reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.¹

¹ Historical present, translate as if perfect.

² Translate ut . . . exeant like the infinitive phrase in the previous sentence.

FOURTH REVIEW.

I. Write in a column, with meanings, the Latin nouns, from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: filial, paternal, senatorial, popular, temporal, oration, diurnal, jury, ignite, mortal, amicable, fraternal, fidelity, clientage, armorial, magisterial, suspicious, moral, adding to this list the Latin word for *army*.

II. Decline consecutively the first ten of these nouns (*a*) starting with the first and putting the demonstrative *ille* in agreement with each form, (*b*) starting with the fifth and putting the demonstrative *idem* in agreement with each form. Index as directed in the First Review all other nouns in I.

III. Give the Latin adjectives from which the following English words are derived: multitude, firmness, potential. Compare the second and decline the last like *liberāns* in the App., § 10.

IV. Write in a column (giving principal parts and meanings) the Latin verbs from which the following English words are derived: data, probe, perfect, conciliate, (de)sperate, enunciate, cogent, conduce, sequence, adding to this list the Latin verbs meaning *to attempt* and *it is fitting*.

V. Write synopses as follows: in the active voice, *enūntiō* in the 3d singular, *perficiō* in the 1st plural, *cōgō* in the 3d plural; in the passive voice, *dō* in the 3d singular, *conducō* in the 2d plural.

VI. Make a table giving in one column all the uses of the nominative you have studied; in the second, the genitive uses, etc., through the ablative. Review the rules of Purpose and Result.

VII. Translate text at the head of Lessons XXVI-XXXIV inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned in VI.

LESSON XXXV.

THE USE OF PARTICIPLES IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

259. *The Swiss continue their preparations and burn their homes behind them.*

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.

260. In the sentence, *The teacher being absent, there was no school*, the word *teacher* is said to be nominative independent or absolute because the phrase in which it stands is independent of the rest of the sentence. What is known in English grammar as the nominative independent or absolute is represented in Latin by the Ablative Absolute. The literal translation of each model sentence below will be recognized as containing an example of the nominative independent.

261.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem com- parātīs, diem dicent.	{	(Literally, <i>everything having been prepared</i>, a trans- lation inadmissible in English), <i>After, if, since, or when everything has been pre- pared,</i>	}	<i>they will appoint a day.</i>
---	---	---	---	--

(2) Multis oppugnantis, oppidum non captum est. { (Literally, *many attacking*), *Though many attacked it,* } *the town was not captured.*

Observe: —

That in each of these sentences we find an independent phrase having a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative; in the first a perfect participle to denote completed action at the time of the main verb, in the second a present participle because the action is going on at the time of the main verb.

Since the verb *sum* has no present participle, two substantives or a substantive and an adjective in agreement in the ablative may constitute an Ablative Absolute.

The following familiar example sufficiently illustrates this construction and its various translations: —

M. Messalā, M. Pi- { (Literally, *Marcus*
sōne cōsulibus, { *Messala and Marcus*
Orgetorix coniū- { *Piso being consuls*), { *Orgetorix formed a*
ratiōnem fēcit. { *When Marcus Messala* { *conspiracy.*
and *Marcus Piso*
were consuls,

This ablative answers the questions, “When?” “Why?” “How?” “By what means?” “Under what circumstances?”

262. RULE. — *A noun or pronoun with a participle in agreement may be put in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the ablative absolute.*

263.

VOCABULARY.

mēnsis, *mēnsis*, m., *month*.

reditiō, *reditiōnis*, f., *return*; *reditiō domum*, *return home*.

spēs, *spēs*, f., *hope* (in plu. only nom. and acc.).

quisque, *quaeque*, *quidque*, indef. pro., *each one*.

cibārius, -a, -um, *of or pertaining to food*; *cibāria molita*, *ground food*, *flour*.

difficilis, -e, *difficult*.

quandō, interrog. adv., *when?*

praeter, prep. governing acc., *except*, *beyond*.

combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combūstus, *burn up*.

offerō, efferre, extulī, elātus, *carry or take away*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *order*.

oppugnō, 1, *attack*.

portō, 1, *carry*.

subeō, subire, subīlī, subitus, *undergo*; gerundive, subeundus, -a, -um, *to-be-undergone*.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *take away, remove*.

264.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Combine **Orgetorix**, in the Ablative Absolute, with the perfect passive and present active participles of **addūcō** and translate each combination in all possible ways, as suggested in the translations in § 261.

(2) Similarly combine and translate **cōsul** and **superō**, **Belgae** and **liberō**.

(3) Decline **mēnsis** and **spēs**, noting that one of these nouns is defective in certain cases of the plural.

265.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Translate the Ablative Absolutes in all possible ways and tell what question each answers.)

I. (1) Hāc rē ēnūntiātā, Orgetorigem damnāvērunt. (2) Cōpiīs iam coāctīs, Germānī agrōs Belgārum vāstāre cōstituērunt. (3) Hīs rēbus cōfectīs, Orgetorix sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. (4) Multīs oppidīs incēnsīs, Helvētiī domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt. (5) Civitās, ob eam rem incitāta, māgnūm numerum hominum ex agrīs coēgit. (6) Helvētiīs omnia oppida incendentibus, spēs tollētur. (7) Spē reditiōnis sublātā, omne frūmentum combūrēmus praeter id quod carrīs portābimus. (8) Orgetorige persuādente, nōbilissimī Gallōrum rēgna occupāvērunt. (9) Rēgnīs Gallōrum occupātīs, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potientur. (10) Quādo Orgetorix coniūratiōnem fēcit?

(In sentences 1-4, translate the subordinate clauses by the Ablative Absolute.)

II. (1) After many carts had been bought up, the Swiss

marched from their territories. (2) When the towns of their neighbors have been burned, the Belgians will hasten to Geneva. (3) Though many attack (it), this town will not be taken. (4) Since a conspiracy had been made, the magistrates seized the royal power. (5) The march (being) long and difficult, the Swiss will buy and carry with them much grain. (6) [Answer in a complete sentence containing an ablative absolute the question in sentence 10, part I.]

266. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Frumentum omne combūrunt¹ praeter id quod sēcum portātūrī erant. Itaque spem domum reditiōnis tollunt¹ et parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda² sunt.¹ Frumentum combūrunt¹ ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda² essent. Iubent¹ quemque³ sibi trium mēnsium⁴ molita cibāria domō efferre.

¹ Historical present, translate past.

² Gerundive, translate phrase as if *omnia pericula subire*.

³ Accusative case, subject of infinitive *efferre*.

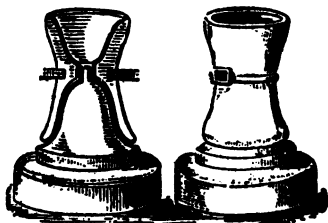
⁴ Genitive of measure; translate, *for three months*.

LESSON XXXVI.

FORMATION AND USES OF INFINITIVES.

267. *Three months' provisions are allowed each man; all other supplies are destroyed.*

Frumentum omne praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.



ANCIENT MILLS.

268.

TABLE OF INFINITIVES.

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
PRESENT TENSE.			
	ENDINGS.		ENDINGS.
I. liberāre, to liberate.	-āre	liberārī, to be liberated.	-ārī
II. movēre, to move.	-ēre	movērī, to be moved. ¹	-ērī
III. { dividere, to divide. }	-ere	dividī, to be divided. }	-ī
{ capere, to take. }		capī, to be taken. }	
IV. impedīre, to impede.	-īre	impedīrī, to be impeded.	-īrī
PERFECT TENSE.			
liberāvisse, to have liberated.		liberātus, -a, -um esse, to have been liberated.	
mōvisse, to have moved.		mōtus, -a, -um esse, to have been moved.	
divisisse, to have divided.		divisus, -a, -um esse, to have been divided.	
cēpisse, to have taken.		captus, -a, -um esse, to have been taken.	
impedivisse, to have impeded.		impeditus, -a, -um esse, to have been impeded.	
FUTURE TENSE.			
liberātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be going to liberate.		liberātum irī, to be going to be liberated.	
mōtūrus, -a, -um esse.		mōtum irī.	
divisūrus, -a, -um esse.		divisum irī.	
captūrus, -a, -um esse.		captum irī.	
impeditūrus, -a, -um esse.		impeditum irī.	

Observe:—

(1) that the perfect active infinitive is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem, while the future active infinitive is simply the future active participle and *esse*.

(2) that the present passive infinitive is formed by changing the final *-e* of the present active infinitive to *-i* except in the Third Conjugation, where the *-er* is syncopated (or cut out) after making the same change.

(3) that the perfect passive infinitive is simply the perfect passive participle and **esse**.

(4) that the future passive infinitive is formed by combining **iri** and what is called the supine of the verb, a form which always is the same as the neuter singular accusative of the perfect passive participle.

The verb **sum** having no passive voice has but three infinitive forms: present, **esse**, *to be*; perfect, **fuisse**, *to have been*; future, **futūrus, -a -um esse**, *to be going-to-be*.

269.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) **Facile est tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.** — *It is easy to get control of the whole of Gaul.* (2) **Orgetorix parātus esse cōnābitur.** — *Orgetorix will try to be prepared.* (3) **Pācem cōfirmāre possunt.** — *They are able to establish peace.* (4) **Orgetorigem causam dicere coēgērunt.** — *They compelled Orgetorix to plead his case.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 the infinitive **potiri** is the subject of the main verb **est**.

(2) that in sentence 2 the infinitive **esse** is the direct object of the main verb **cōnābitur**.

(3) that in sentence 3 the infinitive **cōfirmāre** is the complement of the main verb **possunt**.

(4) that in sentence 2 the adjective **parātus** agrees in G. N. C. with **Orgetorix**, the subject of the main verb, according to § 45.

(5) that in sentence 4 **Orgetorigem**, the subject of the infinitive **dicere**, is put in the accusative case.

270. RULES. — 1. *The infinitive may be used as subject, object, or complement.*

2. *The subject of the infinitive mood is in the accusative.*

271.

VOCABULARY.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, m.,	} tribes to the north of the Swiss.	ūnā, adv., <i>together with</i> .
Rauraci, -ōrum, m.,		quid, interrog. pro. neut. sing.
Tulingi, -ōrum, m.,		nom. or acc., <i>what?</i>
exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus, <i>burn up, consume</i> .		
proficīscor, proficīsci, profectus sum, <i>set forth, go</i> (deponent, transl. actively).		
ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>use, employ</i> (deponent translated actively).		

272.

WRITTEN WORK.

Tabulate in a vertical column with meanings the six infinitive forms of each of the following verbs: occupō, iubeō, exūrō, cōnficiō, audiō.

273.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Rauracīs persuādēre cōstituērunt ut eōdem tempore iter facerent. (2) Multōs annōs rēgnum in suā civitatē occupāre cōnātur. (3) Helvētiōs omnia aedificia incendere coēgit. (4) Diviciācus iam cōstituit amicus populī Rōmānī esse. (5) Perfacile erat Helvētiīs persuādēre ut suōs vicōs exūrarent. (6) Iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere cōstituent. (7) Orgetorīx cōnātur potentissimus tōtius Galliae esse. (8) Helvētiōs omne frūmentum, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrere coēgit. (9) Germānī agrōs Belgārum vāstāre et oppida oppugnāre cōstituunt. (10) Quid Orgetorīx cōnābātur?

II. (1) The Swiss will now decide to enforce their rights (sing.) by arms. (2) Caesar will compel his troops to march from Gaul to Rome. (3) He will attempt to lead a great number of men from Geneva to another part of Gaul. (4) We shall compel him to purchase grain for three months. (5) [Answer, in a complete Latin sentence containing an infinitive as object, the question in sentence 10, part I.]

274. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eodem cōnsiliō¹ ūtuntur. Oppida sua vicōsque exūrunť. Oppidīs vicīsque exustīs, ūnā cum eis proficiſcuntur. Persuādēnt finitimīs utī, ūsī² eōdem cōnsiliō, ūnā cum eis proficiſcantur.³

¹ Ablative with ūtor translated as direct object.

² ūsī, perf. pass. participle of ūtor, transl. actively.

³ Present subjunctive. Why?

LESSON XXXVII.

DECLENSION OF *DUO*.—CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*.—
DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

275. *Their neighbors adopt the same plan and start out along with them.*

Persuādēnt Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iis proficiſcantur.

276. Memorize the declension of the numeral *duo*, *two*, App., § 9; also the conjugation of *possum*, *I am able*, App., § 26.

The verb *possum* is a compound of the verb *sum* and the adjective *potis*, *able*; base, *pot-*.—This combination undergoes certain euphonic changes when two consonants occur together.

277. MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Dumnorix erat amicus Helvētiis.*—*Dumnorix was friendly to the Swiss.* (2) *Genāva erat oppidum proximum finibus Helvētiōrum.*—*Geneva was the town nearest to the territories of the Swiss.*

Observe:—

That *Helvētiis* and *finibus* are in the dative case, with the adjectives *amicus* and *proximus*.

278. *RULE.*—*The dative is used with adjectives denoting fitness, friendliness, likeness, nearness.*

279.

VOCABULARY.

Bōii, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe.

Nōrēia, -ae, f., *Noreia*, the chief town of the Norici.socius, -i, m., *ally*.amicus, -a, -um, *friendly*.duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two*.Nōricus, -a, -um, *belonging to the Norici*, a tribe north of the Alps.dissimilis, -e, m., f., n., *unlike*.similis, -e, m., f., n., *like, similar to*.adsciscō, adsciscere, adscivi, adscitus, *take to, add, adopt*.recipiō, recipere, recepi, receptus, *take back, receive*.trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *go across, cross*.

280.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write a synopsis of *possum* in the 3d singular.(2) Decline *unum iter* in the singular and *duo itinera* in the plural.

281.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Haec oppida finibus Helvētiōrum proxima sunt. (2) Orgetorix erat reliquīs Gallīs virtūte dissimilis. (3) Illi agrī quī latē patebant nostrīs agrīs similēs erant. (4) Iter erat difficile ut Helvētiī iter facere nōn facile possent. (5) Bōiī Helvētiīs erant amici. (6) Duo oppida erunt quae Belgae oppugnāre poterunt. (7) Germānī erant proximī nostrīs sociīs, quōrum agrōs vāstare poterant. (8) Nostrī agrī sunt dissimilēs agrīs nostrōrum duōrum amicōrum. (9) Belgae erant dissimilēs reliquīs Gallīs. (10) Nōrēia nōn erat amīca Genāvae.

II. (1) We were not able to march from home by the two roads which were nearest our territories. (2) The Swiss were unlike their allies. (3) He had been able to seize the royal power, which his father had held. (4) These two rivers are like those three. (5) To his two daughters, he will give this hope.

282.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Bōiī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant (oppugnārant). Helvētiī eōs Bōiōs sociōs ad sē recipiunt et sibi adsciscunt. Bōiōs receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

LESSON XXXVIII.

THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

283. *The Swiss form an alliance with the Boii.*

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōsiliō oppidīs suis vicisque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trāsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt. [Cap. V. Finis.]

284. Direct Discourse gives the exact words of a speaker or writer; as, *Caesar is coming*. Indirect Discourse gives the words of a speaker or writer as reported by another or by the same person after a verb of knowing, telling, thinking, and perceiving; as, *he says that Caesar is coming*.

DIRECT DISCOURSE.

Belgae bellum gerunt. — *The Belgians are carrying on war.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Dicit Belgās bellum gerere. — *He says that the Belgians are carrying on war, or He says the Belgians are carrying on war, or (literally), He says the Belgians to be carrying on war.*

Observe: —

(1) that the indicative **gerit** in the Direct Discourse becomes the infinitive **gerere** in the Indirect Discourse.

(2) that the infinitive phrase is the direct object of **dicit** according to § 270 (1).

(3) that **Belgae**, the subject nominative in the Direct Discourse, becomes **Belgās**, the subject accusative of the infinitive in the Indirect Discourse.

285. RULE. — *Verbs and other expressions of knowing, telling, thinking, and perceiving are followed in indirect discourse by the infinitive with subject accusative.*

USES OF THE INFINITIVE TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

286.

MODEL SENTENCES.

Dicit Belgās bellum gerere. — *He says that the Belgians are carrying on war.* Dixit Belgās bellum gerere. — *He said that the Belgians were carrying on war.*

Observe : —

That the present infinitive represents the action as being performed at the time of the verb on which it depends.

Dicit Belgās bellum gessisse. — *He says that the Belgians have carried on war.* Dixit Belgās bellum gessisse. — *He said that the Belgians had carried on war.*

Observe : —

That the perfect infinitive represents the action as already performed at the time of the verb on which it depends.

Dicit Belgās bellum gestūrōs esse. — *He says that the Belgians will carry on war.* Dixit Belgās bellum gestūrōs esse. — *He said that the Belgians would carry on war.*

Observe : —

That the future infinitive represents the action as going to be performed after the time of the verb on which it depends, and that the participle *gestūrōs* agrees in G. N. C. with *Belgās*, the subject of the infinitive.

In all these sentences the conjunction *that* introducing the subordinate clause in English has no equivalent in the Latin sentence.

SUMMARY.

The tenses of the infinitive *present*, *perfect*, or *future* represent the action as *being performed*, *already performed*, or *going to be performed* relative to the time of the verb on which it depends.

287.

VOCABULARY.

perpauci, -ae, -a, *very few*.singuli, -ae, -a (distributive numeral),
one each, one by one.omnino, adv., *altogether, in all*.quā, rel. adv., *where*.vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely, with difficulty*.impendeō, impendēre, *overhang, threaten* (with dat.).exeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go out, emigrate*.

288.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) With the present 3d plural active of *ēnūntiō* as an introductory verb and *sē* as subject accusative of the infinitive, form expressions of Indirect Discourse, employing each of the three active forms of the infinitive of *dūcō* and translating each as in § 286.

(2) Do likewise with the perfect and future active of *ēnūntiō*.

289.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

Note that each infinitive phrase in sentence 1 is the direct object of the main verb according to § 270, 1. What of the infinitive phrase in sentence 4?

I. (1) (a) Dicit { Orgetorigem coniūratiōnem facere.
 (b) Dicet { Orgetorigem coniūratiōnem fecisse.
 (c) Dixit { Orgetorigem coniūratiōnem factūrum esse.

(2) (a) Dicunt { sē oppida oppugnāre.
 (b) Dicent { sē oppida oppugnāvisse.
 (c) Dixērunt } sē oppida oppugnātūrōs esse.

(3) (a) Arbitrantur } exercitum ā sē dūcī.
 (b) Arbitrābuntur } exercitum ā sē ductum īrī.
 (c) Arbitrātī sunt } exercitum ā sē ductum esse.

(4) Helvētiōs iter factūrōs esse ēnūntiātum est. (5) Montēs impendēre ēnūntiāverant. (6) Dixit sē rēgna illis conciliātūrum.¹ (7) Ēnūntiābitur Orgetorigem ab Helvētiīs dēlectum

¹ *Esse* is frequently understood with the future infinitive, also with the perfect passive.

esse. (8) *Arbitratus erat Casticum regnum in sua civitate occupatum esse.* (9) *Enuntiavit se amicum populi Romani appellatum esse.*

II. (1) They thought that they were being accused. (2) He thinks that they are being accused. (3) They said that their fields had been laid waste. (4) The Aedui announced that arms were being imported by the Swiss. (5) The Swiss thought that they had narrow territories. (6) It was announced that he would attack their towns.

290.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eis duobus itineribus domo exire poterant. Erant omnino duo itinera quibus itineribus domo exire possent. Unum iter per Sequanos erat inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, angustum et difficile, quam singuli carri vix¹ ducerentur.² Perpauci facile eos prohibere potuerunt. Mons autem altissimus impendebat ut perpauci facile prohibere possent.²

¹ Caesar places this adverb before *quam*, thus making it very emphatic and giving a superlative force to an adverb that could not be compared. For greater emphasis Caesar also places the adverb *facile* before *perpauci*. Compare the position of these adverbs in the above and in the text in § 291.

² A clause of Result, see § 228.



ANCIENT CARTS.

LESSON XXXIX.

DEPONENT VERBS AND ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

291. *The Swiss must choose one of two roads in leaving home. The first of these, with narrow passes and overhanging mountains, traverses the Sequani.*

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent : unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur ; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent.



THE ROAD NARROW AND DIFFICULT.

292. A deponent verb is one which is passive in form but active in meaning. Deponent verbs occur in all conjugations, and in the indicative and subjunctive are conjugated exactly like the passive voice of their respective conjugations, as may be seen by reference to the App., § 24. The participles and infinitives present peculiarities, which will be noted in the following paradigms.

293.

PARADIGMS.

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres. Ind.</i> cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
<i>Pres. Inf.</i> cōnāri	verēri	sequi	potiri
<i>Perf. Ind.</i> cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.

cōnāns, <i>attempting</i>	verēns, <i>fearing</i>	sequēns, <i>following</i>	potiēns, <i>getting control</i>
---------------------------	------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------------

FUTURE.

cōnātūrus, <i>going-to-attempt.</i>	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
-------------------------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------

PERFECT.

cōnātus, <i>having attempted.</i>	veritus	secūtus	potitus
-----------------------------------	---------	---------	---------

GERUNDIVE.

cōnandus, <i>to be attempted.</i>	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
-----------------------------------	----------	-----------	-----------

Observe: —

That deponent verbs have all four participles: (a) present and future participles active in both form and meaning; (b) perfect participles passive in form and active in meaning; (c) gerundives passive, not only in form, but even in meaning, notwithstanding the nature of deponent verbs.

INFINITIVES.

PRESENT.

cōnāri, <i>to attempt</i>	verēri, <i>to fear</i>	sequi, <i>to follow</i>	potiri, <i>to get control</i>
---------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------------

PERFECT.

cōnātus esse, <i>to have attempted.</i>	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
---	--------------	--------------	--------------

FUTURE.

cōnātūrus esse, <i>to be going-to-attempt.</i>	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse
--	----------------	----------------	----------------

Observe : —

That deponent verbs have three instead of six infinitive forms, and that they substitute the future active infinitive for the future passive. What are wanting?

294.

MODEL SENTENCES.

- (1) Eōdem cōnsiliō ūsī sunt. — *They adopted the same plan.*
 (2) Imperiō tōtius Galliae potitī sunt. — *They got control of the whole of Gaul.*

Observe : —

That in the English sentences *plan* and *control* are the direct objects of their verbs, while their Latin equivalents are put in the ablative though translated as direct objects.

295. RULE. — *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor, with their compounds, govern an ablative translated as direct object.*

296.

VOCABULARY.

vadum, -ī, n., *ford, shoal.*

expeditus, -a, -um, *unencumbered, easy.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, *farthest, most distant.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, *some.*

nūper, adv., *recently.*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, *flow.*

orior, oriri, ortus sum, *rise.* See § 107.

pācō, 1, *subdue, pacify.*

297.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline *id vadum*.
 (2) Write synopses of the following verbs, giving infinitives and participles with meanings: *arbitror* in the 1st plural and *ūtor* in the 2d plural.
 (3) Write infinitives and participles only of *orior*.

298.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

- I. (1) *Frūmentum, quō Helvētiī nōn ūsī erant, combustum est.*
 (2) *Belgae armīs, quae undique coēmerant, nōn ūsī sunt.* (3) *Nōnnūllīs oppidīs, quae nūper liberāvimus, potitī sumus.* (4) *Omni*

frumentō, quod nōn combusserant, uti cōstituērunt. (5) Dixit Rauracōs Tulingīs persuāsisse ut eōdem cōsiliō uterentur. (6) Dixit sōlem oriri. (7) Dixērunt sē extrēmīs vadīs Rhodanī nōn usūrōs esse. (8) Imperiō hōrum finium Helvētiī eō diē potiti erant. (9) Rauracīs persuādere cōnābuntur ut omnia sua oppida ad duodecim numerō exūrant. (10) Helvētiī frumentō, quod sēcum portāverant, uti nōn potuērunt.

II. (1) They will decide not to use this grain. (2) They thought that all hope had been taken away by the return of Orgetorix. (3) The Swiss are carrying from home all the grain that they will use. (4) They had thought that they would get control of all the towns of the Belgians. (5) The troops, which we led to Geneva, had used all the grain.

299.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Alterum iter per nostram prōvinciam erat multō¹ facilius atque expeditius. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fuit. Allobrogēs ā populō Rōmānō nūper pācātī erant et ob eam causam nōn erant amīcī. In finibus Allobrogum Rhodanus nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

¹ Neuter singular ablative, translate *much*.

LESSON XL.

ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF QUALITY.—DECLENSION OF *Vīs*.

300. *The second road affords easy access to the territories of the Allobroges, who on account of a recent defeat are hostile to Rome.*

Alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fuit, isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

301.

PARADIGM.

vis, force, strength.BASE : **vi-**.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nominative</i>	vis	virēs
<i>Genitive</i>	vis	virium
<i>Dative</i>	vī	viribus
<i>Accusative</i>	vim	virēs
<i>Ablative</i>	vi	viribus

The genitive and dative singular of **vis** are rarely found.

302.

MODEL SENTENCES.

- (1) **Allobrogēs** { **bonō animō** } **in** **populum Rōmānum** **nōn** **erant**.

— *The Allobroges were not in good humor towards the Roman people.*

- (2) **Trium mēnsium** **molita cibāria** **domō** **efferunt**. — *They carry from home flour for three months.*

Observe : —

(1) that in sentence 1 the bracketed phrase is used to describe the **Allobrogēs** by denoting a Quality; that this phrase contains both an adjective and a noun and is expressed by either the genitive or ablative. Unlike all other ablatives heretofore studied, the ablative of quality modifies nouns, either directly or as predicate.

(2) that in sentence 2 **mēnsium** denotes the Measure of Time, is modified by a numeral **trium**, and is expressed only by the genitive.

303. RULES. — 1. *The genitive or ablative is used to denote quality but only when modified by an adjective.*

2. *The genitive of quality with numerals is used to define measure of time, length, etc., and is then known as the genitive of measure.*

304.

VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, m., plu., a
Gaulic tribe in the north of the province.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

vis, vis, f., *force, strength, violence*.

eō, ire, ivī or ii, itus, *go*.

existimō, 1, *think, believe*.

patior, pati, passus sum, *permit, endure*.

videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, *see*; passive, *be seen, therefore, seem, appear*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., *what sort of?*

nōndum, adv., *not yet*.

vel, coördinate conj., *or*; vel . . .

vel, *either . . . or*.

305.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write with meanings the infinitives and participles of **videō** and **patior**, noting that the latter is a deponent of the Third Conjugation in **io**.

(2) Write synopses of **videō** in the 2d singular active and **patior** in the 3d plural.

(3) Decline **pōns** after reviewing **pars** in § 60.

306.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Helvētiī iter trium milium passuum per finēs Sēquarū fēcērant. (2) Trānsire Rhodanum, flūmen māgnā lātitudīne, cōnātī sunt. (3) Existimābant Orgetorīgē esse māgnā auctōritāte apud Helvētiōs. (4) Auctōritāte Orgetorīgis inductī, dē suis finibus exire cōstituērunt. (5) Helvētiī arbitrābantur sē montibus altissimīs continēri. (6) Hōs agrōs, quī erant māgnā lātitudīne, vāstāre nōn poterant. (7) Dumnorīgī, quī erat māgnae auctōritātis in eius civitāte, persuāsit. (8) Civitās eum causam dicere vī cōget. (9) Illō frūmentō omni ūtentur. (10) Quālis populus erant Helvētiī?

(In the following sentences, translate all expressions of quality without measure by both genitive and ablative as in Model Sentence (1), § 302.)

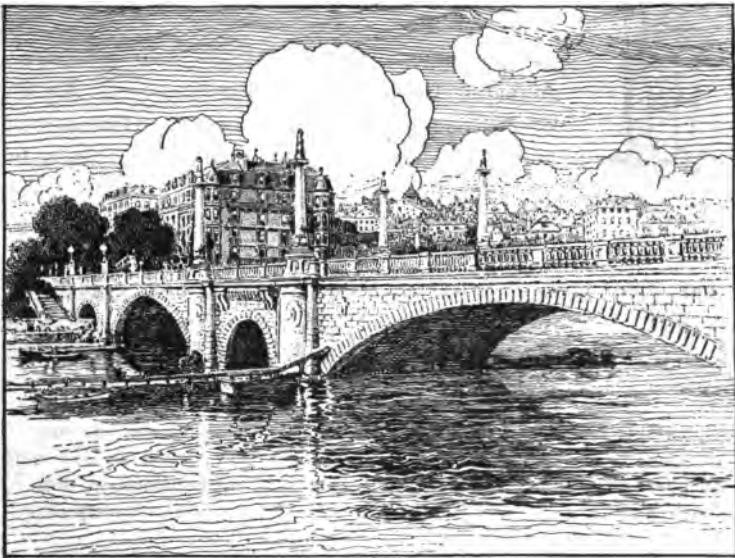
II. (1) From this village a bridge of great length extends to the town. (2) The Swiss, who are (men) of great bravery, will get control of all this territory. (3) They will lead with them an army of three thousand men. (4) The army had made a

march of two miles altogether that day. (5) We had used weapons of great length. (6) [Answer in a complete Latin sentence containing an ablative or genitive of quality the question in sentence 10, part I.]

307.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Genāva est extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque finibus Helvētiōrum. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.



THE PRESENT BRIDGE AT GENEVA.

Allobrogēs nūper pācātī erant et nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur. Quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur (transl. as if vidēbantur), Helvētiī sēsē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant. Exīstimābant Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs vel eōs vī coāctūrōs. Helvētiī Allobrogēs vī coāctūrī erant ut eōs per finēs Ire paterentur.

LESSON XLI.

COMPARISON OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. — THE
VERB *EŌ*.LEGIONARIUS EXPR-
DITUS.

308. *The Swiss plan to cross the Rhone at Geneva by persuasion or force, believing that the recently subjugated Allobroges will grant them the right of way.*

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiorum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētios pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs Ire paterentur.

309. *Celer, celeris, celere* (base *celer-*) is a Third Declension adjective of Three Terminations. Memorize its declension in the App., § 10; also declension of *liber* in the App., § 8. Note their comparison below.

celer, celeris, celere
swift

liber, libera, liberum
free

celerior, -ius
swifter

liberior, -ius
freer

celerrimus, -a, -um
swiftest or very swift
liberrimus, -a, -um
freest or very free

Observe: —

That the comparative of the above adjectives is formed regularly by adding *-ior* and *-ius* to the base, but that the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus* to the masculine singular nominative of the positive.

All adjectives ending in *-er* are thus compared.

310. *facilis, -e* (base *facil-*), *easy*; *facilior, -ius, easier*; *facillimus, a, -um, easiest*.

Observe:—

That the comparative of this adjective is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding *-limus* to the base.

The following adjectives are similarly compared: *difficilis*, *difficult*, *dissimilis*, *unlike*, *gracilis*, *slender*, *humilis*, *low*, *similis*, *like*.

311. PARADIGM.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **E**Ö.

eö, *ire*, **iv**i or **ii**, *itus*, *go*.

PRESENT STEM: i .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. e ö	<i>imus</i>
2. is	<i>itis</i>
3. it	<i>eunt</i> .

SYNOPSIS OF **E**Ö WITH INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	PARTICIPLES.	INFINITIVES.
PRES.	e ö	<i>eam</i>	<i>iëns</i> (base <i>eunt</i> -) Gen. <i>euntis</i>	<i>ire</i>
IMP.	<i>ibam</i>	<i>irem</i>		
FUT.	<i>ibö</i>		<i>itürus</i>	<i>itürus esse</i>
PERF.	<i>ivi or <i>ii</i></i>	<i>Iverim</i> (<i>ierim</i>)		<i>ivisse</i> (<i>isse</i>)
PLUP.	<i>Iveram</i> (<i>ieram</i>)	<i>Ivissem</i> (<i>issem</i>)	Gerundive <i>eundum</i> (no m. or f.)	
FUTP.	<i>iverö</i> (<i>ierö</i>)			

Transitive compounds of **e**ö are fully conjugated in the passive. *Trānsitur*, *trānsitum est*, and the present infinitive *trānsiri* occur frequently.

Observe:—

(1) that **i**, the present stem of **e**ö, becomes *e* before a vowel in the present indicative and present subjunctive.

(2) that **e**ö forms its future and imperfect indicative by adding to the present stem the tense signs of the First and Second Conjugations and the personal endings.

(3) that the **v** may be dropped in the forms based on the perfect stem. This letter is regularly dropped in compounds, as *trāns-ierant*.

312.

VOCABULARY.

Kalendae, -ārum, f., plu., <i>Kalends</i> , the first day of the month.	Aprilis, -e, <i>April</i> , of <i>April</i> .
ripa, -ae, f., <i>bank</i> (of a river).	celer, -is, -e, <i>swift</i> .
ante, prep. governing acc., <i>before</i> .	liber, -a, -um, <i>free</i> .
	quintus, -a, -um, <i>fifth</i> .
conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, <i>come together, assemble</i> .	

313.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare fully the adjectives: *difficilis*, *dissimilis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*, *similis*.

(2) Write synopses of *trānseō* in the 3d singular active and *exeō* in the 3d plural active, noting particularly the warning contained in the last sentence of § 311, (3).

(3) Decline fully the present participle of *eō*, noting in § 311 how the base differs from the nominative.

314.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Difficillimīs itineribus nōn utī cōstituērunt*. (2) *Flūmen magnā lātitudīne trānsīre cōnābimur*. (3) *Caesar dīcit flūmen Rhodanum nōn nullis locīs trānsīrī*. (4) *Oppidis incēnsīs, itinere facillimō domō exīre cōnāti sunt*. (5) *Helvētīī ē suis finibus exiērunt ut liberīōrēs essent*. (6) *Enūntiāvit arma Belgārum esse simillima armīs Helvētiōrum*. (7) *Reliquō frūmentō combustō, ad alteram rīpam Rhodanī trānsībunt*. (8) *Sociī dixērunt sē esse amīcōs Belgīs*. (9) *Cōstituērunt sē eō frūmentō nōn ūsūrōs esse*. (10) *Arbitrāti sunt reditiōnem domum celerrimam futūram esse*.

II. (1) The roads by which we went home were very easy. (2) They announced that their towns were the freest of all Gaul. (3) Caesar thought that he would cross this very swift river. (4) After the most difficult roads have been seized, the Swiss will assemble at Geneva. (5) They crossed this river by the easiest ford. (6) The same river was crossed by our soldiers by means of a bridge.

315.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Omnēs rēs ad profectionē comparātae sunt. Omnibus rēbus ad profectionē comparātis, diem dicunt. Diem dicunt, quā¹ diē (=ut eā diē) omnēs ad ripam Rhodanī conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs,² Lūciō Pīsōne, Aulō Gabiniō cōsulibus.

¹ quā: a relative adjective introducing a relative clause of purpose.

² The fifth day before the first of April, that is, the twenty-eighth of March, counting according to the Roman system the twenty-eighth and the first as two of the five days.

LESSON XLII.

ABLATIVE OF MANNER. — CUM TEMPORAL.

316. *The Swiss name March 28, 58 B.C. as the date of assembling.*

Omnibus rēbus ad profectionē comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat, a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus. [Cap. VI. Finis.]



CONFLUENCE OF THE RHONE AND ARNE AT GENEVA.

317.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cum virtūte Māgnā virtūte or Māgnā cum virtūte	} resistimus	{ <i>With bravery or Bravely, With great bravery, or Very bravely, do we resist.</i>

Observe : —

That in the above sentence Manner is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition **cum** when the noun in the phrase is not modified by an adjective, but that **cum** is preferably omitted when the noun is so modified. This is called the Ablative of Manner.

318. RULE. — *The manner of an action is denoted by the ablative with cum, but cum may be omitted when the ablative is modified by an adjective.*

319.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cum in Galliam iter facient, oppida vicōsque incendent. — *When they make the march into Gaul, they will burn their towns and villages.* (2) Cum magistrātūs multitudinem hominum ex agrīs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est. — *While the magistrates were assembling from the country a large number of men, Orgetorix died.*

Observe : —

(1) that in these sentences the conjunction **cum** means *when* (its usual meaning) and introduces a clause expressing time.

(2) that in sentence 1 the verb of the subordinate clause refers to future time and takes the indicative.

(3) that in sentence 2 the verb of the subordinate clause refers to past time and takes the subjunctive.

320. RULE. — *A temporal clause with cum, when referring to present or future, regularly takes the indicative ; when referring to the past, generally takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

321.

VOCABULARY.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*.miles, militis, m., *soldier*.legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*, corresponding roughly to a brigade in modern armies.urbs, urbis, f., *city*, always referring to Rome in Caesar.ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., *farther*.imperō, 1, *command* (see § 254).mātūrō, 1, *hasten, make haste*.nūntiō, 1, *announce*.pervenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, *get through, arrive, reach* (with prep. ad and acc.).rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus, *tear down, destroy*.

322.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline miles and legiō.

(2) Write a synopsis of pervenīō in the 3d plural active and write out with meanings the infinitives and participles of nūntiō.

323.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Cum Genāvam iter faciēmus, oppida Allobrogum māgnā vi oppugnābimus. (2) Cum Bōii Norēiam occupant, Norici māgnō dolōre exeunt. (3) Cum civitās suum iūs vi exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est. (4) Cum Casticus rēgnum māgnō periculō occupāvisset, pācem cum finitimis civitatibus cōfirmāvit. (5) Helvētiī cum omne frūmentum combussissent, ex suis finibus cum spē profecti sunt. (6) Cum flūmen trānsisset, Caesar Genāvam ire mātūrāvit. (7) Cum iter in finēs Celtārum facerent, frūmentō sociōrum ūsi sunt. (8) Ponte rescissō flūmen trānsire nōn poterunt. (9) Urbe captā, nostrī militēs māgnā cōpiā frūmenti potientur.

(Translate the subordinate clauses in the first three sentences below by both ablative absolute phrases and cum-clauses.)

II. (1) After they had made peace, they bravely¹ set out. (2) When they had captured the city, they burned the grain. (3) While Orgetorix was dying, the Swiss collected men from the fields. (4) When we attack² the town, Caesar will be in Gaul.

¹ Translate by an Ablative of Manner.

² Latin is very exact as to tenses. To what time does *attack* refer?

(5) While Caesar was trying to collect soldiers, the Swiss laid waste the territory of his allies with great violence.

324.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesarī¹ enūntiātum est eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset,² ab urbe proficisci mātūrat.³ In Galliam ulteriōrem quam māximīs⁴ potest itineribus contendit. Quam māximīs⁴ itineribus contendit, et ad Genāvam⁵ pervenit.

Quam māximum numerum militum potest tōtī prōvinciae imperat. In Galliā ulteriōre erat omnīnō legiō ūna. Pontem, qui erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindi.

¹ Caesar now first mentions his own name, placing it in an emphatic position in the sentence. How do we make a word emphatic in English?

² Pluperfect, to denote action already performed at the time of the main verb.

³ Historical present. Caesar rode on horseback, averaging ninety miles a day.

⁴ Translate *quam māximīs*, *greatest possible*.

⁵ Names of towns occur with *ad* or *ab* in the sense of *to* or *from* the vicinity.

FIFTH REVIEW.

I. Write in a column with meanings the Latin nouns meaning: town, house, hope, month, ally, bridge, force, bank, plan, village, building, ford. Decline consecutively the first ten of these nouns, starting (a) with the first and putting the adjective *nūllus* in agreement with each form, (b) with the second, putting the adjective *bonus* in agreement with each form. Decline in full *duo* in agreement with the plural of the eleventh word and *trēs* in agreement with the plural of the twelfth word.

II. Compare with meanings *liber* and *facilis*, reviewing the rules for their comparison in §§ 309 and 310.

III. Write in a column with principal parts and meanings the Latin verbs from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: porter, incendiary, (ex)tol, transition, recipient, pugnacious, vision, convene, susceptible, fluent, estimate, pacify, (pre)pare, adding to this list the Latin verbs meaning: order, go, undertake, be able.

IV. Write synopses consecutively in the 3d plural of the first ten of these verbs by giving the present indicative of the first, the imperfect indicative of the second, etc., ending with the pluperfect subjunctive of the tenth.¹

V. Tabulate with meanings the infinitives of *pācō* and *trāns-eō* (active only) and the participles of *existimō* and *iubeō*.

VI. Summarize four uses of the infinitive already studied.

VII. Tabulate in three separate columns the case constructions that modify (1) nouns, (2) adjectives, (3) verbs.

VIII. Translate the text of Lessons XXXV–XLII inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned above.

IX. Arrange the following prepositions with meanings in two columns, one for prepositions governing the accusative, the other for those governing the ablative, noting that one of these prepositions must appear in both columns: *ab, ad, cum, dē, ex, in, inter, ob, per, post, prō, trāns*.

¹ A model of this scheme will be found in the App., § 30.

LESSON XLIII.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.— DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*.

325. *Caesar hastens from Rome to Geneva and orders the destruction of the bridge across the Rhone.*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrāt ab urbe proficisci et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindi.



A SOLDIER OF THE
LEGION.

326. The following adjectives are irregular both in the comparative and the superlative: **bonus, dives, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, vetus.** Memorize with meanings their comparison in the App., § 12.

327. In the following adjectives the positive rarely occurs: **exterus, inferus, posterus, superus.** Memorize with meanings their comparison in the App., § 12.

328.**MODEL SENTENCES.**

(1) Flūmen erat celerius. — *The river was rather swift or too swift.* (2) Montibus altissimis continentur. — *They are hemmed in by very high mountains.* (3) Quam maximum numerum carrorum coëmērunt. — *They bought up the greatest possible number (or as great a number as possible) of carts.*

Observe : —

The variations possible in the translation of the comparative and superlative degrees.

329.**PARADIGM.****DECLENSION OF Plūs.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nominative</i>	—	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrēs, { <i>several</i> or <i>more</i> }	plūra
<i>Genitive</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dative</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Accusative</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs, -is	plūra
<i>Ablative</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Plūs in the singular is always a noun (defective in the dative), and is often followed by the Genitive of the Whole. Note the genitive plural in **-ium**. **Complūrēs**, *very many*, is a compound of **plūs** having no singular and declined in the plural like **plūs** except that the neuter nominative and accusative plural may have **ia** instead of **a**.

330.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *envoy, ambassador, lieutenant.*

malefīcium, -ī, n., *evil deed, outrage, hostile act.*

Nammēsius, -ī, m.,
Verucloetius, -ī, m., } *Swiss envoys.*

licet, **licēre**, **licuit**, *impers. verb.*, *it is permitted* (with dat. of pers. and inf.).

mittō, **mittere**, **misī**, **missus**, *send.*

rogō, 1, *ask, beg, request.*

voluntās, **voluntātis**, f., *wish, desire, good will.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain.*

princeps, m., f., n., (gen., principis),
first, (as substantive), prince.

ūllus, -a, -um, *any, any one.*

sine, prep. governing abl., *without.*

331.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline the nouns **adventus** and **malefīcium**.

(2) Decline **princeps**, a third declension adjective of One Termination, like **audāx** in the App., § 10.

(3) Write the infinitives and participles of **mittō** with meanings.

332.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) **Rōmānī** **militēs** **optimīs** **armīs** **ūtentur**. (2) **Eōrum** **māxima** **oppida** **erant** **simillima** **nostrīs** **minimīs** **viciis**. (3) **Infimīs** **locīs** **captīs**, **nostrī** **militēs** **plūribus** **montibus** **potientur**. (4) **Hī** **montēs** **erant** **altiōrēs** **ut**¹ **Helvētiī** **itinerā** **occupāre** **nōn** **possent**. (5) **Eō** **tempore** **Germānī** **Helvētiōs** **summīs** **locīs** **prohibēre** **cōn-**
ābantur. (6) **Infimī** **Gallōrum** **cum** **eō** **Genāvam** **ibunt**. (7) **Or-**
getorīx **quam** **plūrimōs** **militēs** **sēcum** **dūcet**. (8) **Itinerā** **erant**
longiōra **et** **montēs** **erant** **difficiliōrēs**. (9) **Caesar** **quam** **māxima**
itinerā **faciet** **ut** **ad** **id** **oppidum** **perveniat**. (10) **Belgae** **erant**
summae **virtūtis**.

II. (1) The higher parts of these mountains will be seized by the better Swiss. (2) The best soldiers will use the worst arms. (3) The Swiss will carry with them as much grain as possible. (4) Caesar sent his best soldiers to Geneva, the worst home. (5) The arms were too long so that the soldiers could not use them.

¹ Clause of Result. By what mode must **possent** then be translated?

333.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt,¹ lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Huius lēgātīōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant. Eōs mittunt quī ea dicerent.² Dicēbant sibi³ esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere. Lēgātī rogant ut Caesaris voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

¹ *Certiōrēs factī sunt, were made more certain, i.e. were informed.*

² *Relative Clause of Purpose.*

³ *To them it was in mind; freely, they had it in mind to make, etc.*

LESSON XLIV.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (continued).—
FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.



A ROMAN GENERAL HOLDING
A CONFERENCE.

334. *The Swiss send ambassadors to ask Caesar's consent to making a march through the Province.*

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgātīōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

335. The adjectives *ceterior*, *prior*, *propior*, and *ulterior* have no positive. Memorize with meanings their comparison in the App., § 12.

336. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>Adj.</i> lātus , -a, -um, <i>wide.</i> BASE : lāt- .	lātor , -ius, <i>wider.</i>	lātissimus , -a, -um, <i>widest.</i> BASE : lātissim- .
<i>Adv.</i> lātē , <i>widely.</i>	lātius , <i>more widely.</i>	lātissimē , <i>most widely.</i>
<i>Adj.</i> liber , -a, -um, <i>free.</i> BASE : liber- .	liberior , -ius, <i>freer.</i>	liberrimus , -a, -um, <i>freest.</i> BASE : liberrim- .
<i>Adv.</i> liberē , <i>freely.</i>	liberius , <i>more freely.</i>	liberrimē , <i>most freely.</i>
<i>Adj.</i> fortis , -e, <i>brave.</i> STEM : forti- .	fortior , -ius, <i>braver.</i>	fortissimus , -a, -um, <i>bravest.</i> BASE : fortissim- .
<i>Adv.</i> fortiter , <i>bravely.</i>	fortius , <i>more bravely.</i>	fortissimē , <i>most bravely.</i>
<i>Adj.</i> potēns , <i>powerful.</i> STEM : potent- .	potentior , -ius, <i>more powerful.</i>	potentissimus , -a, -um, <i>most powerful.</i> BASE : potentissim- .
<i>Adv.</i> potenter , <i>powerfully.</i>	potentius , <i>more powerfully.</i>	potentissimē , <i>most powerfully.</i>

Observe : —

(1) that from **lātus**, an adjective of the First and Second Declension, the positive of the corresponding adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base.

(2) that from **fortis**, an adjective of Two Terminations of the Third Declension, the positive of the corresponding adverb is formed by adding **-ter** to the stem.

(3) that from **potēns**, an adjective of One Termination of the Third Declension, the positive of its corresponding adverb is formed by dropping the final **t** of its stem before adding **-ter**.

(4) that the comparative of each adverb is the same as the nominative neuter singular comparative of the adjective, while the superlative is in all cases formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective.

Adverbs are regularly formed and compared in this way, and in the comparative and superlative degrees they show the same variations in translation as do the same degrees of the adjectives. For these variations in translation, see § 328.

337.

VOCABULARY.

facultās, facultātis, f., ability, opportunity.

iniūria, -ae, f., injustice, wrong, affront.

iugum, -ī, n., yoke.

memoria, -ae, f., memory; memoria tenēre, to remember.

inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly; when used substantively, enemy.

sub, prep. governing acc. or abl., under.

concēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, retire, withdraw, yield, grant.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus, cut down, kill.

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, beat, drive, strike, rout.

putō, 1, reckon, think.

temperō, 1, regulate, restrain; with sē, refrain from.

tenēō, tenēre, tenui, tentus, hold.

338.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare the following adjectives and the adverbs formed from them: **altus, angustus, cupidus, celer, longus, nōbilis.**

(2) Decline **facultās.**

(3) Write a synopsis of **pellō** in 2d singular active.

339.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) **Helvētīi haec oppida fortissimē oppugnābant.** (2) **Caesar cum omnibus suis militibus in ulteriorem Galliam celeriter ibit.** (3) **Haec flūmina erant proxima nostrae citeriōri prōvinciae.** (4) **Nostrō exercitū pulsō, finitimī oppidīs potentur.** (5) **Illa oppida longissimē aberant ut celerrimē nōn occupārī possent.** (6) **Id iter erat difficillimum ut vix proficisci possent.** (7) **Helvētīi amicitiae proximārum civitātum cupidissimē studēbant.** (8) **Hi meliōres agrī lātissimē patēbant.** (9) **Eōrum finēs montibus altiōribus angustissimē continēbantur.** (10) **Quam māximum exercitum cōget ut bellum celerius cōficiat.**

II. (1) They attacked the nearest towns very eagerly. (2) Caesar will march very quickly through the hither province. (3) Very high mountains overhang, so that they can cross this river with difficulty. (4) Several soldiers will be led to

Geneva. (5) Caesar remembered that these roads were narrowly hemmed in by mountains.

340. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar memoriā tenēbat Lūcium Cassium¹ cōsulem occisum esse. Atque memoriā tenēbat exercitum eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum² missum esse.³ Quod ea memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum⁴ esse⁵ nōn putābat. Neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī,⁵ ab iniuriā et maleficiō temperātūrī erant. Neque existimābat hominēs inimicō animō ab iniuriā et maleficiō temperātūrōs esse.⁵

¹ This humiliating defeat had occurred fifty years before near Lake Geneva.

² iugum: a sign of humiliation formed of a spear maintained in a horizontal position by two vertical supports. Under this filed the subjugated army.

³ Caesar omits *esse* with most infinitive compounds.

⁴ nōn concēdendum: *not to-be-granted*, i.e. ought not to be granted.

⁵ faciundī: gerundive (future passive participle) of *faciō*. Itineris faciundī, *of a march to-be-made*, i.e. of making a march.

LESSON XLV.

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*, *NŌLŌ*, AND *MĀLŌ*.

341. Caesar decides not to grant the request.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existimābat.

342. From the verb *volō*, *I wish*, are derived *nōlō* (*nōn volō*), *I do not wish*, and *mālo* (*māgis volō*), *I wish rather, prefer*. Memorize their conjugation in the App., § 26.

343.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Helvētīī per prōvinciam exīre volūt.* — *The Swiss wish to emigrate through the province.* (2) *Caesar Helvētīōs per prōvinciam exīre nōn vult.* — *Caesar does not wish the Swiss to emigrate through the province.*

Observe: —

That these verbs of wishing (**volō, nōlō, mālō**) are followed by an infinitive used as object with or without a subject accusative. For this use of the infinitive, see § 270.

344.

VOCABULARY.

Idūs, -uum, *f.*, plu., *Ides*; the 15th of March, May, July, October; the 13th of all other months; abbr. *Id.*
spatium, spatī, *n.*, *space* (of time or place).
tamen, adv., *still, yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding.*

quis, *m.*, *f.*, **quid**, *n.*, indef. pro., *any one, anything.*
dum, subord. conjunc., *while, with ind.; until, with subjunc.*
sī, subord. conjunc., *if.*

dēlibērō, 1, *think about, consider.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, *go between, intervene.*

mālō, mālī, mālūī, —, *wish, rather, prefer.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī, —, *be unwilling.*

respondēō, respondēre, respondi, respōsus, *reply, answer.*

revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus, *turn back, return.* (Usually deponent except in perf., plup., and fut. perf.)

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūptus, *take up, take.*

volō, velle, volūī, *wish, be willing.*

345.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write synopses of **volō** in the 2d singular, **nōlō** in the 1st plural, **mālō** in the 3d plural.

(2) Write with meanings the infinitives and participles of **sūmō**.

346.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

- I. (1) *Nōn vult, volunt, vīs.* (2) *Nōn vīs, nolumus, nōlunt.*
 (3) *Māvīs, māvultis, mālunt.* (4) *Voluistī, voluerās, volueris.*
 (5) *Mālet, mālent, māluistis.* (6) *Nōluērunt, nōluerant, nōlueris.*

(7) Itinera erant difficillima ut proficisci nōllent. (8) Helvētīī faciōre itinere exīre māluērunt. (9) Caesar respondit sē velle Genāvam ire. (10) Haec loca sunt proxima ut flūmen transire mālint. (11) Helvētīī frūmentō ūtī volēbant quod sēcum portāverant. (12) Eō tempore longiōre itinere ūtī mālēbant.

II. (1) They will be willing, you are willing; he prefers. (2) We had been unwilling; they will have preferred, they were preferring. (3) You are unwilling; you have preferred; they were wishing. (4) The mountains were so high that they preferred to return home. (5) The Swiss preferred to send their army to Geneva. (6) He said that he had preferred to persuade the Allobroges.

347.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar voluit spatium intercēdere dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, Caesar lēgātīs respondit: "Diem ad dēliberandum¹ sūmam." Lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum esse. Si quid vellent, ad Idūs Aprīlēs reverterentur.²

¹ Ad dēliberandum: gerund expressing purpose; transl. as if dēliberāre.

² Reverterentur: they should return.

LESSON XLVI.

COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS.—ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

348. *To gain time, Caesar replies that he will think it over.*

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur. [Cap. VII. Finis.]

349. Certain adverbs show irregularities in one or more degrees of comparison. Memorize their comparison with meanings in the App., § 13.

350.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Rhēnus est longior { quam Rhodanus. } *The Rhine is longer*
Rhodanō. } *than the Rhone.*

(2) Hi montēs sunt propiōrēs Helvētiis quam Belgis. — *These mountains are nearer to the Swiss than to the Belgians.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1 when *quam* is used, *Rhodanus* is in the nominative, the same case as the word with which it is compared; when *quam* is omitted, the word for *Rhone* is in the ablative. Either construction may be used without difference of meaning.

(2) that in sentence 2 *Helvētiis* and *Belgis* are both in the dative case. *Quam* can be omitted only when the former of the two things compared is in the nominative or accusative.

351. RULE. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative of comparison when quam, than, is omitted; otherwise the same case follows quam as precedes it.*

352.

VOCABULARY.

altitūdō, altitudinis, f., height or depth.	novem, num. adj., nine.
mūrus, -i, m., wall.	sēdecim, num. adj., sixteen.
pēs, pedis, m., foot.	interea, adv., meanwhile.
	quam, conj., than.

inflūō, influere, infūxi, infūxus, flow into.

perducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead through, construct.

353.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare the adverb *difficile*.

(2) Decline *altitūdō* and *pēs*.

(3) Write synopses of *revertō* in the 3d singular and *respondeō* in the 3d plural active, making the former deponent in pres, imp., and fut.

354.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Helvētīi erant fortiōres reliquīs Gallīs et tōtius Galliae plūrimum poterant.* (2) *Iter per Sēquanōs erat difficilius itinere per nostram prōvinciam.* (3) *Respondit Helvētiōs esse potentiōrēs quam Belgās.* (4) *Exercitum Caesaris esse māiōrem quam Helvētiōrum putābant.* (5) *Minōrem numerum militum Helvētiīs quam Belgīs dedit.* (6) *Allobrogēs erant meliōre animō in Helvētiōs quam in populum Rōmānum.* (7) *Helvētīi armīs melius quam Belgae ūtēbantur.* (8) *Sēquanī longiōre itinere Allobrogibus revertērunt.* (9) *Sēquanī Genāvam celerius Belgīs iter facere poterunt.* (10) *Helvētīi id oppidum maiōre vi quam Belgae oppugnāverant.*

(Where possible, translate the following sentences in two ways.)

II. (1) The Swiss often thought they had narrower territories than the rest of the Gauls. (2) The Belgians will march to Geneva with better soldiers than the other Gauls. (3) Orgetorix was far richer than the other Swiss. (4) The Belgians were farther away than the Aquitanians. (5) The Swiss are nearer to the Allobroges than to the Germans. (6) The army of Orgetorix was larger than Caesar's.

355.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque,¹ quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, mūrū fossamque perdūcit. Mūrū fossamque ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, perdūcit. Milia passuum XIX mūrū² fossamque perdūcit. Mūrū in altitudinē pedum sēdecim³ fossamque perdūcit.

¹ *Militibus*: an Ablative of Means. Persons may be regarded as means when used as such by a superior.

² Not a continuous wall, but only at points where the river banks were not steep enough to form natural fortifications.

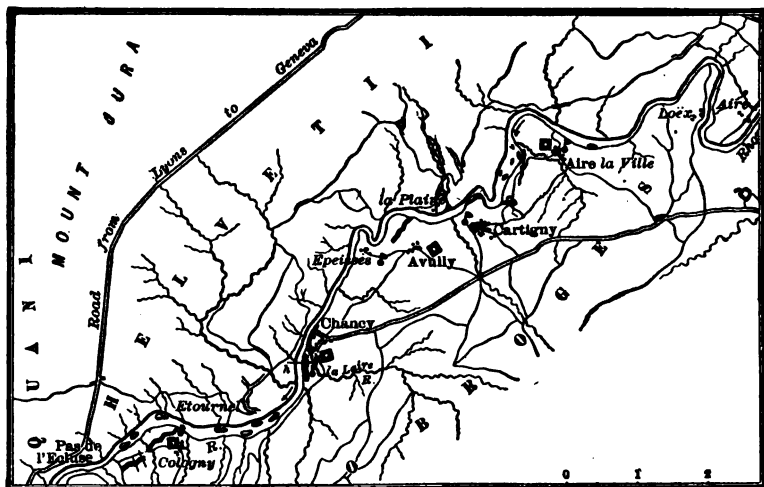
³ The combined height of the wall and depth of the ditch. Note meaning of *altitudō*.

LESSON XLVII.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

356. *Caesar constructs a long line of fortifications along the banks of the Rhone.*

Interea eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex provinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dividit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit.



THE LINE OF FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE.

357.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Lēgātōs ad eum misērunt quī haec dicerent.* — *They sent to him envoys to say this* (literally, *who should say*). (2) *Praesidia disposuit quō facilius eōs prohibēre posset.* — *He placed at intervals garrisons in order to be able to check them more easily* (literally, *by which he might the more easily check them*).

Observe: —

(1) that the subordinate clause in each of the above sentences expresses purpose and is introduced by a relative pronoun.

(2) that in sentence 1 the relative refers to a preceding antecedent and is the subject of the subordinate clause, while in sentence 2 the clause of purpose contains a comparative and the relative is in the ablative case.

358. RULES. — 1. *Relative clauses of purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun quī or a relative adverb (ubi, unde). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.*

2. *The ablative quō (=ut eō) is used as a conjunction in purpose clauses which contain a comparative.*

359.

VOCABULARY.

castellum, -ī, n., little camp, fort, redoubt.

exemplum, -ī, n., example.

opus, operis, n., work, earthwork, fortification.

praesidium, -ī, n., garrison, protection, guard.

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, reluctant.

commūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvi, -mūnītus, fortify strongly, construct.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, set at intervals, distribute.

negō, 1, say no, deny, refuse.

ostendō, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus, expose to view, show.

veniō, venīre, vēni, ventus, come.

360.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Put the reflexive pronoun in agreement with the adjective invītus and decline together, assuming the gender to be masculine.

(2) Decline praesidium and opus.

(3) Write synopses of the following verbs: commūniō in 1st plural passive; dispōnō in 2d singular active; veniō in the 3d plural active.

(4) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of ostendo.

361.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Orgetorix lēgātōs mīsit quī sociīs populī Rōmānī persuādērent. (2) Belgae flūmen trānsiērunt ut (or quī) agrōs

vāstārent. (3) Orgetorix dēlēctus est qui sibi lēgatiōnem susci-
peret. (4) Omne frūmentum incendērunt quō celerius iter face-
rent. (5) Omnem suum exercitum sēcum dūcet quō facilius sē
ēripiat. (6) Arma nōn habēbant quibus oppida oppugnārent.
(7) Caesar facillimō itinere ūsus est quō celerius ad finēs Hel-
vētiōrum pervenīret. (8) Orgetorix Helvētiīs facile persuādet ut
cum finitimīs civitatibus pācem cōfirment. (9) Armīs Helvē-
tiōrum ūsī sunt quibus oppida oppugnābant. (10) Armīs suis
ūsī sunt quibus oppida oppugnārent.

(In the sentences below, translate all subordinate clauses not containing
a comparative by both *ut* and *quī*.)

II. (1) Soldiers were sent to capture the grain of the Gauls.
(2) Envoys came to persuade the Swiss to make peace. (3) That
they might reach home more quickly, they set out by the
easiest roads. (4) The best men were chosen to plead the case.
(5) Ten thousand men were collected to rescue Orgetorix.
(6) That they might cross the river more quickly, they wished to
use the fords.

362.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit. Praesidia dispōnit¹ et
castella commūnit quō facilius prohibēre posset. Ea omnia fēcit
quō facilius, si sē² invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.
Ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit. Lēgātī ad eum
revertērunt. Ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter
per prōvinciam ūlli dare. Mōre³ et exemplō populī Rōmānī iter
per prōvinciam ūlli dare nōn potest. Ostendit sē eōs prohibi-
tūrum esse si vim facere cōnentur.

¹ Historical present. How does this affect the tense of *posset*?

² *sē invītō*: an Ablative Absolute with *being* understood; literally, *he being un-
willing*, i.e. *against his will*.

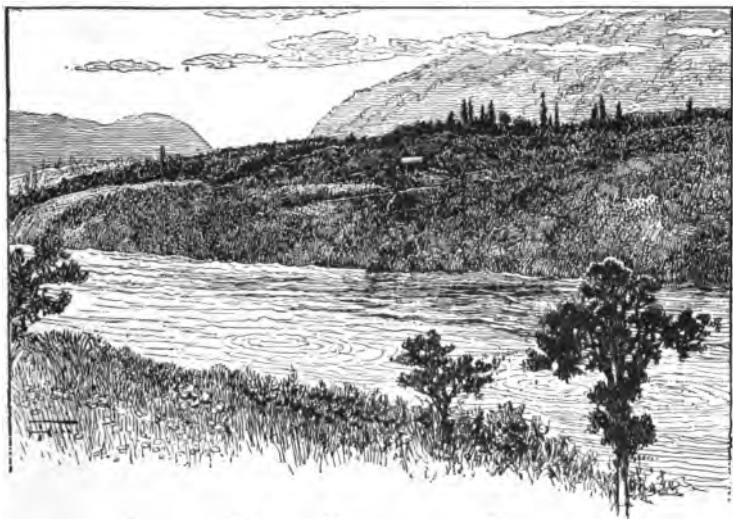
³ *Mōre et exemplō*: Ablative of Cause, sometimes called *accordance*, transl.
in accordance with, etc.

LESSON XLVIII.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

363. *Caesar distributes garrisons along the Rhone and fortifies weak points so as to resist the Swiss.*

Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.



SOME OF THE NINETEEN MILES NEEDING NO FORTIFICATIONS.

364.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Alterum iter erat multō facilius. — *The second road was much easier (literally, easier by much).* (2) Hōc iter est decem milibus passuum longius quam illud. — *This road is ten miles longer than that (literally, longer by ten miles).*

Observe:—

That the ablatives **multō** and **mīlibus** express the degree of difference between the objects compared.

365. RULE. — *Degree of difference is denoted by the ablative with comparatives and words implying comparison.*

366.

VOCABULARY.

cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt*.

concurſus, -ūs, m., *a running together, rally, assemblage*.

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., *fortification*.

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship*.

ratis, ratis, f., *raft*.

complūrēs, -ium, plu., *several, very many*. For dec. see § 329.

interdiū, adv., *during the day, by day*.

noctū, adv., *at night*.

numquam, *never*; **nōn numquam**, *sometimes*.

dēiciō, dēicere, dēīcī, dēiectus, *throw or cast down*; **spē dēiectus**, *disappointed in a hope*.

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —, *desist from, stop, cease*.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus, *join*.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through, force a passage*.

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel*.

367.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline **concurſus**, **mūnitiō**, and the combination **complūrēs nāvēs**.
- (2) Write a synopsis of **dēiciō** in the 2d singular active and **iungō** in the 2d plural passive.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **repellō**.

368.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

- I. (1) Rhēnus erat multīs mīlibus passuum longior Rhodanō.
- (2) Helvētiī multō celerius quam Belgae contendērunt. (3) Nostri militēs iter decem mīlibus passuum longius quam Belgae fecērunt. (4) Hī montēs nōn minus tribus mīlibus passuum ā nostris oppidis aberant. (5) Hōc iter est multō facilius ut domō proficīscī possint. (6) Sociīs repulsīs, Helvētiī cōnātū iam dēstitērunt. (7) Caesar tum cōstituit sē Genāvam faciōre itinere profectūrum esse. (8) In Galliā viae (roads) multīs pedibus angustiorēs sunt quam in prōvinciā. (9) Nostrae nāvēs erant multō celeriorēs nāvibus Gallōrum.

- II. (1) We shall attack Noreia much more eagerly than Geneva.
 (2) The Swiss were much braver than the rest of the Gauls.
 (3) The mountains are much higher in Gaul than in the province.
 (4) The road through the mountains was much longer than (that) through the fields. (5) Our weapons were two feet longer than (those) of the Gauls. (6) The mountains are less than ten miles away from the river.

369.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Helvētīī eā spē dēiectī sunt. Helvētīī, eā spē dēiectī,¹ nāvēs iūnxērunt et complūrēs ratēs fēcērunt. Aliī,² nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, cōnātī sunt³ sī perrumpere possent. Aliī² vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, cōnātī sunt³ sī perrumpere possent. Nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī³ sunt. Sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī sunt. Operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī,¹ hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

¹ Note that this form is a perfect passive participle.

² Alii . . . alii: some . . . others. The first alii is understood in the text in § 370.

³ Supply "to see" after cōnātī sunt.

LESSON XLIX.

CUM CAUSAL AND CUM CONCESSIVE.

370. *The Swiss attempt to cross the Rhone by using boats, constructing rafts, and by wading.*

Helvētīī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. [Cap. VIII. Fīnis.]



A FORDING PLACE OVER THE RHONE.

371.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cum Helvētiī virtūte omnibus praeſtarent, tōtius Galliae potiri volēbant. — *Since the Swiss excelled all in bravery, they wished to get control of the whole of Gaul.* (2) His cum persuādere non possent, lēgātōs mīserunt. — *Since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.* (3) Cum fortissimē resisterent, tamen repulsī sunt. — *Although they resisted most bravely, yet they were repulsed.*

Observe: —

That **cum** meaning *since* or *although* is followed by the subjunctive. Such clauses are called causal or concessive according as **cum** means *since* or *although*.

372. RULE. — *A cum clause expressing cause or concession has its verb in the subjunctive.*

373.

VOCABULARY.

angustiae , -ārum, f. plu., <i>narrows, narrow pass, straits.</i>	sponte , f., abl. of a defective noun, <i>of one's own accord, willingly.</i>
dēprecātor , dēprecātōris, m., <i>intercessor.</i>	via , -ae, f., <i>way, route, road.</i>
grātia , -ae, f., <i>favor, goodwill, influence.</i>	cum , conj., <i>when, while, since, although.</i>
largitiō , largitiōnis, f., <i>lavish giving, bribery.</i>	propter , prep. governing acc., <i>on account of.</i>

impetrō, 1, *obtain one's wish.*

relinquō, -linquere, -liquit, -lictus, *leave behind, abandon.*

374.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline *gratia* in singular and *angustiae* in plural.
- (2) Write a synopsis of *impetrō* in 1st plural active and *relinquō* in 1st plural passive.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of *repellō*.

375.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Cum oppida nōn caperet, tamen Caesar agrōs vāstābat. (2) Helvētīi, cum frūmentum sēcum nōn portāre possent, id incēderunt. (3) Cum oppidum māgnā vī oppugnārent, Helvētīi tamen nōn cēpērunt. (4) Caesar, cum quā māximīs itineribus Genāvam contendat, celerius Helvētīis perveniet. (5) Cum optimīs cōsiliis ūterentur, tamen spē dēiectī sunt. (6) Cum propter angustias hāc viā ire nōn posset, flūmen trānsire mātūrāvit. (7) Cum Orgetorix omnēs suōs clientēs ad iūdicium coēgisset, sē ēripuit. (8) Cum omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparātae essent, diem dixerunt. (9) Cum Helvētīi inimicō animō sint, Caesar eōs per prōvinciam ire nōn patitur. (10) Cum illī repulsi essent, tamen multōs annōs resistēbant.

(Translate the subordinate clauses of the following first three sentences by the ablative absolute as well as by *cum* causal or concessive.)

II. (1) Though their fields were laid waste, the Sequanians did not resist. (2) Since the day of their departure had been appointed, they collected troops. (3) Though their army had been

defeated, they resisted very bravely three months. (4) They tried to march through our province, since the road was much better. (5) Since the Swiss carried with them a large quantity of grain, they could not march very quickly.

376.**DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustīās per Sēquanōs Ire nōn poterant. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustīās Ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt. Lēgātōs misērunt ut, eō dēprēcātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat, Dumnorīx erat amicus Helvētiīs.

SIXTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column and number with meanings the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: military, advent, malefactor, memorial, legionary, altitude, opera, itinerary, naval, pedal, principal, voluntary, faculty, injury, spacious, castle, munition, concourse, (sub)jugate, adding to this list the Latin nouns meaning: garrison, raft, missile.

II. List in a column and number the Latin adjectives meaning: good, great, bad, old, little, outward, below, following, above, much. Combine in G. N. C. agreement the comparative of each of these adjectives with the correspondingly numbered noun in I. Then decline these combinations consecutively, starting with the first.

III. Combine with the next ten nouns in I the superlative of each of the adjectives, the first adjective with the eleventh noun, the second adjective with the twelfth noun, etc. Then decline these combinations consecutively, starting with the first. While writing out such exercises, the student should prepare himself to give orally the meaning of each combination in its declined form.

IV. Combine in G. N. C. agreement and decline together in the plural the perfect passive participle of *iungō* and the Latin word for *raft*; in the singular only the present participle of *repellō* and the Latin word for *missile*.

V. List in a column and number with meanings and principal parts the Latin verbs from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: refer, dejection, tenant, mission, imperative, response, (as)sume, volition, concession, temperance, repel, license, junction, intercession, revert, repellent, dispose, ostentation, mature, desist, (e)nunciate, adding to this list the Latin verbs meaning: arrive, come, kill.

VI. Write consecutive synopses as directed in the last review lesson of the first ten verbs of the list just formed in the third singular active and in the second plural passive, indicating by blanks defective forms.

VII. Tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles of the last ten¹ verbs of the list, giving the present active infinitive of the fifteenth verb, the perfect active infinitive of the sixteenth, etc., ending with the gerundive or future passive participle of the twenty-fourth.²

VIII. List the Latin adverbs formed from the following adjectives and compare them: *celer*, *cupidus*, *nōbilis*, *bonus*, *facilis*, *malus*, *māgnus*, *multus*, *parvus*, *propior*.

IX. Decline in full in the positive the following adjectives of the Third Declension: *potēns*, *facilis*, *celer*.

X. Review the text at the head of Lessons XLIII-XLIX, pointing out all examples of the above rules occurring in these chapters.

XI. Translate into Latin the following phrases: after the return, under the mountain, without arms.

¹ The student will hardly need to be reminded that there are six infinitives (three active and three passive) and four participles, making ten in all, just enough to allow each verb one form.

² A model of this scheme will be found in the App., § 30. Note that this drill may be profitably extended by starting with other verbs than the one suggested.

LESSON L.

THE VERB *FERŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

377. *The Swiss seek the consent of the Sequani, to use the narrow Pas de l'Ecluse.*

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustīās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat.



THE NARROW PASS THROUGH THE SEQUANI.

378. Memorize the conjugation of the irregular verb *ferō* in the App., § 29.

379. The following compounds of *ferō* should be noted: —

PREFIX.	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	PERF. PART.	MEANING.
<i>ab, from</i>	<i>auferō</i>	<i>abstuli</i>	<i>ablātus</i>	<i>bear from, remove.</i>
<i>ad, to</i>	<i>afferō</i>	<i>attuli</i>	<i>allātus</i>	<i>bear up to, convey.</i>
<i>con (cum), with</i>	<i>cōnferō</i>	<i>contuli</i>	<i>collātus</i>	<i>bring together, collect.</i>
<i>dis, apart</i>	<i>differō</i>	<i>distuli</i>	<i>dilātus</i>	<i>bear apart, differ.</i>
<i>ē (ex), out of</i>	<i>effērō</i>	<i>extuli</i>	<i>ēlātus</i>	<i>bear or carry out.</i>
<i>in, in or upon</i>	<i>īnferō</i>	<i>intuli</i>	<i>illātus</i>	<i>bear upon or against, inflict.</i>
<i>ob, towards</i>	<i>offerō</i>	<i>obtuli</i>	<i>oblātus</i>	<i>bear towards, offer, present.</i>
<i>re, back</i>	<i>referō</i>	<i>{ rettuli retuli</i>	<i>relātus</i>	<i>bear back, bring back.</i>
<i>sub, under</i>	<i>{ sufferō tollō</i>	<i>{ sustuli sustuli</i>	<i>{ sublātus sublātus</i>	<i>bear from beneath, sustain, endure. lift up, remove.</i>

Observe: —

The phonetic changes in prefixes compounded with *ferō* and note how the prepositions when used as prefixes add to the verb much the same significance as they show when construed with cases.

As the present infinitives undergo no phonetic changes not indicated in the present indicative, they are not given in the above table.

380.

VOCABULARY.

beneficium, -i, n., *service, kindness.*
obses, *obsidis*, m. or f., *hostage*
 (usually child of a prince).
novae rēs, *new things*, i.e. *a revolution.*

novus, -a, -um, *new* (no comparative); sup. *novissimus*, *last.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, *bind, put under obligation.*

381.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline *beneficium* and *obses*.
- (2) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of *tollō*.
- (3) Write synopses of *afferō* in the 3d singular active; *cōnferō* in the 3d plural passive.

382.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Fert, fertur, fers, ferris. (2) Adferet, adferetur; efferemus, efferemur. (3) Inferēbat, inferēbatur; referēbātis, referēbāminī. (4) Distulisti, dilāti estis; contuleris; collāti eritis. (5) Rettuleris; contulērunt; sustulerint; tollēbant. (6) Oppidis captis, omnis spēs sublāta est. (7) Helvētiī māgnam cōpiam frūmentī domō extulērunt. (8) Helvētiī frūmentum in oppida contulērunt ut eō in itinere ūterentur. (9) Montibus undique continēbāmur ut bellum aegerrimē gererēmus. (10) Helvētiī frūmentum sēcum extulērunt ut omnem spem domum reditiōnis tollerent.

II. (1) You collect; you remove; they carried out. (2) We shall be borne back; we offered; they were sustaining. (3) They will be taken away; you will have collected; we shall be carried out. (4) They carried their arms out with them. (5) They brought back with them the grain which they did not use.

383.**DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.**

Adductus cupiditāte rēgnī, novīs rēbus studēbat. Quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō obstrictās habēre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat. Ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per suōs finēs Helvētiōs Ire patiantur. Perficit ut inter sē obsidēs dent. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētiī obsidēs dant ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā transeant.

LESSON LI.**DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.****384.** *The Sequani grant the Swiss the right of way.*

Et, cupiditāte rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs

Ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquānī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant. [Cap. IX. Finis.]

385.

MODEL SENTENCES.

- (1) { (a) Helvētiī arma habent. — *The Swiss have arms.*
 (b) Helvētiīs sunt arma. — *To the Swiss are arms, or The Swiss have arms.*
- (2) { (a) Helvētiī habēbant in animo } iter facere. — *The Swiss*
 (b) Helvētiīs in animō erat } *had (it) in mind to march.*

Observe: —

(1) that in group 1 the idea of possession may be expressed in two ways: (a) with the verb **habeō** and the possessors in the nominative, (b) with the verb **sunt** and the possessors in the dative.

(2) that in group 2 the same variety of expression is possible: Swiss as nominative with **habeō** or as dative with **sunt**.

Compare the English sentence, "There are two chimneys to that house."

386. RULE. — *The dative of possessor is used with the verb sunt, the thing possessed being put in the nominative.*

387.

VOCABULARY.

Santonēs, -um, m. plu. (Santonī, -ōrum), a Celtic tribe north of the Garonne.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a Celtic tribe south of the Garonne.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to grain, fertile*.

inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*; as

substantive, inimicus, -ī, m., *enemy*.

patēns, pres. participle of pateō, used as adj., *lying open, exposed*.

intelligō, intelligere, intelligēxi, intelligētus, *know, understand, be aware*.

renūntiō, 1, *report*.

388.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline together *patēns locus*. What gender in the plural?
 (2) Write synopses of *intellegō* in 3d plural active and *renūntiō* in the 3d plural passive neuter.

389.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Helvētiī multōs vicōs habēbant.* (2) *Helvētiīs multī vicī erant.* (3) *Māgnus exercitus erat Caesarī, māior Helvētiīs.* (4) *Belgīs erant māiōra oppida quam Helvētiīs.* (5) *Dixerunt sibi esse in animō oppida Belgārum oppugnāre.* (6) *Belgīs erant longa tēla, quibus bene ūtēbantur.* (7) *Helvētiīs sunt carrī et iūmenta, quae undique coēmērunt.* (8) *Eīs erat māgna frūmentī cōpia.* (9) *Helvētiī arbitrantur sibi esse angustōs finēs.* (10) *Eīs armīs, quae sibi sunt, nōn ūtentur.*

(Translate each sentence below in two ways.)

II. (1) The Sequani have large and fertile fields. (2) The weapons which they have are long. (3) The Swiss said they had no other road. (4) When Caesar comes¹ to Geneva, he will have two legions. (5) The Swiss have a larger army than the Santones.

390.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Illud Caesarī renūntiātur: Helvētiī habent in animō iter facere. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō iter facere. Helvētiīs est in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere. Santonēs² nōn longē ā finibus Tolōsātium² absunt. Civitās Tolōsātium est in prōvinciā. Santonēs nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Sī id fieret (if this should happen), intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum esse. Intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs finitimōs habēret. Loca finitima erant patentia, mākīmēque frūmentāria. Caesar nōlēbat

¹ What tense?

² Locate on the large map opposite page 50.

habere hominēs bellicōsōs, inimicōs populī Rōmānī, finitimōs locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs.

LESSON LII.

COMPOUNDS WITH *SUM*. — DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

391. *The Swiss intend to march into the lands of the Santones, a tribe near the Roman province.*

Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret.

392. The following compounds of the verb *sum* should be noted. All these verbs except *possum* are followed by the dative (§ 394).

absum, be away, be absent.

adsum, be at hand, be present, assist.

dēsum, be lacking, be missing.

possum, be able.

praesum, be at the head of, be in command, or in charge of.

supersum, be over, survive.

393.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Bellum finitimīs inferunt.* — *They make war upon their neighbors.* (2) *Labiēnus mūnitiōnī praeest.* — *Labiēnus is in command of the fortification.*

Observe:—

(1) that each of the compound verbs in the above sentences governs the dative case.

(2) that the transitive verb *inferunt* in the first sentence is followed by the accusative *bellum* as the direct object of the verb and the dative *finitimīs* with the preposition *in* of the compound.

(3) that the intransitive verb *praeest* is followed by the dative alone with the preposition *prae* of the compound.

394. RULE. — *The dative is used with many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and some with circum.*

395.**VOCABULARY.**

Alpēs, -ium, f. plu., <i>the Alps.</i>	Italia, -ae, f., <i>Italy.</i>
Aquilēia, -ae, f., Roman military station on the Adriatic sea.	hībernus, -a, -um, <i>winter (as adj.).</i>
hīberna, -ōrum, n. plu., <i>winter quarters, with castra, camp, understood.</i>	quīnque, num. adj., <i>five.</i>
cōnscrībō, -scrībēre, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, <i>write up, enroll, enlist.</i>	ibi, adv., <i>there, in that place.</i>
ēdūcō, ēdūcēre, ēdūxī, ēductus, <i>lead forth.</i>	circum, prep. governing acc., <i>around.</i>
hiemō, 1, <i>pass the winter, winter.</i>	
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>put at the head of or in command of.</i>	

396.**WRITTEN WORK.**

- (1) Decline hīberna and ea mūnitiō.
- (2) Write synopses of contendō in the 2d singular active and praeficiō in the 2d plural passive.
- (3) Compare, with meanings, māgnus, proximus, ulterior.

397.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Helvētiī suīs sociīs nōn aderunt. (2) Tria milia Belgārum eī proeliō superfuērunt. (3) Germānī suīs finitimīs bellum inferre volēbant. (4) Enūntiāvit Helvētiōs omnibus virtūte praestāre. (5) Duo lēgātī hībernīs praefectī sunt. (6) Caesar trēs lēgātōs mīsit, quī eīs hībernīs praessent. (7) Caesar inimicōs¹ populī Rōmānī hīs locīs finitimōs² habēre nōlēbat. (8) Cum Helvētiīs essent māgnae cōpiae, tamen nostrīs sociīs parvus exercitus aderat.

II. (1) On that day Caesar marched five miles in all, that he might aid his allies. (2) Caesar put his best lieutenant in command of the winter quarters. (3) The Germans very often waged war on the Belgians. (4) They passed the winter with the Aeduans, who were in charge of the winter quarters.

¹ Used as a noun. What case would follow if used as an adjective?

² Used as an adjective. What case would follow if used as a noun?

398.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ob eas causas praeficit Titum Labienum legatum ei munitioni, quam fecerat. Caesar ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit. Ibi duas legiones conscribit. Tres legiones, quae circum Aquiliam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit. Cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat.

LESSON LIII.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

399. *Leaving Labienus in command of the fortifications, Caesar returns to northern Italy, where he enlists two legions of raw recruits, making his total force twenty thousand men.*



ROMAN LEGATUS AND
AIDES.

Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit et tres, quae circum Aquiliam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit.

400. The gerundive is a verbal adjective of the First and Second Declension, always agreeing in G. N. C. with a noun or pronoun, as *urbis capiendae spes*, the hope of taking the city (of the city to-be-taken). The gerund is a verbal noun, never agreeing with but sometimes governing another noun or pronoun, as *urbem capiendi spes*, the hope of taking the city. The gerund occurs in only four cases, the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative. The nominative is regularly supplied by the infinitive used as subject.

PARADIGMS OF GERUNDS.

<i>Gen.</i> liberandī, <i>of freeing</i>	movendī	dividendī	capiendī
<i>Dat.</i> liberandō, <i>to or for freeing</i>	movendō	dividendō	capiendō
<i>Acc.</i> liberandum, — <i>freeing</i>	movendum	dividendum	capiendum
<i>Abl.</i> liberandō, <i>by freeing</i>	movendō	dividendō	capiendō

The gerunds of *impediō* and of all verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are formed exactly like those of *capiō*.

Observe: —

That the gerunds are the same in form as the corresponding cases of the neuter gerundive, otherwise known as the future passive participle, the forms of which in § 251 should now be reviewed.

401.

MODEL SENTENCES.

Nominative. Dicere nōn est facere. — Literally, *To say is not to do. Saying is not doing* (Infinitive instead of gerund as subject).

Genitive. (1) Spem urbis capiendae habemus. — *We have hope of taking the city* (Gerundive). (2) Spem urbem capiendī habemus. — *We have hope of taking the city* (Gerund).

Dative. (1) Hibernīs oppugnandīs diem dixerunt. — *They named a day for attacking the winter quarters* (Gerundive). (2) Pugnandō locum dēlēgerat. — *He had selected a place for fighting* (Gerund).

Accusative. (1) Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium est satis. — *Two years are enough for completing those plans* (Gerundive). (2) Ea ad proficiscendum pertinent. — *These things pertain to starting out* (Gerund).

Ablative. (1) In pāce petendā haec dixerunt. — *In seeking peace they said this* (Gerundive). (2) Multās rēs pollicendō Helvētiīs persuādet. — *He persuades the Swiss by promising many things* (Gerund).

Observe:—

(1) that in these sentences the gerundives agree in G. N. C. with the nouns in the construction, while the gerunds are nouns themselves and in their verbal nature may govern other nouns. The nouns with which the gerundives agree take the case required by their relation to the rest of the sentence, while with gerunds the verbals themselves take the required case.

(2) that when the verb is transitive and has a direct object, the gerundive construction is to be preferred.

SUMMARY.

GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
Verbal Noun	Verbal Adjective
Active Voice	Passive Voice
May have object	Cannot have object
Four cases	All cases
Singular number	Both numbers
Neuter gender	All genders ¹

402.

VOCABULARY.

Caturigēs, -um, m. plu.	} Alpine tribes.	citerior, -ius, <i>hither, on this side.</i>
Centronēs, -um, m. plu.		septimus, -a, -um, ordinal, (ordinal number) <i>seventh.</i>
Graiocellī, -ōrum, m. plu.		superus, -a, -um, <i>above, upper.</i>
Segūsiāvī, -ōrum, m. plu., a tribe south of the Aedui.		inde, adv., <i>thence</i> (both time and place).
Vocontīl, -ōrum, m. plu., a tribe south of the Allobroges.		extrā, prep. governing acc., <i>outside of, beyond.</i>
Ocelum, -i, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.		

capīō, 3, *take*; cōnsilium capere, *to form a plan.*

petō, petere, petivī (petī), petītus, *ask, seek.*

403.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Compare: **citerior**, **extrēmus**, **primus**, **superus**.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds of **oppugnō**, **prohibeō**, **petō**, **faciō**, **impediō**, and also the participles and infinitives of **cōnor**.

¹ How many possible forms will a gerundive have?

404.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Helvētīi finem oppidum oppugnandī fecērunt.* (2) *Helvētīi, bellandī cupidī, magnō dolōre afficiēbantur.* (3) *Orgetorix erat cupidissimus rēgni occupandī.* (4) *Ad omnia pericula subeunda parātissimī erant.* (5) *Lēgātī ad Caesarem missī sunt pācis petendae causā.*¹ (6) *Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs inferendō cōnsilia capiēbant.* (7) *Caesar complūrēs diēs ad dēliberandum sūmpsit.*

II. (1) Crossing this river was very difficult. (2) Caesar formed the plan of setting out. (3) The Swiss were very desirous of waging war on their neighbors. (4) In attacking the city hope was given to our soldiers. (5) The Swiss were ready for (ad) setting out.

405.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ibi, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere nostrum exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hī complūribus proeliīs pulsī sunt. Hīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae pervenit. Oculum est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppidum. In finēs Vocontiōrum diē septimō pervenit. Inde in finēs Allobrogum exercitum dūcit. Inde in finēs Segusiāvōrum exercitum dūcit. Hī Segusiāvī sunt extrā prōvinciam Rōmānam, primī trāns Rhodanum.

LESSON LIV.

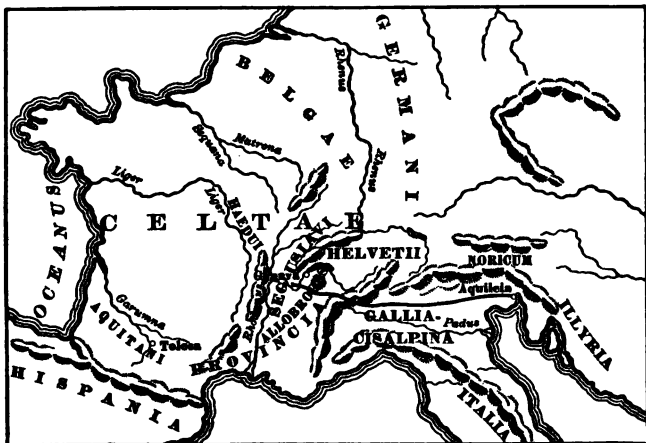
FORMATION AND USES OF SUPINES.—WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE.

406. *Crushing the opposition of the Alpine tribes, Caesar rushes to the scene of the impending war.*

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum,

¹ *causā, for the sake of.* This word is frequently used with the genitive.

in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī. [Cap. X. Finis.]



CAESAR'S ROUTE ACROSS THE ALPS.

407. The supine is a verbal noun of the Fourth Declension, having only two cases, the accusative in *um* and the ablative in *ū*. These are formed by adding *-um* and *-ū* to the participial stem.

PARADIGM OF SUPINES.

Acc.	liberātum	mōtum	divisum	captum	impeditum
	<i>to liberate</i>	<i>to move</i>	<i>to divide</i>	<i>to take</i>	<i>to impede</i>
Abl.	liberātū	mōtū	dīvisū	captū	impeditū
	<i>in liberating</i>	<i>in moving</i>	<i>in dividing</i>	<i>in taking</i>	<i>in impeding</i>

408.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Lēgātōs ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum mittunt. — *They send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help.* (2) Perfacile factū est cōnāta perficere. — *To accomplish their attempts is very easy to do (literally, in the doing).* (3) Helvētiī omnēs virtūte praece-dunt. — *The Swiss excel all in bravery.*

Observe : —

(1) that **rogātum**, the accusative of the supine, expresses purpose and is used with **mittunt**, a verb of motion.

(2) that **factū**, the ablative of the supine, states in what respect the accomplishment is easy, just as **virtūte** in sentence 3 states in what respect the Swiss excel all.

409. RULES. — 1. *The accusative of the supine is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.*

2. *The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives to denote specification.*

410. Six ways of expressing purpose have already been noted in our study of Latin as follows : —

Lēgātōs mittet	(1) ut auxilium rogent.
	(2) quī auxilium rogent.
	(3) auxilium rogandī causā.
	(4) auxiliī rogandī causā.
	(5) ad auxilium rogandum.
	(6) auxilium rogātum.

All six expressions may be translated : *he will send ambassadors to ask for help, or for the purpose of asking for help.*

Note that the gerund with an object, a rather infrequent construction, occurs only in (3).

411.

VOCABULARY.

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help* (plu. *auxiliary troops*).
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus, *ward off, defend*.
populor, populārī, populātus sum, *ravage, raid*.
trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead across*.

412.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **auxilium**.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the supines of **dēfendō**, **ferō**, **faciō**, **prohibeō**, **trādūcō**, and also the infinitives and participles of **populor** and **dēfendō**.

413.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Caesar misit decem milia militum oppidum oppugnatum. (2) Hoc est facilius dictum quam factum. (3) Exercitus venit agris Belgarum vastatum. (4) Caesar putabat id optimum esse factum. (5) Helvetii Orgetorigem miserunt has res confectum. (6) Potentissimos et firmissimos Gallorum conciliavit ut regnum occuparet. (7) Aedu, cum Helvetii agris popularentur, ad Caesarem legatos miserunt. (8) Helvetii suas copias flumen traduxerunt agris Aeduorum populandi causa. (9) Caesar cum quinque legionibus ire contendit ad socios defendendos. (10) Caesar duas legiones conscripsit quibus socios defenderet.

(In the following sentences translate the expressions of purpose in as many ways as possible.)

II. (1) Orgetorix came to accomplish these things. (2) Ambassadors were sent to see Caesar. (3) Caesar sent Labienus to defend the town. (4) Caesar thought the best (thing) to do was to lead his soldiers across the river. (5) Caesar did not give the Swiss an opportunity of attacking this town.

414.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Dum Caesar erat in Italia, Helvetii iam per angustias et per fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant. Helvetii iam in Aeduorum fines pervenerant et eorum agris populabantur. Aedu, cum se suaque (se et suas res) ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium.

SEVENTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column with meanings and number the Latin nouns from which the following English words are wholly or partly derived: via(duct), benefit, gracious, auxiliary, itinerary, diary, military, hostile, adding to the list the Latin words for hostage, narrow-pass, and voluntarily.

II. Decline consecutively the first ten of the above nouns, starting with the first and putting **prior** in G. N. C. agreement with each singular form and **primus** with each plural form.

III. List in a column and compare when possible the Latin adjectives meaning: farther, fertile, former, hither, nearer, new, seventh, wintry.

IV. List in a column and number with principal parts and meanings the Latin verbs from which the following words are wholly or partly derived: relinquish, studious, renunciation, intelligence, prefect, traduce, educe, petition, defend, adding to the list the verb meaning to obtain one's request.

V. Write consecutive synopses in the 1st plural active of these ten verbs.

VI. Tabulate consecutively with meanings as in the last review lesson the infinitives and participles of these ten verbs, noting that some of these verbs are defective in certain infinitive and participial forms. Write with meanings the gerunds of the first verb and the supines of the fourth.

VII. Review the rules of syntax for Dative of Possessor, Dative with Compounds, and illustrate each with an original Latin sentence properly translated.

VIII. Review the text at the head of Lessons L–LIV inclusive, pointing out in these chapters all examples of the rules mentioned above.

LESSON LV.

CONJUGATION OF THE VERB *FĪŌ*.—COMPOUNDS OF *FACIŌ*.

415. *During Caesar's absence, the Swiss fall upon the fields of the Aeduians, who send urgent appeals to him for help.*

Helvētīī iam per angustīās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs

populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium.



GRAIN FIELDS ALONG THE ROUTE OF THE SWISS MARCH.

416. The verb **fiō** is used as an intransitive verb (*to become* or *happen*) and also as the passive voice of **faciō**. In its latter use it may be translated passively (*to be made, be done*) even when active in form. Observe that the *i* in **fiō** is long though it occurs before another vowel. This peculiarity is found in all forms of **fiō** unless the vowel is followed by *-er*, as in the present infinitive **feri**. Memorize the conjugation of **fiō** in the App., § 28.

417. The following compounds of **faciō** should be noted:—

afficiō (*do to*), *affect, afflict*, Perf. Pass. Par., **affectus**.

cōficiō (*make together*), *accomplish, complete*, P. P. P. **cōfectus**.

interficiō (*make between*), *kill, put to death*, P. P. P. **interfectus**.

perficiō (*do thoroughly*), *accomplish*, P. P. P. **perfectus**.

præficiō (*make before*), *put at head of*, P. P. P. **præfectus**.

commonefaciō (*cum-mone-*), *remind*, P. P. P. **commonefactus**.

patefaciō (*pateō, lie open*), *open, disclose*, P. P. P. **patefactus**.

satisfaciō (*satis, enough*), *satisfy, apologize, make restitution to* (with dative), P. P. P. **satisfactus**.

Observe: —

That when **faciō** is compounded with a preposition, as in the first five examples, the **-a** of the stem is modified to **-i**, producing **-ficiō**. (Compare **incipiō**, **recipiō**.) Compounds of **faciō** with verbs or adverbs, as in the last three examples, do not modify **-a** of the stem and use **fiō** in the passive, as **patefaciō**, passive **patefiō**.

Compounds of **faciō** with prepositions do not use **fiō** in forming their passive voice, but follow the model of **io** verbs of the Third Conjugation as **afficiō**, passive **afficior**.

418.

VOCABULARY.

Ambarri, -ōrum, m., plu., a Celtic tribe, a branch of the Aedui.

cōspectus, -ūs, m., *view, sight*.

hostis, *hostis*, m. or f., *stranger, foreigner, enemy*.

liberī, -ōrum, m., plu., *children*.

servitūs, *servitūtis*, f., *slavery*.

cōsanguineus, -a, -um, *of the same blood, kindred*.

necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary, urgent* (used substantively, *relative, friend*).

ita, adv., *so*.

paene, adv., *almost*.

abdūcō, 3, *lead away, lead back*.

dēbeō, *dēbere*, *dēbui*, *dēbitus*, *owe to, ought to, be obliged to*.

dēpolor, 1, *ravage, lay waste*; P. P. P., *dēpolutus*, transl. passively.

expūgnō, 1, *take by storm, capture*.

mereor, *merēri*, *meritus sum*, *deserve, merit*.

419.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline **cōspectus** and **hostis**.
- (2) Write synopses of **cōficiō** in the 3d plural passive and **patefaciō** in the 1st plural passive.
- (3) Tabulate the infinitives and participles of **dēbeō** with meanings.

420.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

- I. (1) **Facis**, **fis**, **faciēs**, **fiēs**, **faciunt**, **fiunt**. (2) **Fēcērunt**, **facti sunt**; **cōficiet**, **cōficiētur**; **satisfaciunt**, **satisfiunt**.
- (3) **Interficiētis**, **interficiēmini**; **commonefaciēs**, **commonefiēs**.
- (4) **Praeficiēbātis**, **praeficiēbāmini**; **faciēbāmus**, **fiēbāmus**.
- (5) **Nōbilissimōs** **lēgātōs** **Caesar mittit quō facilius eam rem per-**

ficiat. (6) Hostēs, cum oppidum cēpissent, obsidēs interfēcērunt. (7) Duo lēgātī hīs mūnitiōnibus praefectī sunt. (8) Caesarem certiōrem faciunt; Caesar certior fit.

II. (1) They become, they will become, you were becoming, they had become. (2) We accomplish; you will complete; they will be killed. (3) The lieutenants, whom Caesar put in charge of the fortification, were killed in that battle. (4) The Swiss were afflicted with great distress. (5) The Aedui said that their children had been led away by the Swiss.

421.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hi lēgātī haec dīxērunt: "Ita omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs Rōmānī nostrī agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint."¹ Dīxērunt ita sē dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī nōn dēbuerint,¹ ut oppida eōrum expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.¹ Ambarri erant necessariī et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum. Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt dē suis iniuriis. Ambarri haec² dīxērunt: "Agrīs dēpopulātis, vim hostium ab oppidis nōn facile prohibēmus." Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, agrīs dēpopulātis, ab oppidis³ vim hostium nōn facile prohibēre.



ONE OF THE AUXILIA.

¹ Dēbuerint is perfect subjunctive in a result clause after a past time tense. Transl. vāstārī nōn dēbuerint, *ought not to have been laid waste*.

² Haec, ea, and similar words when used in the neuter plural relate to a statement which is to follow and may be translated *as follows*.

³ Note how oppidis is strongly emphasized by placing it before vim hostium. The Romans indicated emphasis by the order of the words instead of depending upon vocal stress as we do in English.

LESSON LVI.

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — DATIVE OF AGENT.

422. *The Aeduans feel that their past services to the Romans entitle them to protection from the ravages of the Swiss barbarians.*

Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessārii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiorē faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre.

423. Just as the perfect passive participle is compounded with **sum** to form the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses, so the future active and future passive participles are compounded with **sum** to form what are known as the periphrastic conjugations.

The *First* or *Active Periphrastic* conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the various tenses of the verb **sum**; as, **liberātūrus sum**, *I am about to, intend to, or am going to liberate*. From these meanings it will be seen that the *Active Periphrastic* is future in sense and expresses expectation or intention.

The *Second* or *Passive Periphrastic* conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive, or future passive participle, with the various tenses of the verb **sum**; as, **liberandus sum**, *I am to be, must be, ought to be liberated*. From these meanings it will be seen that the *Passive Periphrastic* expresses necessity, obligation, or propriety.

In these combinations the tenses of the verb **sum** have their usual force. Note, however: **liberandus fui**, *I was to be or had to be freed*; **liberandus fueram**, *I had had to be freed*; **liberandus fuerō**, *I shall have had to be freed*.

424.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Omnia Caesarī faciēda erant. — *Everything had to be done by Caesar or Caesar had to do everything.* (2) Mōns Labiēnō capiendus est. — *The mountain is to be seized by Labienus or Labienus must seize the mountain.*

Observe: —

That in each of the above sentences the person who must or ought to perform the act is put in the dative. This dative is called the Dative of Agent.

425. RULE. — *Agency with the gerundive is expressed by the dative.*

426.

VOCABULARY.

fortūna, -ae, f., <i>fortune, luck</i> ; for-	possessio, -ōnis, f., <i>possession, occupation.</i>
tūnae, -ārum, f., <i>possessions.</i>	
nihil, n., (an indeclinable noun), <i>nothing.</i>	solum, -ī, n., <i>soil, ground.</i>

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus, *take together, use up, consume.*

dēmōnstrō, 1, *point out, explain.*

exspectō, 1, *look out, watch, wait, expect.*

statuō, statuere, statui, statutus, *resolve, determine.*

427.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write synopses with meanings of statuō in the Active Periphrastic, 3d singular, and cōnsūmō in the Passive Periphrastic, 3d plural.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the participles of dēmōnstrō and the infinitives of exspectō.

428.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Orgetorix rēgna suō exercitū conciliātūrus erat. (2) Caesar decem diēs ad dēliberandum sūmptūrus erit. (3)¹ Praesidia Caesarī dispōnenda fuērunt quō facilius hostēs prohibēre posset. (4)¹ Liberī Aeduōrum Helvētiīs in servitūtem nōn abdūcendī erant. (5) Facultātem itineris faciundī per prōvinciam Caesar

¹ Translate both passively and actively.

nōn datūrus erat. (6)¹ Oppida sociōrum Caesarī dēfendenda sunt. (7) Caesar nōn putābat hominēs inimicō animō ab iniuriā temperātūrōs esse. (8)¹ Duae legiōnēs Labiēnō mittendae erunt mūnitiōnem oppugnātum.

II. (1) Caesar does not intend to await the arrival of Labienus. (2)² Caesar ought not to await the arrival of Labienus. (3) The Swiss are going to attempt to march through our province. (4)² The Aedui had had to send ambassadors to Caesar to ask help. (5) All the possessions of our allies ought not to be used up by these Swiss.

429.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Allobrogēs vicōs possessiōnēsque trāns Rhodanum habēbant. Item Allobrogēs sē ad Caesarem fugā recipiunt. Dēmōnstrant nihil reliquī³ esse sibi praeter agrī solum. Quibus (= hīs) rēbus adductus, Caesar statuit nōn exspectandum esse.⁴ Caesar statuit nōn exspectandum⁴ dum omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōsūmerentur, aut dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūptis, Helvētiī in Santonōs pervenīrent.

¹ Translate both passively and actively.

² This sentence must be turned into the passive voice before the Second Periphrastic can be used. The subject of the active form becomes what case?

³ Genitive of the whole; nihil reliquī, *nothing of remainder*, i.e. *nothing was left*.

⁴ Translate actively, *he should not wait*.

LESSON LVII.

INTERROGATIVES AND INDEFINITES.—INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

430. *Caesar decides that he cannot afford to wait until the Swiss strip his allies of their property.*

Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi

praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsumptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent. [Cap. XI. Finis.]

431. Like Demonstratives and Relatives, Interrogatives and Indefinites are used both as pronouns and adjectives: **quis**, *who?* **quī homō**, *what man?* (Interrogatives) and **quis**, *any one*, **quī homō**, *any man* (Indefinites).

432.

PARADIGMS.

RELATIVE (reviewed).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

433.

INTERROGATIVE (used as pronoun).

SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis, <i>who?</i>	quid, <i>what?</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius, <i>whose?</i>	cuius, <i>of what?</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	cui, <i>to whom?</i>	cui, <i>to what?</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	quem, <i>whom?</i>	quid, <i>what?</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	quō, <i>by, from, in, or with whom?</i>	quō, <i>by, from, in, or with what?</i>

The plural is the same as that of the Relative, **quī**, **quae**, **quae**.

434.

INTERROGATIVE (used as adjective).

These are declined throughout singular and plural like the Relative.

	M.	F.	N.	meaning of all genders
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	<i>who? what? which? what kind of?</i>

Indefinites, whether pronouns or adjectives, are declined like the corresponding Interrogative, but **qua** is commonly used for **quae** except in the feminine plural nominative.

435. The Indefinites **quis** and **qui** are rare except after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**. In other situations, the student should make use of the compounds shown in the following table: —

M.	F.	N.
quis	(qua)	quid (quod), <i>somebody, anybody.</i>
aliquis (aliqui)	(aliqua)	aliquid (aliquid), <i>some one.</i>
quisquam		quicquam, <i>any one</i> (at all) (no plu.).
quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam), <i>a certain one.</i>
quisque	(quaeque)	quidque (quodque), <i>each one, every one.</i>
quivis	quaevis	quidvis (quodvis), <i>any one</i> (you please).

The bracketed forms are used as adjectives. The pronominal parts alone of the compounds are declined and these like the corresponding forms of **quis** or **qui**. Note, however, a euphonic change of **m** to **n** before **d**, showing **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, etc.

436.

MODEL SENTENCES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

(1) Quid facit? — *What is he doing?* (2) Quod oppidum oppūgnat? — *What town is he attacking?* (3) Nōne Caesar hōc facit? — *Is not Caesar doing this? or Caesar is doing this, is he not?* (Implied answer, "Yes.") (4) Num Caesar hōc facit? — *Caesar is not doing this, is he?* (Implied answer, "No.") (5) Caesarne hōc facit? — *Is Caesar doing this?* (Answer uncertain.)

Observe: —

(1) that questions 1 and 2 cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*, while the other questions may be so answered. After carefully studying the other questions, observe,

(2) that the interrogative particle **nōne** is used when the answer expected is *yes*, that **num** is used when the answer expected is *no*, that the enclitic particle **-ne** is used when the question gives no indication as to the nature of the answer. This enclitic

is always attached to the most emphatic word, which is usually placed first in the sentence. Note how the emphasis is altered in the following:—

Idne Caesar facit? — *Is it this that Caesar is doing?*

437.

VOCABULARY.

Arar, Araris, m., <i>the Saone</i> , a river	oculus, -i, m., <i>eye</i> .
tributary to the Rhone.	incrēdibilis, -e, <i>incredible</i> .
lēnitās, -tātis, f., <i>smoothness</i> .	uter, utra, utrum, <i>which of two</i> .
linter, lintris, m., <i>small boat, skiff</i> .	

iūdicō, 1, *judge, decide*.

438.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline the Indefinites quis, quisque, and quīdam, placing in brackets the alternative adjective forms.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds and supines of iūdicō.

439.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Quīdam hōrum hominum ad pācem cōfirmandam dēlēctī sunt. (2) Nōne Helvētīī suās cōpiās per finēs Sēquanōrum trāductūrī sunt? (3) Num hostēs Genāvam itūrī erant? (4) Helvētīī quoddam oppidum Aeduōrum oppugnāre cōstituērunt. (5) Labiēnumne huic oppidō Caesar praefēcit? (6) Helvētīī quemque ferre frūmentum iubent. (7) Num Orgetorīx imperiō tōtius Galliae potītus est? (8) Quod cōsilium oppidī oppugnandī nostrīs militibus capiendum est? (9) Cōnābiturne Caesar exercitum prohibēre? (10) Num Orgetorīx cuiquam persuāsīt ut rēgnum occupāret?

440.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Flūmen Arar per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Flūmen Arar est incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut oculīs, in utram partem¹ fluat,² iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsibant.

¹ Partem: direction.

² Fluat: subjunctive of what is known as Indirect Question. Translate as if fluit.

LESSON LVIII.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

441. *The Swiss cross the Saone.*

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum Influit, incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant.



HERE THE SWISS CROSSED THE SAONE.

442. A Substantive Clause is one used as subject or object of a verb or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Casticō persuādet ut rēgnū occupet. — *He persuades Casticus to seize the royal power.* (2) Timet ut Casticus rēgnū occupet. — *He fears that Casticus may not seize the royal power.* (3) Caesar monuit nē Helvētīi finēs Santonū obtinērent. — *Caesar advised that the Swiss should not hold the territories of the*

Santones. (4) Caesar timuit nē Helvētīī finēs Santonum obtinērent. — *Caesar feared that the Swiss would hold the territories of the Santones.* (5) Duinnorix perficit ut inter sē obsidēs dent. — *Dumnorix arranges that they shall give hostages to one another.*

Observe: —

(1) that the subordinate clauses of all these sentences, being the direct objects of the main verbs, are Substantive Clauses and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

(2) that sentences 1, 2, 3, 4 contain Substantive Clauses of Purpose, while sentence 5 contains a Substantive Clause of Result which is translated by the indicative mood.

(3) compare sentences 1 and 2, and note that when, as in sentence 2, *ut* introduces a Substantive Clause as object of a verb of Fearing, *ut* is negative and means "That not."

(4) that similarly *nē* with a verb of Fearing, as in sentence 4, is affirmative and means "That."

443. RULE. — *Verbs of fearing take the subjunctive with nē affirmative and ut negative.*

444.

VOCABULARY.

castra, -ōrum, n., *camp* (plu. of *castrum*, which is not used in Caesar).

explōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout*.

vigilia, -ae, f., *night-watch, guard*.

quārtus, -a, -um (ordinal adj.), *fourth*.

citrā, prep. governing acc., *this side of*.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish, arrange*.

timeō, timēre, timui, —, *fear, dread*.

vereor, verēri, veritus sum, *fear, stand in awe of*.

445.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline *castra* in plural and *explōrātor* in full.

(2) Write a synopsis of *timeō* in the 3d plural active and tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of *vereor*.

446.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(In the following sentences classify each subordinate clause as suggested in the observations above and tell why each is substantive.)

I. (1) Caesaris cōsilium erat ut faciōre itinere ūteretur. (2) Caesar timuit ut sui militēs faciōre itinere ūterentur. (3) Caesar Belgis persuāsit nē castra oppugnārent. (4) Caesar verēbatur nē Belgae castra oppugnārent. (5) Aedui verentur ut sua oppida dēfendere possint. (6) Caesar verēbatur nē hominēs inimicō animō agrōs sociōrum populārentur. (7) Helvētīi Caesarem rogāvērunt ut sibi liceret per prōvinciam ire. (8) Caesar perficit ut Helvētīi ire per prōvinciam nōn possint.

II. (1) The plan of the Allobroges was that they should cross the river. (2) The Allobroges feared that the enemy would cross the river. (3) The Swiss persuaded their neighbors not to send aid. (4) The Swiss feared that their neighbors would not send aid. (5) Orgetorix arranges so that the noblest are sent as hostages.

447.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs trēs partēs cōpiarum id flūmen iam trādūxisse.¹ Quārta ferē pars erat reliqua citrā flūmen Ararim. Ubi Caesar certior factus est quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim esse, dē tertiā vigiliā² ē castris profectus est. Profectus cum tribus legiōnibus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

¹ Trādūcō may take two accusatives, one (as cōpiās) the direct object of the verb and the other (as flūmen) the object of the preposition trāns (trā in compound with dūcō).

² Dē tertiā vigiliā: between midnight and 3 a.m. The time between sunset and sunrise was divided into four watches.

LESSON LIX.

SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVES.

448. *Caesar plans to crush the Swiss forces left on his side of the Saone River.*

Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

449.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Cōsul bellum māgnopere cupiēbat. — *The consul greatly desired war.* (2) Cōsulis cupiditās belli erat māgna. — *The consul's desire of war was great.* (3) Cupidissimus belli erat cōsul. — *The consul was very desirous of war.*

Observe: —

(1) that cōsul is subject and bellum is object, when the feeling of desire is expressed by a verb, as in sentence 1.

(2) that cōsul and bellum are put in the genitive, when the feeling of desire is expressed by a noun, as in sentence 2. Therefore cōsulis is called the Subjective Genitive and belli the Objective Genitive.

(3) that in sentence 3 belli is also in the Objective Genitive and the feeling of desire is expressed by an adjective.

450. RULES. — 1. *Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the subjective or objective genitive.*

2. *Adjectives of desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the objective genitive.*

451.

VOCABULARY.

pāgus, -i, m., *district, clan.*

silva, -ae, f., *forest, grove.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Swiss*, as adj.

inopināns, m., f., n. (*inopinantis*, genitive), *not expecting, unawares.*

perītus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled in* (followed by genitive).

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of or belonging to the Tigurini*, a Swiss clan.

quattuor, num. adj., *four.*

nam, conj., *for.*

abdō, *abdere*, *abdidī*, *abditus*, *put away, hide, conceal* (followed by in with acc.).

aggredior, *aggredi*, *aggressus sum*, *approach, attack.*

concīdō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus, *cut down, cut to pieces, kill.*

impediō, 4, *impede, hinder, encumber.*

mandō, 1, *hand over, commission*; *fugae sē mandāre*, *take to flight.*

452.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Write a synopsis of **concīdō** in the 3d plural active, and **aggredior** in the 3d plural.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the infinitive and participles of **abdō** and the gerunds and supines of **mandō**.

453.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Classify all genitives in the following sentences.)

I. (1) *Iter exercitūs per hōs finēs erat difficillimum.* (2) *Orgetorix, spē rēgnī inductus, novīs rēbus studēbat.* (3) *Aeduī erant cupidissimī Caesaris adventūs.* (4) *Hi vicī in cōspectū nostrī exercitūs nōn incendendī erant.* (5) *Reditiō Helvētiōrum per montēs fuerat difficillima.* (6) *Hae silvae memoriā nostrōrum patrum concisae erant.* (7) *Caesar memoriā eārum iniuriarum nōn inducetur.* (8) *Helvētiī, quod bellī perītissimī erant, adventū Caesaris nōn erant permōti.*

II. (1) The conspiracy of Orgetorix was formed at that time. (2) On the arrival of Caesar, the enemy took to flight. (3) Caesar was attacking enemies experienced in war. (4) The nobles had been alarmed by the punishment of Orgetorix. (5) The nobles had been anxious for a revolution on account of their desire for royal power.

454.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ei Helvetiī erant impediti et inopinantes. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantes Caesar aggressus est. Eōs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concidit. Reliqui sēsē fugae mandarunt (mandāverunt), atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus patrum nostrōrum memoriā domō exierat. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

LESSON LX.

DATIVE OF PURPOSE. — ACCUSATIVE WITH COMPOUND
VERBS.

455. *Caesar destroys the clan that had killed the consul Cassius fifty years before.*

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit: reliqui sēsē fugae mandarunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

456.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Ei milites auxiliō Caesarī erunt. — *These soldiers will be (for) an aid to Caesar.* (2) Haec calamitās erat dolōri Gallīs. — *This disaster was (for) a grief to the Gauls.*

Observe: —

That in sentence 1 *auxiliō* denotes the purpose or end which these soldiers will serve to Caesar, the person affected or concerned.

Explain in like manner the datives in sentence 2.

457. RULE. — *The dative is used to denote the purpose or end, often with another dative of the person or thing affected or concerned.*

458.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Helvētīī suās cōpiās id flūmen trādūxerant.* — *The Swiss had led their forces across this river.* (2) *Helvētīī id flūmen trānsierant.* — *The Swiss had crossed this river.*

Observe: —

(1) that in sentence 1, *trādūxerant* takes two accusatives, *cōpiās* the direct object of the verb and *flūmen* the object of the preposition *trāns* changed to *trā* in composition.

(2) in sentence 2, *trānsierat* (though *eō* uncompounded is intransitive), governs an accusative, *flūmen*, as the object of the preposition *trāns* in composition.

459. RULES. — 1. *Transitive compounds of trāns and a few other prepositions may take two accusatives, one the direct object of the verb and the other the object of the preposition.*

2. *Verbs of motion compounded with ad, circum, praeter, and trāns frequently become transitive and take an accusative.*

460.

VOCABULARY.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

calamitās, -tātis, f., *disaster*.

cāsus, -ūs, m., *chance, accident*.

deus,¹ I, m., *god*.

socer, *socerī*, m., *father-in-law*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*, belonging to the state.

sōlum, acc. neut. of *sōlus*, as adv., *only*.

immortālis, -e, *immortal*.

īsignis, -e, *marked, distinguished, conspicuous*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sive . . . *sive*, *whether . . . or*.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtus, *pay a debt or penalty*.

ulcīscor, *ulcīsci*, *ultus sum*, *take vengeance on, avenge*.

¹ The noun *deus* is irregularly declined in the plural as follows: Nominative, *dei* (*dīi*), *dī*; Genitive, *deōrum*, *deum*; Dative, *deīs* (*dīīs*), *dīs*; Accusative, *deōs*; Ablative, *deīs* (*dīīs*), *dīs*. The Vocative singular is *deus*, the same as the Nominative.

461.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline *cāsus* and *calamitās*.
 (2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds, supines, infinitives, and participles of *ulciscor*.

462.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Fully explain datives and accusatives in the following sentences.)

I. (1) Caesar statuit suās cōpiās id flūmen trādūcere.
 (2) Fuga amicōrum erat magnō dolōri Belgis. (3) Adventus hōrum militum erat māgnō praesidiō Gallis. (4) Caesar verēbātur nē hostēs cōpiās flūmen trādūcerent. (5) Caesar flūmen trānsiit ut sociis auxiliō esset. (7) Caesar Labiēnum mūnitiōni praefecit ut exemplō virtūtis militibus esset. (8) Rōmāni eōs, qui flūmen nōndum trānsierant, aggressi sunt.

II. (1) This fortification will be (for) a great protection to our possessions. (2) Caesar's arrival was an aid to the Aedui. (3) Caesar led his forces across the Rhone that they might be a protection to the allies. (4) The soldiers had crossed many rivers. (5) The death of Orgetorix was a calamity to his friends.

463.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium ea pars (pāgus Tigurinus) princeps¹ poenam persolvit. Ea pars civitātis Helvētiaē, quae insignem calamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat, princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniuriās ultus est, quod Tigurini eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium interfecerant, Lūcium Pisōnem lēgātum interfecerant. Pisō erat avus Caesaris socerī, L. Pisōnis. Tigurini avum eius (Caesaris) socerī interfecerant.

¹ princeps: adjective used as adverb, transl. *first*.

LESSON LXI.

FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE. — COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS.

464. *In punishing the Tigurini Caesar avenges the wrongs of the state and gratifies a private grudge for the death of a very distant relative.*

Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars cīvitatīs Helvētiaē insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcērant. [Cap. XII. Fīnis.]

465. Study the present imperatives of the regular conjugations and of the verb *nōlō* in the App., §§ 19–23, 26. The verbs *dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*, have monosyllabic imperatives: *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

466. TABLE OF COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS.

In the following table second person forms are imperatives, first and third person forms are subjunctives.

SINGULAR.	
AFFIRMATIVE.	NEGATIVE.
1st Person <i>liberem</i> , <i>let me liberate.</i>	<i>nē liberem</i> , <i>let me not liberate.</i>
2d Person <i>liberā</i> , <i>liberate.</i>	<i>nōlī liberāre</i> , <i>do not liberate.</i>
3d Person <i>liberet</i> , <i>let him liberate.</i>	<i>nē liberet</i> , <i>let him not liberate.</i>
PLURAL.	
1st Person <i>liberēmus</i> , <i>let us liberate.</i>	<i>nē liberēmus</i> , <i>let us not liberate.</i>
2d Person <i>liberāte</i> , <i>liberate.</i>	<i>nōlite liberāre</i> , <i>do not liberate.</i>
3d Person <i>liberent</i> , <i>let them liberate.</i>	<i>nē liberent</i> , <i>let them not liberate.</i>

Observe: —

That Negative Commands or Exhortations in 1st and 3d persons are expressed by the subjunctive with *nē*, not by the imperative.

Negative commands in the 2d person are expressed by the imperatives of *nōlō* (*nōlī* and *nōlite*, *be unwilling*), followed by a complementary infinitive.

467.

VOCABULARY.

Divicō, -ōnis, a Swiss nobleman.

dux, ducis, m. or f., *leader, guide, general.*

imprōvisus, -a, -um, *unexpected.*

pristinus, -a, -um, *former, of old.*

repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

vetus, m., f., n., *veteris* (genitive), *old, long standing.*

vigintī, num. adj., *twenty.*

agrē, adv., *with difficulty*; comp. *aegrus*, sup. *aegerrimē.*

imprōvisō or *dē imprōvisō*, abl. as adv., *unexpectedly.* (Compare Eng. "of a sudden.")

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, carry on, treat, discuss.*

commoveō, 2, *move thoroughly, alarm, startle.*

cōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, overtake, attain.*

cūrō, 1, *care for, provide for* (with gerundive, *cause to be* —).

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *look down upon, despise.*

468.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline *dux* and the adjective *vetus*, noting that the latter is not an i-stem and accordingly forms its ablative singular and genitive plural like *inferior*, § 105.

(2) Tabulate Commands and Exhortations as in § 466 of *agō* and *dēspiciō* and the infinitives and participles of *cōsequor*.

469.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Nē Helvētiōs decem diēbus adoriāmur.* (2) *Mittite lēgātōs ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum.* (3) *Nōlite trānsire id flūmen, quod est māgnā altitūdine.* (4) *Loca superiōra imprōvisō occupēmus ut Helvētiōs itinere prohibeāmus.* (5) *Exspectāte decem milia militum auxiliō.* (6) *Nē dēspiciant Aeduōs quod eōdem cōsiliō ūsi sunt.* (7) *Nōlī Orgetorigem dēligere qui hanc lēgatiōnem suscipiat.* (8) *Dā Casticō eius pristinum imperium tōtius Galliae.*

II. (1) Attack the forces of the Aeduans, which are nearest our camp. (2) Do not put that man in charge of the camp. (3) Let the leader not be alarmed by the sudden flight of the allies. (4) Let them lead ten thousand across that river as an aid to the Romans. (5) Let us not despise our former enemies.

470.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Hōc proeliō factō,¹ pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat.² Pontem faciendum cūrat ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequi posset. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti sunt, cum illum (i.e. Caesar) unō diē id fēcisse intellexerent, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerimē cōnfēcērant. Id erat ut flūmen trānsirent.³ Helvētiī commōti lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Cuius lēgatiōnis Diviciō princeps fuit. Diviciō bellō Cassiānō⁴ dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

¹ factō here means *fought*.

² has a bridge built over the Saone; literally, causes a bridge to be built. Faciendum is a gerundive agreeing in G. N. C. with pontem, direct object of cūrō.

³ ut trānsirent: substantive clause of purpose; transl. by infinitive.

⁴ bellō Cassiānō, the war with Cassius, a Roman general, who had been defeated 50 years before by the Swiss.

EIGHTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column and number from one to thirteen with meanings the Latin nouns numbered 103, 104, 106-116, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275-278.

II. Decline consecutively the first ten of these nouns, starting with the first and putting the comparative of *incrēdibilis* in agreement with each singular form and the positive *insignis* in agreement with each plural form.

III. List with meanings and compare when possible the Latin adjectives numbered 66-74, inclusive, in the Word List on page 278.

IV. List and number from one to twenty with meanings and principal parts the Latin verbs numbered 108-127, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275-278.

V. Write a consecutive synopsis in the 2d plural passive of the first ten verbs, and tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles of the last ten. Write synopses of verb numbered 116 in the 3d plural first or active periphrastic and of verb numbered 127 in the 3d singular neuter of the second or passive periphrastic.

VI. Tabulate with meanings the gerunds and supines of *interficiō* and the imperatives of *cūrō*, *dēbeō*, and *impediō*.

VII. Review the Indefinite and Interrogative Pronouns in Lesson LVII.

VIII. Review the rules of syntax for subjunctive with verbs of Fearing, for the Subjective and Objective Genitive, Genitive with Adjectives, Dative of Purpose, Accusatives with verbs compounded with *trāns* and *circum*, Commands and Exhortations, and illustrate each with an original sentence properly translated.

IX. Translate the text at the head of Lessons LV-LXI, inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned above.

LESSON LXII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

471. *Caesar bridges the Saone and throws his army across. In alarm, the Swiss send an embassy of peace.*

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum id, quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum unō diē fēcisse intellexerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

472. Since the personal endings of Latin verbs indicate the person of the subject, the nominative of **Personal Pronouns** is used only when needed for emphasis, contrast, or clearness. Memorize the declension of the pronouns *ego*, *I*, and *tū*, *you*, in the App., § 15. The personal pronoun of the thir-

person, *he, she, it*, is lacking in Latin, and when not reflexive, is expressed usually by *is, ea, id*, sometimes by *hic* or *ille*. What is the third person reflexive in Latin?

473. Possessive Adjectives are formed from the genitive of the personal pronouns as follows:—

PERSON.	GENITIVE.	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE.
1st Sing.	<i>mei, of me</i>	<i>meus, -a, -um, my or mine.</i>
Plu.	<i>nostrī, of us</i>	<i>noster, -tra, -trum, our or ours.</i>
2d Sing.	<i>tui, of you</i>	<i>tuus, -a, -um, your or yours.</i>
Plu.	<i>vestrī, of you</i>	<i>vester, -tra, -trum, your or yours.</i>
3d Sing.	<i>sui, of him, etc.</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, or their (own),</i> according to the subject, to which the reflexive, <i>suus</i> , must refer.
or Plu.		

When not referring to the subject, the possessive adjective of the third person is supplied by the use in the singular and plural, respectively, of the genitive of the demonstrative *is, ea, id*; namely, *eius, his, her, its*, and *eōrum* or *eārum, their*.

474.**MODEL SENTENCES.**

(1) *Ego oppidum oppugnō, tū dēfendis.* — *I attack the town, you defend it.* (2) *Mē liberō, vōs liberātis.* — *I free myself, you free yourselves.* (3) *Quis vestrum veniet, nam vestrī cupidī sumus?* — *Who of you will come, for we are fond of you?* (4) *Nostrōs nobiscum dūcēmus.* — *We shall lead our (men) with us.*

Observe:—

(1) that *ego* and *tū* are used in sentence 1 because they are contrasted and emphatic.

(2) that as in sentence 2 the first and second persons of the personal pronouns may be used reflexively.

(3) that the genitive form *vestrum* is partitive and *vestrī* is objective, as in sentence 3. *Nostrum* and *nostrī* must be likewise distinguished.

(4) that in sentence 4 *nostrōs* is used substantively and that the preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns as well as with relative, interrogative, and reflexive pronouns.

475.

VOCABULARY.

contumēlia , -ae, f., <i>insult, affront.</i>	gravis , -e, n., <i>heavy, serious.</i>
īnsīdiae , -ārum, f., plu., <i>ambush, stratagem, treachery.</i>	recēns , m., f., n. (recentis, genitive), <i>recent.</i>
nōmen , nōminis, n., <i>name.</i>	graviter , adv., <i>heavily, bitterly.</i>
accidō , -cidere, -cidi, —, <i>fall to, happen.</i>	
caveō , cavēre, cāvī, cautus, <i>be on guard, beware of.</i>	
committō , -mittere, -misi, -missus, <i>perform, allow</i> (proelium committere, <i>join battle</i>).	
cōnsistō , -sistere, -stiti, —, <i>take a position, stand, rally.</i>	
dēcipiō , -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, <i>catch, ensnare, deceive.</i>	
discō , discere, didici, —, <i>learn.</i>	
nītor , nīti, nīsus (or nīxus) sum, <i>strive, depend upon</i> (with abl.).	
persequor , -sequi, -secutus sum, <i>follow up, assail.</i>	
temptō , 1, <i>try, test, attempt.</i>	

476.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline together **īnsīdiae** and **gravis**, **nōmen** and **recēns**.
- (2) Write synopses of **accidō** in the 3d plural active and **nītor** in 1st plural.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings: participles of **caveō**, infinitives of **committō**, gerunds of **cōnsistō**.

477.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Ego recentem contumēliam memoriā tenēbō, tū nōn.
 (2) Caesar vestrās īnsidiās cavēbit. (3) In recentī proeliō īnsidiīs nōn nītēbāmur. (4) Māgnum exercitum nōbiscum dūcāmus. (5) Tuīs īnsidiīs nōn dēceptī sumus. (6) Nōs proelium committēmus vōbiscum; vōs cavēbitis. (7) Tuāe contumēliae erant māgnae iniūriae¹ nōbīs.

II. (1) I shall go to Geneva, you to the country. (2) Let us carry grain with us. (3) These towns must be defended by you. (4) The Swiss will lead their (men) with them across this river. (5) Your name will be of great aid to us. (6) Many of us are very fond of you (plu.).

¹ Not nom. plu.

LESSON LXIII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.*

478. *The aged Divico haughtily defies Caesar.*

Dīvicō ita cum Caesare ēgit:† “Sī pācem populus Rōmānus faciet, nōs Helvētīi in eam partem ibimus atque ibi erimus, ubi volueris.¹ Sī bellō persequi vīs, tenē memoriā vetus proelium et pristinam virtutem Helvētiōrum. Unum pāgum adortus es, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsierant, nostris auxilium ferre nōn possent.² Ob eam rem nōlī³ nōs dēspicere. Nōs ita ā maiōribus patribusque didicimus: virtūte, nōn insidiis, nitī oportēre. Quārē nōlī committere ut is locus, ubi cōsistimus, ex calamitatē populi Rōmāni nōmen capiat.”

479. A Conditional Sentence is complex and consists of two parts: the subordinate clause called the **condition** or **protasis**, and the principal clause called the **conclusion** or **apodosis**; as, *if he attacks* (protasis), *he will be defeated* (apodosis).

480. Conditional sentences are classified as follows:—

I. Conditions referring to Present and Past Time.

(a) Simple.

(b) Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to Future Time.

(a) More Vivid Future.

(b) Less Vivid Future.

* See Syntactical Syllabus regarding Conditions, page 281.

† This speech is a condensed version in direct discourse of the original text, whose indirect form presents serious difficulties. The same liberty has been taken in treating Caesar's reply in Lesson LXIV. All words of these portions of the original text occurring six or more times in Caesar have been used in these versions.

¹ Future perfect, translated as present indicative.

² Translated by same tense of indicative.

³ *Be unwilling to*, i.e. *do not*.

481.

SUBDIVISIONS.

I. Conditions referring to Present and Past Time.

(a) Simple Conditions.

PRES. *If he has anything, he gives it.*

SI quid habet, dat.

PAST. *If he had anything, he gave it.*

SI quid habēbat, dedit.

Observe : —

That these conditions are stated simply without implying anything as to their truth, and the indicative is used in both clauses.

(b) Conditions Contrary to Fact.

PRES. *If he had anything, he would give it.*

SI quid habēret, daret.

PAST. *If he had had anything, he would have given it.*

SI quid habuisset, dedisset.

Observe : —

(1) that the protases of these sentences imply what is contrary to fact: he has or had nothing and therefore can or could give nothing.

(2) that the subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect in the present contrary to fact and the pluperfect in the past contrary to fact.

II. Conditions referring to Future Time.

(a) More Vivid Future.

If he has anything, he will give it.

SI quid habēbit, dabit.

(b) Less Vivid Future.

If he should have anything, he would give it.

SI quid habeat, det.

Observe : —

(1) that the protasis in (a) states the future supposition vividly and distinctly and implies the probability of the action in the

apodosis. In this form of conditional sentence both clauses take the indicative. In English the present tense is used in the protasis though referring to future time, while Latin is more precise and uses the future or sometimes the future perfect.

(2) that the protasis in (b) states the future supposition less vividly and distinctly and implies the uncertainty or mere possibility of the action in the apodosis. In this form of conditional sentence both clauses take the present subjunctive. Of what forms are the two conditions used in § 478 ?

482.

SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS.

I. Conditions referring to Present or Past Time.

(a) Simple. Indicative in both clauses.

(b) Contrary to Fact $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{PRES. — Imperfect subjunctive in} \\ \text{both clauses.} \\ \text{PAST. — Pluperfect subjunctive in} \\ \text{both clauses.} \end{array} \right.$

II. Conditions referring to Future Time.

(a) More Vivid. Future indicative in both clauses.

(b) Less Vivid. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

483.

VOCABULARY.

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f., complete change, reverse. *secundus, -a, -um, following, next, second; favorable, successful.*

meritum, -i, n., deserts, due.

diū, adv., long, for a long time.

victōria, -ae, f., victory.

interdum, adv., meanwhile.

admiror, 1, wonder at, marvel at.

cōsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, become accustomed, perf. be accustomed.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, put down, aside, or away.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, withdraw, depart.

dolēō, dolēre, dolui, —, feel pain or grief, grieve.

polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, offer, promise.

vexō, 1, harass, ravage.

484.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline *commūtātiō*.
- (2) Write synopses of *discēdō* in the 3d plural active and *polliceor* in the 3d plural.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of *dēpōnō*, the gerunds of *doleō*, and supines of *vexō*.

485.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) *Rōmānī, sī id oppidum oppugnābunt, capient.* (2) *Si Caesar memoriam recentium iniuriarum dēposuisset, Helvētiōs amīcōs habuisset.* (3) *Si Caesar pācem cum Gallis faciat, in suōs finēs discēdant.* (4) *Aeduī diū dolēbunt, sī Helvētīi suōs agrōs vexābunt.* (5) *Sī domō discēderēmus, nostrī agrī vāstārentur.* (6) *Sī Rōmānī eō tempore cāvissent, nōn superātī essent.* (7) *Si Caesar Genāvae est, Labiēnus castris praeest.*

II. (1) If this happens, the Romans will be on guard. (2) If the Swiss had laid down their arms, Caesar would have promised them peace. (3) If the Belgians should depart, Caesar would not try to follow them. (4) If Labienus were in charge of the fortification, Caesar would not fear the enemy.

LESSON LXIV.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

486. *Divico had won his victory fifty years before by treachery. Let the Swiss beware of the vengeance of the gods whose custom it is to make mad with prosperity those whom they purpose to destroy.*

His verbis Caesar ita respondit: “Memoriā teneō eās rēs quās dixistī et gravius ferō¹ quod eae rēs nōn meritō populī Rōmānī acciderunt. Rōmānī vetere proeliō nōn caverant quod, nullā iniuriā a se factā, nōn timēbant. Quā rē dēceptī erant. Num nōn solum veteris contumēliae sed etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēponere possum? Mē invitō, iter per prōvinciam temptā-

¹ *gravius ferō, I bear more bitterly, i.e. am more displeased.*

vistis. Aeduōs, Ambarrōs, Allobrogēs vexāvistis. Nōlīte propter illam victōriam admirārī vōs tam diū iniuriās intulisse. Cōsuēscunt deī immortalēs quō hominēs ex commūtātione rērum gravius doleant, hīs quōs ulcisci volent secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere. Cum¹ ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs dabuntur, uti ea quae polliceāmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, vōbiscum pācem faciam.”²

Divicō respondit, “Nōs Helvētiī obsidēs recipere, nōn dare consuēvimus.”

Eō respōnsō datō, discessit.

487. A Direct Question gives the exact words of a speaker or writer. An Indirect Question gives the words of a speaker or writer as reported by another or by the same person after a verb of asking, knowing, doubting, and the like, followed by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, adverb, or particle.

DIRECT QUESTION.

Quid Caesar facit? — *What is Caesar doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION.

Rogat quid Caesar faciat. — *He asks what Caesar is doing.*

Observe: —

That the indicative **facit** in the Direct Question becomes the subjunctive **faciat** in the Indirect Question.

488. RULE. — *The verb in an indirect question is put in the subjunctive.*

489.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Rogat, <i>he asks</i>	} ¹	{	quid Caesar faciat, <i>what Caesar is doing.</i>	
Rogābit, <i>he will ask</i>				
Rogāverit, <i>he will have asked</i>				
				quid Caesar fecerit, <i>what Caesar has done.</i>

¹ Cum concessive.

² Future Indicative.

Observe :—

That the present, future, and future perfect, called **Primary or Principal Tenses**, are followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, the former to denote *incompleted* action, the latter to denote action *completed* at the time of the main verb.

490.

SECONDARY TENSES.

Rogābat, <i>he was asking</i>	}	{	quid Caesar faceret, <i>what Caesar was doing.</i>
Rogāvit, <i>he asked</i>			
Rogāverat, <i>he had asked</i>		{	quid Caesar fēcisset, <i>what Caesar had done.</i>

Observe :—

That the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect called **Secondary or Historical¹ Tenses**, are followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, the former to denote *incompleted* action, the latter to denote action *completed* at the time of the main verb.

491. RULE.—*A primary tense is followed by the subjunctive present for incompleted action, perfect for completed action. A secondary tense is followed by the subjunctive imperfect for incompleted action, pluperfect for completed action.*

SUMMARY.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Primary Tenses	{ Pres.	{	Present to denote incompleted action with reference to the main verb.
	{ Fut.		Perfect to denote completed action with reference to the main verb.
	{ Fut. Perf.		
Secondary or Historical Tenses	{ Imperf.	{	Imperf. to denote incompleted action with reference to the main verb.
	{ Perf.		Pluperf. to denote completed action with reference to the main verb.
	{ Pluperf.		

¹ Why are these tenses called Historical?

492.

VOCABULARY.

agmen, agminis, n., <i>army on the march, line of march.</i>	posterus, -a, -um, <i>next, later, subsequent.</i>
equitātus, -ūs, m., <i>cavalry.</i>	cupidō, adv., <i>eagerly.</i>
aliēnus, -a, -um, <i>belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable.</i>	cūr, interrog. adv., <i>why?</i>
paucī, -ae, -a, <i>few.</i>	num, <i>whether. See § 436.</i>

cadō, cadere, cecidī, [cāsūrus], *fall, be slain.*

īnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *follow on, pursue.*

præmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *send before or in advance.*

493.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline **equitātus** in singular only and **agmen** in full.
- (2) Write synopses of **cadō**, in the 1st plural active and **īnsequor** in the 3d plural.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **præmittō**.

494.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(In the following tenses explain the Sequence of Tenses in all subjunctive forms and account for the mood.)

I. (1) In utram partem flūmen flueret, iūdicārī nōn poterat. (2) Caesar Helvētiōs rogāvit cūr Aeduōs vexārent. (3) Præmittit explōrātōrēs quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter factūrī sint. (4) Caesar suōs rogāvit cūr aliēnō locō cum equitātū hostium proelium commīsissent. (5) Cūr Caesar Labiēnum huic agminī præfēcerit, nōn intellegunt. (6) Admirātī sunt num Casticus rēgnum occupāret. (7) Dīvicō nōn potest intellegere cūr Caesar recentium iniūriārum memoriā nōn dēponat.

II. (1) Caesar cānot find out what town the enemy are attacking, have attacked. (2) The scouts could not see in what direction the enemy were marching, had marched. (3) Caesar wondered why the fourth part had not crossed the river. (4) Caesar asked the cavalry why they were joining battle, had joined battle.

495.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Helvëtiî postero diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium prae-mittit. Equitātum, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum¹ habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī² cupidius novissimum³ agmen insequuntur. Quī² cupidius insecutī cum equitātū Helvëtiōrum proelium aliēnō locō committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt.

¹ coāctum habēbat: equivalent to coēgerat.

² Quī: the relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence occurs frequently and should be translated as a demonstrative.

³ novissimum agmen, last line, i.e. rear guard.

LESSON LXV.

DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

496. *The Swiss attempt to get away. Caesar follows them. His cavalry allow themselves to be drawn into an unfortunate engagement.*

Postero diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecutī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvëtiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt.



SOLDIER IN MARCHING ORDER.

497. The verbs *coeipi*, *I began*, and *odi*, *I hate*, lack the present system¹ and are therefore called **Defective**

¹ The present system comprises the present, imperfect, and future. What tenses will then be wanting in the subjunctive?

Verbs. The present system of *coepi* is supplied by *incipiō*, *I begin*. Note *ōdi*, *I hate*, *ōderam*, *I hated*, *ōderō*, *I shall hate*.

498.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Many verbs on account of their meaning appear only in the 3d singular. These are called **Impersonal Verbs** because they have no personal subjects. Those most commonly occurring in Caesar are as follows:—

accidit, *accidēbat*, *accidet*, etc., *it happens etc.*
constat, *constābat*, *constābit*, etc., *it is clear etc.*
fit, *fiēbat*, *fiet*, etc., *it happens, becomes etc.*
licet, *licēbat*, *licēbit*, etc., *it is permitted etc.* (with dative of the person).
necesse est, *erat*, *erit*, etc., *it is necessary, etc.* (with inf. and subj. acc.).
oportet, *oportēbat*, *oportēbit*, etc., *it is fitting, ought.*
vidētur (sometimes impersonal in passive), *it seems, seems good.*

Intransitive Verbs and the Special Verbs followed by the dative (§ 254) are regularly used impersonally in the passive voice, retaining the dative, as: *pūgnātur*, *it is fought, there is fighting*; *Orgetorigi persuādētur*, *Orgetorix is persuaded* (literally, *it is persuaded to Orgetorix*).

499.

VOCABULARY.

<i>eques</i> , <i>equitis</i> , m., <i>horseman</i> ; plu. <i>cavalry</i> .	<i>quīndecim</i> , num. adj., <i>fifteen</i> .
<i>pābulātiō</i> , -ōnis, f., <i>foraging</i> .	<i>quīngentī</i> , -ae, -a, num. adj., <i>five hundred</i> .
<i>populātiō</i> , -ōnis, f., <i>destroying, a plundering expedition</i> .	<i>quīnī</i> , -ae, -a, distributive num. adj., <i>five each</i> .
<i>praesentia</i> , -ae, f., <i>the present</i> .	<i>sēnī</i> , -ae, -a, distributive num. adj., <i>six each</i> .
<i>rapina</i> , -ae, f., <i>plundering, robbery</i> .	<i>tantus</i> , -a, -um, <i>so great, so much</i> .
<i>amplus</i> , -a, -um, <i>large, extensive</i> ; comp. <i>amplior</i> , -ius, <i>more</i> .	<i>circiter</i> , adv., <i>about</i> .
<i>audāx</i> , m., f., n. (<i>audācis</i> , genitive), <i>bold, reckless</i> .	
<i>coepī</i> , <i>coepisse</i> , <i>coeptus</i> , <i>have begun, began</i> .	
<i>laccessō</i> , <i>laccessere</i> , <i>laccessivī</i> , <i>laccessitus</i> , <i>challenge, provoke, excite</i> .	
<i>prōpellō</i> , -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, <i>drive forward or off</i> .	
<i>subsistō</i> , -sistere, -stiti, —, <i>halt, make a stand</i> .	

500.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline *eques*.
- (2) Compare the adjective *audāx* and the adverb derived from it, and decline the positive of the adjective.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of *laceſsō*.
- (4) Write with meanings synopses of *coepti* in 3d plural active and *ōdi* in 2d singular active.

501.

EXERCISE FOR PRACTICE.

(1) He hates, he will hate, he hated; they had begun, they began. (2) They hated the Romans and began to make war upon them. (3) The Swiss asked that it should be permitted them. (4) It was necessary (for) Caesar to defend the possessions of the allies. (5) Caesar¹ was not persuaded. (6) It happened that² the cavalry were in an unfavorable place.

502.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Quō proeliō Helvētīi sublāti sunt, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant. Quō proeliō sublāti, coepērunt audācius nōn numquam subsistere et suō novissimō agmine³ nostrōs proeliō laceſsere. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Duo exercitūs diēs circiter quīndecim iter ita fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum⁴ nōn amplius⁵ quīnis⁶ aut sēnis milibz passuum interesset.

¹ In what case must Caesar be put?

² Substantive Clause of Result with subjunctive.

³ Agmine, abl. place, transl. *from their rear*.

⁴ Primum, *first*, van of an army.

⁵ Amplius, neut. sing. nom. used substantively.

⁶ Quīnis et sēnis etc., abl. deg. diff., *five or six miles each day*.

LESSON LXVI.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVES.

503. *The Swiss, puffed up over their cavalry victory, attack Caesar from their rear guard. He avoids battle, while preventing them from ravaging the country.*

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset. [Cap. XV. Fīnis.]



ACROSS THIS COUNTRY MARCHED THE OPPOSING ARMIES.

504. Double Accusatives in Latin are of two classes:—

I. Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Senātus Catamantaloedem amicum appellāverat.* — *The senate had called Catamantaloedes a friend.* (2) *Labiēnum certiōrem fēcērunt.* — *They informed Labienus* (literally, *made Labienus more certain*). (3) *Divicōnem ducem Helvētiī dēlēgērunt.* — *The Swiss chose Divico as leader.* (4) *Divicō dux ab Helvētiīs dēlēctus est.* — *Divico was chosen as leader by the Swiss.*

Observe:—

(1) that these verbs govern two accusatives, a direct object, as *Catamantaloedem* or *Divicōnem*, and a predicate accusative, as *amicum* or *ducem*.

(2) that the predicate accusative may be an adjective, as *certiōrem* in sentence 2.

In changing such a sentence into the passive voice, as sentence 3 into 4, the direct object becomes subject and the predicate accusative becomes predicate nominative.

505. RULE. — *Verbs of calling, choosing, making, and the like may take two accusatives of the same person or thing.*

506. II. Two Accusatives: the one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) *Aeduī Caesarem auxilium rogāvērunt.* — *The Aedui asked aid of Caesar.* (2) *Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat.* — *Caesar kept asking the Aedui for grain.*

Observe:—

That these verbs take two accusatives, the one of the Person, as *Caesarem* and *Aeduōs*, and the other of the Thing, as *auxilium* and *frūmentum*.

507. RULE. — *Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching take two accusatives, the one of the person, the other of the thing.*

508.**VOCABULARY.**

frigus, frigoris, n., cold, (plu. cold seasons).	modo, adv., only.
pābulum, -ī, n., fodder, forage.	pūblicē, adv., publicly, in the name of the state.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature, early.	quidem, adv., certainly, at least.
cotidiē, adv., every day, daily.	nē . . . quidem, not even (emphatic word between).
interim, adv., meanwhile.	

āvertō, āvertere, āverti, āversus, turn from or away.

flāgitō, 1, demand often.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, put, place, establish.

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, carry up.

509.**WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Write synopses of āvertō in the 2d plural active and pōnō in the 2d plural passive.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of flāgitō.

510.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) Helvētīi Divicōnem prīncipem huius lēgātiōnis dēlēgērunt. (2) Caesar sociōs equitātum rogāvit. (3) Caesar sociōs pābulum, quod polliciti erant, flāgitābat. (4) Aedui nōn modo amīci sed etiam socii appellāti erant. (5) Interim Labiēnus equitātum flūmen Rhodanum trādūxit. (6) Interim equitātus ā Labiēnō flūmen Rhodanum trāductus est.

(Translate the following sentences, except (2), both actively and passively.)

II. (1) The scouts informed Caesar concerning the arrival of Labienus. (2) The Aedui demanded their children of the Swiss. (3) Shall we not choose Caesar as our leader? (4) Who is leading this army across the river?

511.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitabat. Frumentum, quod Aeduī publicē polliciti essent, Caesar flagitare.¹ Gallia, ut ante dictum est, sub septentrionibus posita est. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus posita est, frumenta² in agris matura non erant. Non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat. Caesar frumentum flumine Arari navibus subvexerat. Eo autem frumentō, quod Arari subvexerat, uti minus poterat. Eo frumentō uti minus poterat propterea quod Helvetii iter ab Arari avertent. Ab Helvetiis discedere volebat.

¹ *flagitare*, historical infinitive with subject nominative, used in animated description. Translate by imperfect indicative.

² *frumenta*, *standing grain*.

NINTH REVIEW.

I. List in a numbered column with meanings the Latin nouns numbered 118–125, inclusive; also 21 and 46 in the Word List on pages 275–278.

II. Decline these nouns consecutively, beginning with the first and putting the positive adjective *audax* in agreement with singular forms, and the comparative of *recens* in agreement with plural forms.

III. List in a column and compare when possible the Latin adjectives numbered 73–91, inclusive, in the Word List on page 278.

IV. Review the Personal pronouns and Possessive adjectives in Lesson LXII.

V. List in a numbered column with meanings and principal parts the Latin verbs numbered 123–152, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275–278.

VI. Write consecutive synopses of the first ten in the 2d singular active and the next ten in the 3d singular passive.

VII. Tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles of the last ten.

VIII. Write short Latin sentences translated into English to illustrate the genitive and accusative constructions enumerated in the Syntactical Syllabus on pages 279-281.

IX. Review text at head of Lessons LXII-LXVI, inclusive, pointing out all examples therein of the above principles of syntax.

LESSON LXVII.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

512. *Caesar, in danger of starvation, urgently calls upon his allies for promised supplies. His food supplies afloat on the Saone prove unavailable because the Swiss have left that river.*

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice polliciti flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat; eo autem frumento quod flumine Arari navibus subvexerat propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolibat.

513. Before studying the model sentences given below, review carefully the subjunctive in Conditional Sentences as set forth in §§ 480-482.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Utinam Caesar adsit. — *Oh that Caesar may be here.* (In the Future.) (2) Utinam Caesar adesset. — *Oh that Caesar were here.* (In the Present.) (3) Utinam Caesar adfuisset. — *Oh that Caesar had been here.* (In the Past.)

Observe: —

That each of these sentences expresses a wish and takes the **Optative Subjunctive**; that the present subjunctive expresses a wish as possible of accomplishment in the future; the imperfect and

pluperfect subjunctive express the wish as unaccomplished in the present and past respectively.

These tenses of the Optative Subjunctive correspond exactly to the tenses of the Less Vivid Future and of the Contrary to Fact conditions. The particle **utinam**, *oh that, would that*, is sometimes omitted with the present subjunctive, but never with the imperfect or pluperfect. In negative wishes **nē** is used as an introductory particle, as **Nē adsit Caesar**, *oh that Caesar may not be here*.

514. RULE. *Wishes are expressed by the optative subjunctive with **utinam** affirmative, **nē** negative.*

515.**VOCABULARY.**

nex , necis , f., <i>violent death, murder,</i>	vita , -ae, f., <i>life.</i>
<i>slaughter.</i>	annuus , -a, -um, <i>yearly, annual.</i>
potestās , potestātis , f., <i>power.</i>	utinam , <i>oh that, would that.</i>
vergobretus , -i, m., the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.	
comportō , 1, <i>bring together, collect.</i>	
convocō , 1, <i>call together, summon.</i>	
creō , 1, <i>create, elect.</i>	
instō , -stāre, -stitī, —, <i>(stand to or in), impend, be at hand.</i>	
mētiōr , mētīrī , mēnsus sum , <i>measure out.</i>	

516.**WRITTEN WORK.**

(1) Write synopses of **instō** in the 3d plural active and **conferō** in the 3d plural passive.

(2) Tabulate with meanings the gerunds and supines of **creō** and the infinitives and participles of **convocō**.

517.**EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.**

I. (1) **Utinam Caesar auxiliō Aeduīs veniat.** (2) **Utinam frūmenta in agrīs mātūra fuissent.** (3) **Utinam Caesar frūmentum militibus mētīrī posset.** (4) **Nē Helvētiī omnēs cōpiās Genāvam convocārent.** (5) **Utinam Caesar Rōmae hōc annō cōsul creārētur.** (6) **Nē obsidēs ab prīncipibus interficiantur.** (7) **Equitēs caveant nē ab hostibus repellantur.** (8) **Rōmān^r virtūte contendant magis quam insidiīs nītantur.**

II. (1) May the Swiss not grieve on account of their change of fortune. (2) Oh that the immortal gods may give us greater prosperity. (3) Would that we had not been impeded by the flight of our allies. (4) Would that we had followed up the enemy very boldly. (5) Oh that the day of return were at hand.

518.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diem ex diē Aedui dūcēbant¹ et dicēbant frūmentum cōferri, comportārī, adesse. Diem ex diē dūcere² Aedui et dicere³ cōferri, comportārī, adesse. Sē diūtius dūci intellēxit. Intellēxit diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret.³ Ubi ea omnia intellēxit, principēs eōrum convocāvit. Convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, graviter eōs accūsāt. In hīs principibus erant Diviciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātui praeerat. Eum magistrātum vergobretum appellant Aedui, quī creatur annuus et potestātem vitāe necisque in⁴ suos habet. Convocātis eōrum principibus, in hīs Diviciācō⁵ et Liscō, graviter eōs accūsāt.

¹ dūcēbant, kept leading him on, i.e. putting him off.

² The infinitives dūcere and dicere are historical; the others are in indirect discourse. As to case of Aedui, see Note 1, page 201.

³ oportēret, it would be necessary.

⁴ in, translate over.

⁵ Diviciācō et Liscō, appositives of principibus.

LESSON LXVIII.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — *QUOD CAUSAL.*

519. *The Aedui put off Caesar with excuses until he loses patience with them, and calling together their leaders, bitterly upbraids them.*

Diem ex diē dūcere Aedui: cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum

mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem ‘vergobretum’ appellant Aedui, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt.

520.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Aedui frūmentum, quod dēbent, nōn cōferunt. — *The Aedui do not collect the grain which they ought.* (2) Caesar dīcit Aeduōs frūmentum, quod dēbeant, nōn cōferre. — *Caesar says that the Aedui do not collect the grain which they ought.* (3) Quod ab eīs nōn sublevātus est, Caesar prīncipēs convocāt. — *Caesar calls together the leaders, because he has not been assisted by them.* (4) Caesar Aeduōs accūsāt quod ab eīs nōn sublevātus sit. — *Caesar blames the Aedui, because (as he says) he has not been aided by them.*

Observe: —

(1) that sentence 1 is a complex sentence, whose subordinate verb *dēbent* is in the indicative mood.

(2) that when sentence 1 is thrown into indirect discourse after verb of saying, as in sentence 2, the verb of the subordinate clause *dēbent* becomes the subjunctive *dēbeant*.

521. RULE. — *A subordinate clause in indirect discourse takes the subjunctive.*

Observe: —

That in sentence 3 the subordinate clause is in direct discourse, expresses cause, and takes the indicative, while in sentence 4 the subordinate causal clause is in indirect discourse after *accūsāt*, a verb of saying, and therefore takes the subjunctive.

522. RULE. — *Causal clauses with quod take the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

523.

VOCABULARY.

prex, *precis*, *f.*, *prayer, entreaty*.
improbus, -a, -um, *wicked, depraved*.
propinquus, -a, -um, *near, close* (used substantively, *relative*).
seditiosus, -a, -um, *seditionous, treasonable*.

anteā, *adv.*, *before that, previously*.
dēmum, *adv.*, *at last*.
praesertim, *adv.*, *especially, particularly*.
privātim, *adv.*, *privately, personally*.
tum, *adv.*, *then*.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus, *abandon, desert*.

dēterreō, -terrere, -terrui, -territus, *frighten off, prevent*.

emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptus, *buy*.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, positus, *put forward, set forth, propose*.

queror, queri, questus sum, *complain of, lament*.

sublevō, 1, *lighten up, assist, support*.

taceō, tacere, tacui, tacitus, *be silent*.

valeō, valere, valuī, —, *be strong, well, or powerful*.

524.

WRITTEN WORK.

- (1) Decline **potestās** in the singular and **prex** in the plural.
- (2) Write synopses of **prōpōnō** in the 1st plural active and **queror** in the same person and number.
- (3) Tabulate with meanings the participles of **emō**, infinitives of **valeō**, and the supines and gerunds of **dēterreō**.

525.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

(Explain the mood and tense of all subjunctives.)

I. (1) Nuntiant Aeduos nōn cōferre frūmentum quod dēbeant. (2) Explōrātōrēs renūntiāverunt hostēs oppidum quod oppugnāvissent nōn cēpisse. (3) Caesar suās cōpiās edūxit quod Labiēnus Helvētiōs nōn adortus erat. (4) Cum Caesar adest, milites fortissimē resistunt. (5) Labiēnus vidit milites fortissimē resistere cum Caesar adesset. (6) Caesar Labiēnum accūsābat quod Helvētiōs nōn adortus esset. (7) Aedui māgnopere questī sunt quod liberī in servitūtem abductī essent.

II. (1) The Aedui sent ambassadors to Caesar because their fields had been laid waste. (2) The Aedui bitterly complained because their fields had been laid waste. (3) The scouts

announced that Labienus was bravely defending the town of which he was in charge. (4) When the grain (plu.) was ripe, the Romans took it from the fields. (5) The leaders knew that the Romans took grain (plu.) from the fields when it was ripe.

526.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cum ¹ frūmentum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī potest, tam necessariō tempore, ² tam propinquis hostibus, ³ ab eis nōn sublevātur. Graviter eōs accūsāt, quod ³ ab eis nōn sublevētur. Multō etiam gravius queritur, quod ³ sit dēstitūtus, praesertim cum ⁴ magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit.

Liscus dicit: nōn nullōs prīncipēs Aeduōrum sēditiōsā et improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dētterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant ⁵ quod dēbeant.

¹ Cum Temporal. Why indicative? § 320.

² Ablative Absolute, § 261 (2).

³ Quod Causal. Why subjunctive? § 522.

⁴ Cum Causal. Why subjunctive? § 372.

⁵ nō . . . cōferant, Substantive Clause of Purpose. Transl. from collecting, etc. Literally, that they should not collect.

LESSON LXIX.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

527. *Caesar arraigns the allies for deserting him after inducing him to undertake the war. Liscus says that powerful men in private life hold up the supplies.*

Graviter eōs accūsāt quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur. [Cap. XVI. Finis.]

Tum dēnum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud

plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātim plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā orātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant.



NEAR THIS PLACE OCCURRED THE CONFERENCE WITH THE ALLIES.

528. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty in the App., § 14, and study carefully the method of formation of all other cardinals. Review the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, in the App., §. 9, and *mille* in § 167.

OBSERVATIONS.

(a) The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* inclusive are indeclinable, as *quattuor milītēs*, *four soldiers*, *decem militum*, *of ten soldiers*.

(b) The multiples of *centum*, *ducentī*, *-ae*, *-a*, etc. are declined like the plural of *lātus*.

(c) In compounds such as *vīgintī duo*, *trīgintā ūnus*, *centum trēs*, etc. the declinable numeral retains its declension, as *vīgintī trium hominum*, *of twenty-three men*.

529.

VOCABULARY.

libertās, -tātis, f., *freedom*.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel.
adj., *how great? as great*.

coerceō, -erceōre, -erceui, -ercitus, *restrain, check*.

dubitō, 1, *doubt* (followed by quīn and the subj.), *hesitate* (followed by complementary inf.).

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bear through, carry through, endure to the end*.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand before, excel*; praestat, (impersonal), *it is preferable*.

530.

WRITTEN WORK.

(1) Decline **libertās** in the singular.

(2) Write in Latin *of 352 men, with three thousand soldiers, for four miles and the cardinals 545, 648*.

(3) Write a synopsis of **perferō** in the 2d singular active.

(4) Tabulate with meanings the infinitives and participles of **dubitō**.

531.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Quīngentōs equitēs mittāmus, quī Caesarī auxiliō sint.
(2) Caesar verēbātur ut Labiēnus cum mille militibus venīret.
(3) Lēgātōs mittēmus rogātum Caesarem quadringentōs milites.
(4) Liscus dēmum proposuit quantō cum periculō id fēcisset.
(5) Nōn nullī Aeduī timēbant nē Caesar libertātem ēreptūrus esset.
(6) Cāsū accidit ut quattuor milia militum Genāvae essent.
(7) Labiēnus rogāvit quās iniūriās Helvētīi finitimīs intulissent.
(8) Haec omnia Aeduīs diūtissimē perferenda sunt.

II. (1) Let us march to Geneva with two thousand soldiers.
(2) If Caesar had been present, our freedom would not have been snatched away.
(3) Would that our allies had not joined battle on that day.
(4) If the Swiss hate¹ the Romans, they will not lay down their arms.
(5) I fear that Caesar is greatly alarmed by the recent calamity.

¹ Remember that Latin is very exact as to tenses, always employing the tense that will precisely express the time. What is the time of this feeling of hatred?

532.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ei principes, qui privatim plus possunt quam magistratus ipsi, dicunt haec: "Praestat imperia Gallorum quam Romanorum perferre, si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non poterimus. Neque debemus dubitare quin Romani libertatem Aeduus una cum reliqua Gallia sint erepturi, si Helvetios superaverint."¹ Ei principes dicunt praestare imperia² etc. Dicunt neque se debere etc.² Liscus etiam haec dicit: "Nostra consilia quaeque in castris geruntur ab eisdem principibus hostibus enuntiantur. Hi a me coerceri non possunt. Quin etiam,³ quod necessario⁴ coactus rem Caesari enuntiavi, intellego quanto cum periculo id fecerim.¹ Ob eam causam quam diu⁵ potui taci." Liscus etiam dicit ab eisdem enuntiari nostra consilia² etc.; hos a se coerceri non posse² etc.; sese intellegere² quanto cum periculo rem Caesari enuntiaverit.¹

¹ Why subjunctive? § 488.

² The student will observe that this clause is the indirect form of a preceding sentence. This indirect form he should complete in Latin and then translate.

³ Quin etiam, but even, nay more.

⁴ necessario, abl. as adv. necessarily.

⁵ quam diu, as long as.

LESSON LXX.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *POSTQUAM*, *UBI*, *PRIUS-QUAM*.*—REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES.

533. *Liscus shows how these treacherous leaders secretly wish for the success of the Swiss. Acting as spies, they report Caesar's plans to the enemy and intimidate the magistrates so that Liscus, the absolute ruler, has feared to tell the truth.*

Praestare, si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre; neque dubitare debere quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua

* See remark regarding these clauses in the Syntactical Syllabus, page 281.

Galliā Aeduīs libertātem sint ereptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūtiārī: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūtiārīt, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse. [Cap. XVII. Finis.]

534.

MODEL SENTENCES.

(1) Ubi sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua incendērunt. — *When they thought they were ready, they set on fire their towns.*
 (2) Postquam Caesar id intellēxit, castra mōvit. — *After Caesar learned this, he moved his camp.* (3) Galli superiōra loca occupāverunt priusquam oppidum oppugnāverunt. — *The Gauls seized the heights before they attacked the town.* (4) Galli adventum Caesaris expectābant, priusquam oppidum oppugnārent. — *The Gauls were waiting for the arrival of Caesar before they attacked the town, (the presumption being that they did not attack at all).*

Observe:—

(1) that in sentences 1 and 2 **ubi**, *when*, and **postquam**, *after*, introduce Temporal Clauses and are followed by the perfect indicative.

(2) that in sentences 3 and 4 observe that **priusquam**, *before*, takes the indicative when the Temporal Clause states a Fact, the subjunctive when the Temporal Clause implies Purpose or Expectation.

535. RULE.—1. *The conjunctions postquam and ubi introduce temporal clauses and are followed by the perfect indicative.*

2. *Priusquam takes the indicative when its clause states a fact, the subjunctive when its clause implies purpose or expectation.*

536. SUMMARY OF USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.**I. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.**

1. Purpose { affirmative *ut* or *quī*, or *quō* with comparatives,
negative *nē*.
2. Result { affirmative *ut*,
negative *ut nōn*.
3. Cause and concession — *cum*.
4. Time — *cum* { Ind. with primary tenses.
Subj. with secondary tenses.
5. Substantive { verbs of fearing : *nē* affirmative, *ut* negative ;
perficīt, *accidit*, etc., or in
apposition with a substantive } *ut*.
6. Conditions in Protases { I. Present and Past Time.
(a) Simple — Ind. { Pres. Time — Imp. Subj.
(b) Contrary to Fact { Past Time — Plup. Subj.
II. Future Time.
(a) More Vivid — Ind.
(b) Less Vivid — Subj. Pres. or Perf.
7. Indirect Questions — interrogative pronoun, adjective, adverb, or particle.
8. Indirect Discourse, including *quod* Causal.
9. *Priusquam* { Ind. to state a fact ;
Subj. to imply purpose or expectation.

II. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

1. Commands and Exhortations { Subj. in 1st and 3d pers., negative *nē* ;
Imperative in 2d pers., negative *nōlī* or *nōlīte* with inf.
2. Wishes { Future — Possible — Pres. Subj.,
Pres. — Unfulfilled — Imp. Subj., *utinam* affirmative,
Past — Unfulfilled — Plup. Subj., *nē* negative.
3. Apodoses of Conditions } like protases in mood and tense.

537. WRITTEN WORK.

Tabulate as above the uses of the subjunctive, illustrating each variety by a short original Latin sentence.

538.

EXERCISES FOR PRACTICE.

I. (1) Ubi hostēs adortus est, sē fugae mandāverunt. (2) Postquam id Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitātum agminī praemisit. (3) Priusquam principēs convocāvit, castra mōvit. (4) Caesar adventum Labiēnī exspectābat, priusquam pācem cōfirmāret. (5) Cum Belgae suōs ex hibernīs ēdūxissent, Rōmānī eōs aggressi sunt. (6) Cum Labiēnus hibernīs nōn praeesset, milītēs verēbantur nē castra expugnārentur.

II. (1) After Caesar arrived, the enemy withdrew. (2) When Labienus crossed the river, he waited for Caesar. (3) Labienus will wait for Caesar before he will cross the river. (4) Let us find out who is in charge of this fortification. (5) Before he should attack the enemy, Caesar sent out scouts.

TENTH REVIEW.

I. List in a column with meanings and index as formerly directed the Latin nouns numbered 126, 127, 128, and the Latin adjectives numbered 92, 93, 94, in the Word List on pages 275-278.

II. List in a column with principal parts and meanings the Latin verbs numbered 147-171, inclusive, in the Word List on pages 275-278.

III. List in a column and number the Latin verbs meaning: *arrive, bear, be willing, be unwilling, hasten, cross, prohibit, receive, persuade, drive, drive back, put in command of, remove, take by storm, have, hinder, kill, order, conquer, burn, lay aside, accuse.*

Conjugate consecutively both in the present indicative and present subjunctive active the first six of these verbs as follows: the 1st singular of the first, the 2d singular of the second, the 3d singular of the third, the 1st plural of the fourth, etc.¹

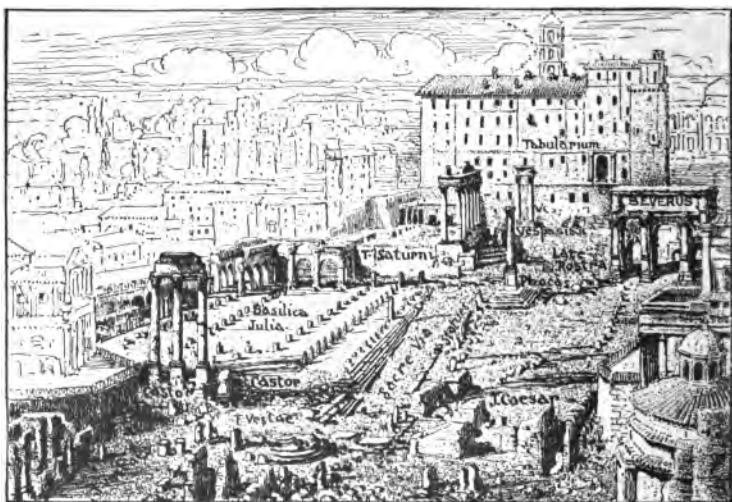
In like manner conjugate in the perfect indicative active and passive, the second six verbs, in the future indicative the third six, and in the imperfect subjunctive the last six.

¹ A model of this scheme will be found in the App. § 30.

IV. List in a column and number the verbs meaning: *set out, attempt, follow, use, attack, promise, get possession of*. Noting that all of the above verbs are deponents, tabulate consecutively with meanings the infinitives and participles.

V. Translate text at the head of Lessons LXVII-LXX, inclusive, pointing out all examples of the rules mentioned above.

VI. Arrange four columns, one each for the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, and place each of the following constructions under its proper heading, noting that four of these constructions should appear in more than one column: Direct Object, Indirect Object, Possessor, Specification, Extent of Time and Space, Time When, Place in Which, Place to Which, Place from Which, Verbs Compounded with Prepositions, *Ūtor*, etc., Special Verbs, the Whole, Means, Agency, Manner, Verbs of Asking, Demanding, etc., Degree of Difference, Cause, Subjective and Objective, Separation, Comparison, Verbs of Making, Choosing, etc., Absolute, Quality.



THE RUINS OF THE ROMAN FORUM. TO THE LEFT IS THE BASILICA, AN EDIFICE FOR COURTS AND BUSINESS OFFICES, ERECTED BY CAESAR. IN THE FOREGROUND IS THE TEMPLE OF THE DEIFIED CAESAR.

CHAPTERS XVIII-XXIX INCLUSIVE

OF

THE GALLIC WAR.

CONTINUING THE STORY OF CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN.

NOTE. — The student has now studied all forms and principles necessary to the reading of Caesar. The remainder of the story of the First Campaign must be read by reference to the general vocabulary, and with the aid of Development Exercises, which will no longer attempt to give a connected account of the story, but will be limited to a treatment of those sentences likely to present difficulty in their original form. Indirect Discourse will generally be simplified by giving in the Development Exercises the equivalent Direct Discourse, as has been done in the exercise immediately following. The English-Latin exercises occurring at the end of each chapter should be divided by the teacher into as many parts as the days required to complete a chapter. Lack of time may necessitate the omission of some of the sentences, but should not be permitted to crowd out of consideration the review of the principles involved as indicated by the references preceding each exercise. The sentences numbered in heavy type contain those constructions of most frequent occurrence, as indicated in the Syntactical Syllabus.

539.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Plūribus praesentibus, Caesar eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat. Itaque ex Dumnorīge sōlō ea quaerit. Tum Dumnorīx liberius et audācius dīcit. Caesar reperit haec esse vērā: Homō ipse erat Dumnorīx, homō summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum.

PART I.

540. *Liscus, when questioned in private, confirms Caesar's suspicion that Dumnorix is the mischief maker.*



THE SCUTUM, OR
HEAVY SHIELD OF
A LEGIONARIUS.

Caesar hāc orātiōne Lisci Dumnorīgem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rerū novārum.

541.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Dumnorix complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēbat. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxerat et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāverat.

Dumnorix māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alēbat et circum sē habēbat. Nōn solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter poterat. Huius potentiae causā mātrem hominī in Biturigibus illi nōbilissimō in mātrimonium collocāverat. Dumnorix ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēbat. Sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās in aliās civitātēs nūptum collocāverat.

PART II.

542. *By bullying other bidders, Dumnorix procures the contract for collecting the Aeduan taxes at a figure that enables him to accumulate a great fortune and bribe his way to popular favor. He further strengthens his hand by cleverly planned marriages with the princely houses of neighboring states.*

Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus



A ROMAN LE-
GIONARY STAND-
ARD.

et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātū suō sūptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nobilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātrem et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāsse.

543.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Propter eam affinitātem Helvētiīs favet et cupit.¹ Suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs oderat.² Si quid accidit Rōmānīs, in summam spem rēgnī obtinendī per Helvētiōs venit. Imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā grātiā quam habet dēspērat.

In quaerendō reperiēbat proelium³ equestre adversum, quod paucīs ante diēbus factum esset, initium eius fugae ā Dumnorīge et eius equitibus factum esse, eōrum fugā reliquum equitātum esse perterritum.

¹ cupit, *desires their success.*

² The pluperfect of the defective verb *odī* has the sense of the imperfect.

³ On inquiry he found out, in regard to the unfortunate cavalry battle, which had been fought a few days before, that the beginning of this flight had been, etc.

PART III.

544. *Dumnorix favors the Swiss on account of his Swiss wife and hates the Romans, hoping in the event of the latter's defeat to make himself a king. Caesar also finds out that Dumnorix had treacherously brought about the repulse in the cavalry skirmish a few days before.*

Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, oderat etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātie atque honoris sit restitūtus. Si quid accadat Rōmānīs, summam

in spem per Helvētios rēgni obtinendī venire; imperiō populi Rōmāni nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitātū, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

545.

EXERCISES.*

Review Ablative and Genitive of Quality in § 303, Dative of Purpose in § 457, Indirect Discourse in §§ 284-286.

(1) Caesar thought that Diviciacus was of a friendly spirit toward¹ him. (2) We desire our clients to be of great loyalty² toward¹ Caesar. (3) Caesar sent nine ships as a protection to this bridge. (4) We sent away the leaders who were not of great good will³ towards us. (5) Among the Swiss were very many retainers of distinguished loyalty. (6) This bank was fortified by a band of 500 cavalry. (7) Caesar replied that the soldiers were of remarkable good will³ towards himself. (8) This town had been fortified by a wall of sixteen feet. (9) Caesar hoped that the senate would be (fut. inf.) of friendly disposition toward him. (10) Caesar perceived that the seventh legion had been left as an aid to him. (11) A bridge was made over (in) this river with rafts. (12) The senate replied that this was (for) a great calamity to them. (13) Very many soldiers assembled at the banks of the Rhone as an aid to Caesar. (14) Caesar ordered the soldiers to march one by one. (15) A space of fifteen feet intervened between the bank of the river and these buildings.

¹ in with acc.² fidēs.³ voluntās.

* See Note, p. 215.

CHAPTER XIX.

546.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Ad hās suspīciōnes certissimae rēs accēdēbant, quod ¹ Dumnorix obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, ² quod ¹ ea omnia, Caesare et civitāte inscientibus, fēcisset. Eās rēs satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum animadverteret. ³ His omnibus rēbus ūnum resistēbat, quod ¹ Diviciāci summum studium in ⁴ populum Rōmānum cōgnōverat.

¹ quod, conj., trans. *the fact that*.

² dandōs cūrasset, see § 470, note 2.

³ in eum animadverteret, indirect question, transl. *punish him*.

⁴ in, towards.

PART I.

547. *Having learned these facts regarding Dumnorix, and having confirmed his suspicions regarding him, Caesar thought he had good reason to punish him or order the Aeduians to do so. Regard for his brother, Diviciacus, stays Caesar's hand.*

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnes certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquānōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstīam, temperantiām cōgnōverat.



PILA, OR HEAVY JAVELIN, THROWN AT THE BEGINNING OF A BATTLE.

548.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per Cāium Valerium Troucillum cum Diviciācō Caesar colloquitur. Hic Troucillus fuit princeps Galliae prōvinciae et familiāris Caesaris, cui¹ Caesar summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat. Caesar commonefacit quae ipsō² praesente dicta sint. Caesar hortātur ut ipse³ dē eō statuāt.

¹ cui, dative after expression of trusting, transl. *in whom*.

² ipsō praesente, ablative absolute, transl. *in his presence*.

³ ipse like ipsō above refers to Caesar.

PART II.

549. *Caesar's fear that he would wound the feelings of Diviciacus leads him to consult with his faithful ally before deciding upon the punishment of Dumnorix.*

Nam nē eius supplicio Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Troucillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in concilio Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

550.

EXERCISES.

Review Objective and Subjective Genitive in § 450, Genitive of the Whole, § 166, and Demonstrative Pronouns in § 66, 74, App. 16.

(1) Very many of his soldiers were driven back almost in sight of Caesar. (2) A space of nine miles intervened daily between the cavalry and the rest of the army. (3) A garrison of sixteen soldiers was left there as an aid to the cavalry. (4) The good will of that whole army was sought by Labienus. (5) The Swiss were elated by the memory of this victory. (6) The senate was greatly

alarmed by the bold plots of this leader. (7) The whole number of their soldiers returned to that camp without hope of victory. (8) On the arrival of five legions of the army, Caesar decided to join battle. (9) Without the aid of the cavalry, Caesar will not attempt to follow the enemy. (10) Many of the Swiss were greatly alarmed by their recent change of fortune.

CHAPTER XX.

551. DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diviciācus Caesarem complexus est. Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit hīs verbis :

“Sciō* illa¹ esse vĕra. Nec quisquam ex eō plūs dolōris capit*² quam ego. Plūs dolōris capiō propterea quod, cum (when) ego domi atque in reliquā Galliā grātiā³ plūrimum poteram,† Dumnorix minimum propter adulescentiam poterat.† Per me grātiā crevit.† Quibus⁴ opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam meam grātiā sed pæne ad meam perniciem ūtitur.”†

¹ illa, those charges.

² capit, takes, i.e. feels grief.

³ grātiā plūrimum posse, to be very great in influence.

⁴ Quibus: translate as demonstrative. Why?

PART I.

552. *With tears and embraces, the frightened prince entreats Caesar not to decide upon anything too severe against his brother, in spite of the fact that Dumnorix is using power acquired through Diviciacus to the latter's ruin.*

Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frārem statueret: Scire sē illa esse

* † In the Indirect Discourse in Part I, those verbs marked with an asterisk become infinitives, while those marked with a dagger become subjunctive. Why?

vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per sē crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūteretur.

553.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Diviciacus continues his plea for his brother's life.

Ego tamen commoveor et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī. Quod si¹ quid gravius Dumnorigī acciderit,² cum ego eum locum amicitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit id nōn meā voluntāte factum esse. Quā ex rē erit³ utī tōtius Galliae animī ā me āvertantur."

Haec cum (*when*) ā Caesare petit, Caesar rogat ut finem orandī faciat.

¹ quod si, but if.

² acciderit, future perfect becomes pluperfect subjunctive in the Indirect Discourse in Part II, being a subordinate clause after a secondary tense. Why does the present subjunctive āvertantur become imperfect subjunctive?

³ erit, will be, i.e. will come to pass.

PART II.

554. *Love for his brother and regard for popular opinion will not permit Diviciacus to consent to the punishment of Dumnorix. Moved by the tears of Diviciacus, Caesar consoles him.*

Sēsē¹ tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat, finem orandī faciat.

¹ A verb of saying must be understood before sēsē.

555.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar Diviciacō ostendit eius grātiā¹ apud sē esse tantī ut eius voluntātī² iniūriam condōnet. Dumnorīgī ostendit quae in eō reprehendat.³ Quae civitās querātur,³ prōpōnit. Dicit sē Diviciacō² praeterita condōnāre. Caesar scit quae agat,³ quibuscum loquātur.³

¹ grātiā . . . tantī, his favor is of so much weight with him.

² Dative, indirect object of condōnō; translate, he forgives the wrong in consideration of etc.

³ Indirect Question; quae is an interrogative pronoun.

PART III.

556. *Caesar summons Dumnorix and, in the presence of his brother, warns him of the danger in which he stands. Caesar then puts spies on the track of the ambitious Gaul to insure his good behavior.*

Tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, utī et rei publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgēm ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

557.

EXERCISES.

Review Dative with Special Verbs in § 254, Ablative with Ūtor, etc., in § 295, Optative Subjunctive in §§ 513 and 514.

- (1) Oh that we may persuade the Swiss not to attack those forts. (2) We think that the senate is opposing Caesar. (3) The Swiss were-anxious-for (studēs) the forts. (4) Oh that we had not relied on our recent victory. (5) They were using these buildings also (as) a protection. (6) On account of their desire of freedom, the hostages were anxious for a change of fortune. (7) Caesar likewise relied on the loyalty of these nine legions.

(8) Would that our leader had got-possession-of the buildings of this town. (9) Caesar did not allow his allies to use treachery. (10) For this reason, the fathers of these children opposed the customs of the Gauls. (11) Orgetorix wished to use the influence of his relatives. (12) On account of his recent victory, the Gauls were-anxious-for Caesar's good will. (13) Caesar did not use the cavalry before the fourth watch. (14) On account of his kindness, we are-anxious-for peace. (15) Oh that our friends had not resisted his kindness.

CHAPTER XXI.

558.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse. Certior factus etc., Caesar misit (hominēs) qui¹ cōgnōscerent quālis² in circuitū³ ascēnsus esset. Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, iubet summum iugum montis ascendere. Cum eīs ducibus,⁴ qui iter cōgnōverant, Labiēnum montem ascendere iubet. Cum explorātōribus Cōnsidius praemittitur.

¹ qui cōgnōscerent, Relative Clause of Purpose.

² quālis . . . esset, Indirect Question.

³ in circuitū, in a roundabout way (so as not to be seen by the enemy at the foot of the mountain).

⁴ ducibus, an appositive of eīs, with those as guides who etc. (i.e. the hominēs sent out before).

559. Caesar lays a cunning trap to catch the Swiss by sending Labienus up the mountain above their camp while he himself is to attack them in front. Considius, a Gaul with a high military reputation, takes part in the enterprise.

Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, qui cōgnōscerent, misit. Renūtiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum,

lĕgātum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui cōnsili sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōsidius, qui rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.



NEAR HERE CAESAR PLANNED TO TRAP THE SWISS.

560.

EXERCISES.

Review Genitive and Dative with Adjectives, §§ 278, 450, 2; Indirect Question, § 488; Relative Pronouns, §§ 81-83.

(1) These leaders also were skilled in military affairs. (2) They did not desist, because they were desirous of victory. (3) Caesar wondered why (quārē) the leaders had not enrolled five legions. (4) Meanwhile they replied that their legions were friendly to the enemy. (5) The soldiers desired to know what military standards had been captured. (6) Caesar wished to find out what legions were desirous of battle. (7) Around the military standards were those soldiers most skilled in fighting.¹ (8) Caesar

¹ For the word "fighting" use the gerund of pugnō. For case see § 450 (2).

led out the soldiers who were most friendly to him. (9) The rivers which arise in the mountains are nearest the ocean. (10) Our fathers, who were very skilled in military affairs, engaged-in (*faciō*) many battles.

CHAPTER XXII.

561.

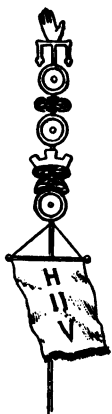
DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Cum (*when*) summus mōns¹ ā Labiēnō tenērētur, cum ipse² ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus³ abesset, cum neque aut ipsius² adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō⁴ ad eum accurrit. Cōnsidius dīcit montem ab hostibus tenēri, sē id ā Gallicis insīgnibus cōgnōvisse.

PART I.

562. *When Caesar has his trap all ready to spring, with Labienus above the enemy and his own forces in front and neither observed, Considius rushes up with an important piece of misinformation.*

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.



A ROMAN Co-MONT STANDARD.

¹ summus mōns, the top of the hill.

² ipse and ipsius refer to Caesar.

³ passibus, Ablative of Degree of Difference.

⁴ equō admissō, his horse let go, i.e. on a gallop.

563.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Labiēnō¹ erat praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret. Erat praeceptum nē Labiēnus proelium committeret nisi ipsius² cōpiaē visae essent. Id erat praeceptum ut³ impetus undique ūnō tempore in hostēs fieret. Labiēnus, ut³ ei¹ ā Caesare praeceptum erat, proeliō abstinēbat. Multō¹ diē Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā Labiēnō tenēri. Caesar item cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse. Cōnsidius, timōre perterritus, Caesarī renūntiāverat prō visō⁵ id quod nōn viderat.⁶

¹ Indirect Object of praeceptum erat, translate as if subject, though the actual subject is the order given. See § 498.

² I.e. Caesar's forces.

³ ut with the subjunctive means *that* or *so that*; with the indicative ut means *as*.

⁴ multō diē, *late in the day*.

⁵ prō visō, *as seen*.

⁶ viderat in the Indirect Discourse in Part II becomes subjunctive. Why?

PART II.

564. *Labienus, unable to understand why Caesar did not attack the Swiss in front, waited for his commander according to orders. The Swiss, becoming aware of the danger of their situation, decamped, leaving Caesar to find out how he had been misled through the foolish imagination of Considius. Caesar then resumes his pursuit of the Swiss at the usual distance.*

Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiaē prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupatō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset, prō visō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuerat intervallō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

565.

EXERCISES.

Review Ablative of Degree of Difference, § 365; Ablative of Comparison, § 351; Ablative of Specification, § 122; Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs, §§ 104, 105, 309, 310, App., §§ 12, 13.

(1) Caesar did not follow the enemy more than twelve miles. (2) In the second watch the enemy were in all more than five miles away from our camp. (3) These territories are wider than territories which border on the ocean. (4) The rivers which arise in the mountains are more than five miles away from our camp. (5) The Swiss are much more powerful in arms than the Allobroges. (6) The Gauls began to burn their towns, twelve in number. (7) Our camp was pitched twelve miles away from this town. (8) These roads are greater in width than the roads of Gaul. (9) Our army underwent far greater dangers than (did) the Gauls. (10) The Aedui obtained their request from Caesar more easily than (did) the Belgians.

CHAPTER XXIII.

566.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Biduum omnino supererat, cum¹ frumentum exercitus metiri oporteret. Bibracte erat oppidum Aeduorum longe maximum et copiosissimum. Quod a Bibracte non amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei² frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit. Helvetii existimaverunt, Romanos timore perterritos, a se discedere. Helvetii id eo³ magis existimaverunt, quod (because) pridie Romani, superioribus locis a Labieno occupatis, proelium non commisissent.⁴ Helvetii, seu quod id existimarent,⁴ sive eo,³ quod confiderent⁴ Romanos re frumentaria intercludi posse,

¹ cum, to the time when.

² rei frumentariae, dative after pro in composition; transl. he thought he ought to look out for provisions.

³ eo, Ablative of Cause; transl. on this account.

⁴ Subjunctive, because Caesar is stating the reasoning of the Swiss. See § 522.

cōsiliū commūtāverunt. Cōsiliō commūtātō et itinere conversō, nostrōs Insequi coepērunt.

567. *The next day Caesar abandons his pursuit of the Swiss in order to go to Bibracte after provisions. The Swiss now turn around and follow Caesar, either because they believe him afraid of them or because they hope to cut him off from supplies. They thus give him the advantage of choosing the battle field.*

Postriḋiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat, cum exercitūi frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmentāriæ prōspiciendum existimāvit; iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per



ON THE HILL IN THE BACKGROUND WAS THE OLD TOWN OF BIBRACTE.

fugitiḋōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis, quod priḋiē, superiōribus locis occu-

pātis, proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine Insequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

568.

EXERCISES.

Review Ablative of Means, § 97; Ablative of Cause, § 137; Quod Causal, § 522; Ablative Absolute, § 262.

(1) On account of his popularity, Dumnorix gained his request from the people. (2) Driven back by the onset of our (men), the enemy hid themselves in the woods. (3) When this thing was announced (abl. abs.), Caesar began to make an attack on the enemy. (4) Since the enemy had drawn up their line of battle, Caesar placed his legions at intervals. (5) By leading away the horses (abl. abs.), Caesar cut off all hope of flight. (6) Caesar placed the cavalry and horses around the military standards because the soldiers were thoroughly alarmed. (7) Having called his lieutenants to a council of war, Caesar showed them how great the danger was. (8) Our army hastened to cross the river by joining boats together (abl. abs.). (9) Caesar blamed his lieutenants because they had not attacked the enemy. (10) Driven back on account of the speed of the enemy's onset, our men desisted from the attack on (of) the fortification.

CHAPTER XXIV.

569.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar id¹ animum advertit. In mediō colle² triplicem³ aciem legionū quattuor veterānārum instrūxit. Duās legiōnēs, quās

¹ id, acc. after ad in composition; literally, *Caesar turns his mind to this*, i.e. *notices this*.

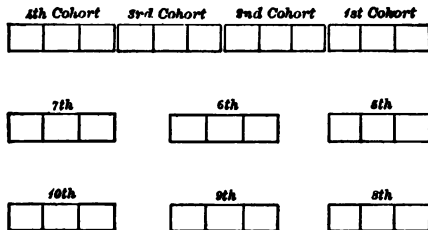
² in mediō colle, *on the middle of the hill, halfway up*. Caesar needed such a vantage ground from which to hurl the heavy javelins with force.

³ triplicem, *in three ranks*, the first two of which took turns in engaging the enemy in front, while the third remained in the rear as a reserve.

proximē cōscripserat, in summō iugō¹ collocārī iussit. Iussit duās legiōnēs et omnia auxilia in summō iugō collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī. Helvētiī, cōnfertissimā² aciē, phalange factā, successērunt.

570. *Caesar selects a hill as a battle ground and arranges his small force with consummate skill. The Swiss, outnumbering him four to one, expose themselves to the Roman javelins in a solid mass.*

Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās³ in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iis, quī in superioriōre aciē cōstitērant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.



THE TRIPLE BATTLE LINE.

571. EXERCISES.

Review Dative with Compound Verbs, § 394; Accusative with Compound Verbs, § 459; Double Accusatives, §§ 503-507.

(1) Caesar placed Labienus in charge of the line of battle which he had drawn up. (2) Caesar dismissed the assembly

¹ in summō iugō (compare *summus mōns*), on the top of the ridge. The raw recruits and the auxilia, consisting of Gallic cavalry, bowmen and slingers, could not be depended upon for serious fighting; and so are put in a safe place where they would appear formidable to the ignorant Swiss.

² A rude square or phalanx proved an admirable target for the Roman javelins.

³ For *sarcinae* carried by marching soldier, see cut on page 195.

and led his forces across the river. (3) The leaders perceived that the tenth legion was not present at the battle. (4) Caesar asked why the tenth legion had not crossed the river of their own accord. (5) Meanwhile the lieutenant who was in charge of the military standards withstood the attack of the enemy. (6) Having drawn up a triple line of battle (abl. abs.), Caesar was anxious for the onset. (7) Caesar was anxious (*cupiō*) to know which legion had crossed the river first. (8) The tenth legion surpassed all the others in bravery and (*atque*) loyalty. (9) His friends elected Caesar consul at Rome. (10) Labienus was selected lieutenant on account of his distinguished bravery.

CHAPTER XXV.

572.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar, primum suum equum, deinde equos omnium¹ ex conspectu removit, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret. Caesar, primum suo equo remoto, deinde equis omnium ex conspectu remotis, cohortatus suos, proelium commisit. Milites Romani primum pila² miserunt e superiore loco. Pilis³ missis, hostium phalangem facile perforaverunt. Ea phalange disiecta, gladios destrinxerunt. Gladiis destitutis in eos impetum fecerunt. Plura hostium scuta uno ictu pilorum transfixa et conligata sunt. Eis scutis conligatis,⁴ cum (*when*)



THE ROMANS FIRST
HURLED THE
HEAVY JAVELINS
AND THEN
CHARGED WITH
DRAWN SWORDS.

¹ omnium, i.e. of all the mounted officers.

² This was the regular method of fighting on the part of the Romans: first, to disorganize the ranks of the enemy by a series of volleys of javelins; and then, to charge the demoralized foe with swords.

³ pilum, a long heavy spear intended for throwing and not thrusting.

⁴ The enemy were so crowded together that their large scuta overlapped and were easily pinned together.

ferrum¹ sē inflexisset, id ēvellere nōn poterant. Neque pila ēvellere neque sinistra impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, ut multī, bracchiō² diū iactātō, praēoptārent nūdō corpore³ pūgnāre.

¹ ferrum, the iron neck of the javelin was purposely made soft so as to bend and render the weapon useless to the enemy.

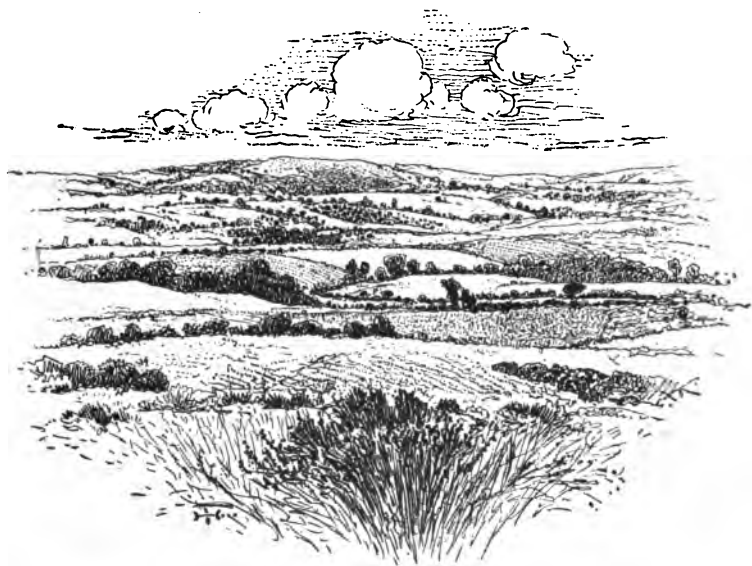
² bracchiō diū iactātō, after their arms had been tossed about for a long time.

³ nūdō corpore, with body exposed.

PART I.

573. *The javelins hurled down upon the Swiss demoralize their crowded throng, whose bravery avails nothing against the military science of the Romans.*

Caesar, primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilīs missis facile



THE BATTLE GROUND FROM CAESAR'S POSITION.

hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimētō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtis unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant; multī ut diū iactātō bracciō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre.

574.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE. .

Coepērunt et pedem referre¹ et eō² sē recipere. Bōiī et Tulingī agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant. Aggressī nostrōs ex itinere³ ab latere apertō,⁴ Bōiī et Tulingī circumvenīre coepērunt. Monte ab Helvētiīs captō⁵ et nostris succēdentibus, Bōiī et Tulingī nostrōs circumvenīre coepērunt. Helvētiī, id cōspicātī, rūsus instāre coepērunt. Rōmānī signa convertērunt⁶ et bipertitō intulērunt.

¹ pedem referre, to withdraw. Literally, what?

² eō, adv., thither.

³ ex itinere modifies nostrōs, they attacked ours on the march, i.e. while marching in pursuit of the Swiss.

⁴ ab latere apertō, on the exposed flank, i.e. on the rear and side exposed in swinging around after the retreating Swiss.

⁵ monte captō et nostris succēdentibus, ablative absolutes; translate by temporal clauses, making captō mean reach.

⁶ The third line had to turn around to resist the Boii and Tulingi behind them.

PART II.



BOWMAN. CAESAR'S AIDS CONSISTED OF GALLIC CAVALRY, BOWMEN AND SLINGERS.

575. *The Swiss give way and withdraw to a near-by hill. The Romans while pursuing them are exposed to a very dangerous attack in the rear. The third and rear line wheels about to face the new foe.*

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv

agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire; et id cōspiciatī Helvētiī, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

576.

EXERCISES.

Review Ablative of Accompaniment, § 89; Ablative of Manner, § 318; Subjunctive of Purpose and Result, §§ 220, 228; Substantive Clauses, §§ 442, 443.

(1) Labienus will exhort the soldiers to fight boldly. (2) Caesar feared that the Aedui would not be able to sustain the attack of the Swiss. (3) That he might not be cut off from nearer Gaul,



HILL WHERE THE BOII AND TULINGI ATTACKED.

Caesar hastened to attack the cavalry with two legions. (4) Caesar feared that the enemy would use swords and heavy javelins in this battle. (5) It happened that our soldiers had been cut off

from their baggage. (6) For sixteen days, Caesar followed up the cavalry with the light-armed (*expeditus*) soldiers. (7) Our soldiers attacked the town with such violence that they received many wounds. (8) Caesar seized the heights, that his men might harass the enemy more easily. (9) On account of their recent disgrace, Caesar did not lead this legion with him. (10) It happened that Caesar had enrolled five legions there.

CHAPTER XXVI.

PART I.

577. *After a long double-headed battle, the Swiss and their allies withdraw, stubbornly fighting among the baggage wagons till late at night.*

Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque æriter pugnatum est.¹ Diūtius cum² sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri³ sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,⁴ cum⁵ ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnatum sit,¹ āversum⁶ hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod prō vallō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tela coniciēbant, et nōn nulli inter carrōs raedāsque matarās æc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum⁷ esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti sunt.

¹ pugnatum est, passive of an intransitive verb used impersonally; translate *they fought*.

² cum, causal.

³ alteri . . . alteri, *the one party* (the Swiss) . . . *the other party* (the Boli and Tulingi).

⁴ proeliō, ablative instead of accusative to express Duration of Time, especially common with a noun modified by tōtus.

⁵ cum, concessive.

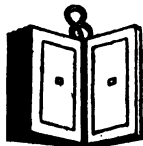
⁶ āversum, *turned in flight*.

⁷ cum, temporal. Why followed by subjunctive?

PART II.

578. *Bereft of food, shelter, and hope, a dejected multitude of one hundred and thirty thousand men, women, and children, worn with the fatigue and anxieties of battle, press forward across a strange country all night long and for three days thereafter in a vain effort to escape the Roman conqueror. Though so severely crippled himself as to feel unable to pursue them, Caesar sends messages ahead forbidding the Gallic natives to afford the wretched refugees the least aid or comfort. Three days later he sets out with all his forces to overhaul the demoralized host.*

Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō¹ pervēnērunt, cum² et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūrā occisōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque misit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī³ sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.



LETTERS WERE
WRITTEN ON
THIN, POLISHED
BOARDS COATED
WITH WAX.

579.**EXERCISES.**

Review Time When, § 202 ; Duration of Time and Extent of Space, § 174 ; Temporal Clauses, § 320.

- (1) For a space of four days Caesar will follow up the enemy.
(2) At sunset the Gauls sent messengers to announce the unfavorable battle. (3) Influenced by the kindness of Caesar, the Gauls

¹ diē quārtō, in three days (counting the day of battle made diē quārtō, on the fourth day).

² cum, causal. Caesar's loss must have been heavy. Why?

³ quī . . . habitūrum, Indirect Discourse habitūrum, future infinitive principal verb Indirect Discourse.

sought peace on the same day. (4) The Romans followed up the enemy for about sixteen miles with the light-armed (*expeditus*) cavalry. (5) Within five hours the enemy were driven back to their trenches. (6) On the previous day Caesar had engaged in battle that he might avenge this insult. (7) When Caesar had joined the ships together, he placed guards at intervals. (8) The ramparts were sixteen feet in width. (9) A few of our men fell while they were fighting fiercely around these ramparts. (10) After they had fought fiercely for three hours around the baggage, our men quickly withdrew into camp.

CHAPTER XXVII.

580.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Caesar obsidēs, arma, servōs poposcit. Dum ea¹ conquīruntur et cōferuntur, circiter VI milia hominum ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi² sunt. Ei hominēs sive timōre perterriti sunt nē armis trāditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti sunt, quod³ existimārent suam fugam in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum aut occultāri aut omnīnō ignōrāri posse. Sive timōre perterriti, sive spē salūtis inducti, primā nocte⁴ ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi, ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

581. *The Swiss, without baggage or provisions, are forced to sue for peace. Six thousand attempt to escape across the Rhine to Germany.*

Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adducti, lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōieciissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent,

¹ ea, these, i.e. obsidēs, servōs, and arma.

² ēgressi agrees with milia in sense, not form.

³ quod, causal. Why followed by subjunctive?

⁴ primā nocte, in the evening. Compare primā luce, multō diū.

atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs tradītis supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dediticiōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō Ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

582.

EXERCISES.

Review Place to Which and from Which, §§ 235, 236; Place in Which, §§ 243, 244; Ablative of Separation, § 68; Reflexive Pronouns, §§ 182-184.

(1) Having been driven back into camp, our (men) were cut off from their baggage. (2) In this battle, the Gauls used long swords and broad shields. (3) After receiving many wounds, their (men) retreated (*sē recipere*) into camp. (4) At sunset, the soldiers left the ramparts that they might harass the enemy. (5) Our (men) were driven back from the ramparts of the enemy by their long javelins. (6) The Romans cut to pieces the enemy, who had hidden themselves in the woods. (7) At Rome, Caesar enrolled two new legions. (8) The legions, which were wintering at Geneva, did not leave their winter quarters. (9) The enemy used their javelins and swords in order to drive back the Romans from their ramparts. (10) The legion that left Rome with Labienus was cut to pieces at Geneva.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

583.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Quod¹ ubi² Caesar rescīit, hīs, quōrum per finēs sex mīlia ierant, imperāvit utī conquīrerent et redūcerent. Eōs reductōs

¹ quod, an initial relative; translate as demonstrative.

² ubi, when.

in numerō hostium¹ habuit. Omnibus frūgibus amissis, nihil domi erat Helvētiis, quō famem tolerārent. Quod nihil domi erat, Caesar Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut Helvētiis frūmenti cōpiam facerent.

¹ in numerō hostium, a polite way of saying that Caesar butchered the whole six thousand in order to teach the Gauls the necessity of keeping faith with the new Roman governor.



THE LAST STAND: THE SCENE OF THE FIGHT OVER THE BAGGAGE WAGONS.

PART I.

584. *Caesar recaptures and slaughters the six thousand. The others are received in surrender. The Swiss are ordered back to their desolate country, to be fed for a time on the supplies of Roman allies.*

Quod ubi Caesar resciiit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his utī cōquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit;

reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, reverti iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.

585.

DEVELOPMENT EXERCISE.

Helvētiōs ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit agrum Helvētiōrum vacāre. Nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī in finēs Helvētiōrum trānsirent. Timēbat nē finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Germānī essent. Aeduī petiērunt ut Bōiōs in suis finibus collocārent. Id petiērunt quod Bōiī ēgregiā virtūte cōgnitī erant. Aeduīs¹ petentibus ut Bōiōs in suis finibus collocārent Caesar concessit. Quibus Bōiīs Aeduī agrōs dedērunt et quōs (Bōiōs) postea in parem condiciōnem iūris et libertātis recēpērunt.

¹ Aeduīs, dative after concessit. This makes ut . . . collocārent the direct object of petentibus. Translate freely, *Caesar granted the request of the Aeduī that they might settle, etc.*

PART II.

586. *Caesar makes Switzerland a buffer state between the Germans and the Roman province. He permits his faithful allies, the Aeduī, to strengthen themselves by annexing to their state the brave Bōiī.*

Ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōs-

que postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, recepērunt.

587.

EXERCISES.

Review Genitive and Dative of Possessor, §§ 76, 396; and Conditional Sentences, §§ 479-482. (Express possession in following sentences by the Dative of Possessor.)

(1) Caesar had many relatives who were wounded in that battle. (2) If these messengers had been wounded, we would not have been led back in safety. (3) If their fathers should be handed over, these boys would return home. (4) Our soldiers had heavy shields and long swords, with which they wounded very many of the enemy. (5) If the enemy conceal themselves in the woods, our men will be led back to their ramparts. (6) The leader wondered how many of the horses had been wounded in this battle. (7) The messengers handed over the shields which they had to our men. (8) The wounds which the cavalryman had were received in the recent battle. (9) Our soldiers had nothing left except their swords and shields. (10) If the enemy were to withstand the attack of our cavalry, they would conquer.

CHAPTER XXIX.

588. *In the captured Swiss camp Caesar finds lists containing a census of the number of emigrants, men, women, and children. Out of 368,000 only 110,000 survivors were found. The Swiss now find their territories ample for their diminished numbers.*

In castris Helveticorum tabulae¹ repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae² et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim

¹ tabulae, lists; literally, tablets, presumably of wood bound together by a hinge and waxed inside after the Roman fashion.

² litteris Graecis confectae, made out in Greek characters. The Gauls may have become familiar with the simpler method of notation through the Greek traders from Marseilles.

ratio cōfecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rerum summa erat capitum¹ Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiv, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eōrum, qui domum redierunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

¹ *capitum*, literally, *heads*, as we say *head of cattle*. Translate, *persons*.

589.

EXERCISES.

Review Ablative and Dative of Agency, §§ 193, 425; Periphrastic Conjugations, § 423; Adjectives with genitive in *-ius*, §§ 144, 145.

(1) These children must be led back into safety by us. (2) This assembly ought to be dismissed by Caesar before the flight of the whole army. (3) After the heights have been seized (abl. abs.) by us, the Romans are going to pitch their camp there. (4) The children of our soldiers must not be sent under the yoke of the Gauls. (5) On the next day a triple line of battle was drawn up by Caesar before the town. (6) When the messengers return, the children are going to leave the camp. (7) The Gauls must not be despised by us on account of this unsuccessful battle. (8) We are going to exhort the tenth legion to come at the critical moment (*i.e.* at the necessary time). (9) Caesar knows that he must win over the minds of the Gauls by another victory. (10) Caesar is not going to allow the messengers to leave the camp before sunset.

APPENDIX
AND
VOCABULARIES.



TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, COMPARISONS, AND NUMERALS.

NOUNS.

1. FIRST DECLENSION — STEMS IN -a.

	<i>fossa, f., ditch.</i>		<i>provincia, f., province.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	fossa	fossae	prōvincia	prōvinciae
<i>Genitive</i>	fossae	fossarum	prōvinciae	prōvinciarum
<i>Dative</i>	fossae	fossis	prōvinciae	prōvinciis
<i>Accusative</i>	fossam	fossās	prōvinciam	prōvinciās
<i>Ablative</i>	fossā	fossis	prōvinciā	prōvinciis

2. SECOND DECLENSION.

	<i>Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul.</i>		<i>oppidum, -i, n., town.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	Gallus	Galli	oppidum	oppida
<i>Genitive</i>	Galli	Gallōrum	oppidi	oppidōrum
<i>Dative</i>	Gallō	Gallis	oppidō	oppidis
<i>Accusative</i>	Gallum	Gallōs	oppidum	oppida
<i>Ablative</i>	Gallō	Gallis	oppidō	oppidis
<i>Vocative</i>	Galle			

	<i>ager, -i, m., field.</i>		<i>puer, -i, m., f., child.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	ager	agri	puer	pueri
<i>Genitive</i>	agri	agrōrum	pueri	puerōrum
<i>Dative</i>	agrō	agris	puerō	pueris
<i>Accusative</i>	agrum	agrōs	puerum	puerōs
<i>Ablative</i>	agrō	agris	puerō	pueris

3.

THIRD DECLENSION.

a. CONSONANT STEMS.

	<i>lēx, f., law.</i>		<i>virtūs, f., bravery.</i>		<i>mercātor, m., trader.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>mercātor</i>	<i>mercātōrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>lēgis</i>	<i>lēgum</i>	<i>virtūtis</i>	<i>virtūtum</i>	<i>mercātōris</i>	<i>mercātōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>lēgi</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>virtūti</i>	<i>virtūtibus</i>	<i>mercātōri</i>	<i>mercātōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lēgem</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>virtūtem</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>mercātōrem</i>	<i>mercātōrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>lēge</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>virtūte</i>	<i>virtūtibus</i>	<i>mercātore</i>	<i>mercātōribus</i>

	<i>cōsul, m., consul.</i>		<i>nōbilitās, f., nobility.</i>		<i>flūmen, n., river.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>nōbilitās</i>	no plural	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>nōbilitātis</i>		<i>flūminis</i>	<i>flūminum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cōsuli</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>nōbilitāti</i>		<i>flūmini</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>nōbilitātem</i>		<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>nōbilitāte</i>		<i>flūmine</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>

4.

b. I-STEMS.

	<i>pars, f., part.</i>		<i>finis, m., f., end.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>pars</i>	<i>partēs</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>finēs</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>partis</i>	<i>partium</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>finium</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>parti</i>	<i>partibus</i>	<i>fini</i>	<i>finibus</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>partem</i>	<i>partēs (is)</i>	<i>finem</i>	<i>finēs (is)</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>parte</i>	<i>partibus</i>	<i>fine (i)</i>	<i>finibus</i>

	<i>hostis, m., enemy.</i>		<i>vectigal, n., tax.</i>	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>vectigal</i>	<i>vectigālia</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>vectigālis</i>	<i>vectigālium</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>hosti</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>vectigāli</i>	<i>vectigālibus</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>vectigal</i>	<i>vectigālia</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>vectigāli</i>	<i>vectigālibus</i>

5.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

STEM IN U.

	passus, m., pace.		cornū, n., horn.		domus, f., house.	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nom.</i>	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum	domūs	{ domuum, domōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	passui	passibus	cornū	cornibus	{ domui, domō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua	domum	{ domūs, domōs
<i>Abl.</i>	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus	{ domū, domō	domibus
<i>Loc.</i>					domi	

6.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

	diēs, m., f., day.		rēs, f., thing.	
	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>Nominative</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Genitive</i>	diēi	dierum	rei	rērum
<i>Dative</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Accusative</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Ablative</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES.

7.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

lātus, wide.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	lātus	lāta	lātum	lāti	lātae	lāta
<i>Gen.</i>	lāti	lātae	lāti	lātorum	lātarum	lātorum
<i>Dat.</i>	lātō	lātae	lātō	lātis	lātis	lātis
<i>Acc.</i>	lātum	lātam	lātum	lātōs	lātas	lāta
<i>Abl.</i>	lātō	lātā	lātō	lātis	lātis	lātis

8.

liber, free.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberi	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberi	liberae	liberi	liberorum	liberarum	liberorum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberis	liberis	liberis
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberis	liberis	liberis

noster, our.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrorum	nostrarum	nostrorum
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostris	nostris	nostris
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostris	nostris	nostris

9. ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVES IN *-ius* — DECLINABLE NUMERALS.

Nine adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have the genitive singular in *-ius* (in *alter* usually *-ius*) and the dative singular in *-ī* in all genders. These are *alius, another, sōlus, only, tōtus, whole, ūllus, any, nūllus, no, ūnus, one, alter, the other, uter, which* (of two), *neuter, neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in *lātus*.

SINGULAR.

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	alteri	alteri	alteri
<i>Acc.</i>	aliūm	aliām	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -is	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

10.

THIRD DECLENSION.

*One Termination.**audax, bold.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nominative</i>	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
<i>Genitive</i>	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
<i>Dative</i>	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Accusative</i>	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
<i>Ablative</i>	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus

liberāns (Present Participle), freeing.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	liberāns	liberāns	liberantēs	liberantia
<i>Gen.</i>	liberantis	liberantis	liberantium	liberantium
<i>Dat.</i>	liberanti	liberanti	liberantibus	liberantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	liberantem	liberāns	liberantis, -ēs	liberantia
<i>Abl.</i>	liberante, -i	liberante, -i	liberantibus	liberantibus

*Two Terminations.**fortis, brave.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nominative</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Genitive</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
<i>Dative</i>	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Accusative</i>	fortem	forte	fortis, -ēs	fortia
<i>Ablative</i>	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus

* All present participles, many of which are used as adjectives, e.g. *oriēns*, are declined as adjectives of one ending.

*Three Terminations.**celer, swift.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celerēs	celerīa
<i>Gen.</i>	celeris	celeris	celeris	celerium	celerium	celerium
<i>Dat.</i>	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
<i>Acc.</i>	celerem	celerem	celere	celeris, -ēs	celeris, -ēs	celerīa
<i>Abl.</i>	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

ācer, fierce.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīa
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrīum	ācrīum	ācrīum
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācrīa
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

11. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

	<i>fortior, braver.</i>				<i>plūs, more.</i>		
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		MAS., FEM., NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.
	MAS., FEM.	NEU.	MAS., FEM.	NEU.			
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūs	plūres	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	plūs	plūres	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

12. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
malus, <i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus
māgnus, <i>large</i>	māior	maximus
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor	minimus
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimus

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis, easy</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult</i>	<i>difficilior</i>	<i>difficillimus</i>
<i>similis, like</i>	<i>similior</i>	<i>simillimus</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike</i>	<i>dissimilior</i>	<i>dissimillimus</i>
<i>humilis, low</i>	<i>humilior</i>	<i>humillimus</i>
<i>gracilis, slender</i>	<i>gracilior</i>	<i>gracillimus</i>
<i>(prae, before)</i>	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>primus, first</i>
<i>(citrā, this side of)</i>	<i>citerior, hither</i>	<i>citimus, hithermost</i>
<i>(ultrā, beyond)</i>	<i>ulterior, farther</i>	<i>ultimus, farthest, last</i>
<i>(in, intrā, in, within)</i>	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus, inmost</i>
<i>(prope, near)</i>	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, nearest, next</i>
<i>exterus, outside</i>	<i>exterior</i>	<i>extrēmus</i>
<i>inferus, below</i>	<i>inferior</i>	<i>īnfinus (imus)</i>
<i>posterus, behind</i>	<i>posterior</i>	<i>postrēmus</i>
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior</i>	<i>suprēmus (summus)</i>
<i>dives,¹ rich</i>	<i>{ divitior,</i> <i>{ ditior</i>	<i>{ divitissimus,</i> <i>{ ditissimus</i>

13. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, ill</i>	<i>pēius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>parum, (too) little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>diū, long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saeplissimē</i>
<i>māgnopere, greatly</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>māximē</i>

14. NUMERALS.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN.
1. <i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one</i>	<i>primus, -a, -um, first</i>	I
2. <i>duo, duae, duo, two</i>	<i>secundus (alter), second</i>	II
3. <i>trēs, tria, three</i>	<i>tertius, third</i>	III
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>	IIII or IV
5. <i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>	V
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	VI

¹ The only irregularity of *dives* is its showing two bases *divit* and *dit*.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	ROMAN.
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII or IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII or XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	ūndēvicēsimus	XVIII or XIX
20. vīgintī	vicēsimus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus (or ūnus et vīgintī)	vicēsimus primus (ūnus et vicēsimus, etc.)	XXI
30. trīgintā	tricēsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	XXXX or XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	LXXXX or XC
100. centum	centēsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēsimus primus, etc.	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	IC, or D
600. sescentī	sexcentēsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC
1,000. mille	millēsimus	CIC, or M
5,000. quīnque milia	quīnquiēns millēsimus	ICC
10,000. decem milia	deciēns millēsimus	CCICC
100,000. centum milia	centiēns millēsimus	CCCCICC

PRONOUNS. •

15. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE.

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
	FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.		REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	_____	_____
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tui	vestrum, vestri	sui	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi, mī	nōbis	tibi	vōbis	sibi	sibī
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbis	tē	vōbis	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

16. DEMONSTRATIVE AND INTENSIVE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	ei (ii)	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	e'adem	idem	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedem	e'adem
<i>Gen.</i>	eius'dem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eis'dem iīs'dem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eun'dem	eandem	idem	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem	{ eīsdem iīsdem

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	isti	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

17.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE (forms in brackets are adjectives).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

18. INDEFINITE (forms in brackets are adjectives).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliqua	{ aliquid (aliquod)	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	{ aliquid (aliquod)	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	{ quiddam (quoddam)	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	{ quiddam (quoddam)	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

VERBS.

19. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*liberō, liberate.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *liberō, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātus.**Active Voice.**Indicative.**Passive Voice.*

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
liberō	liberāmus	liberor	liberāmur
liberās	liberātis	liberāris or -re	liberāmini
liberat	liberant	liberātur	liberantur

IMPERFECT.

liberābam	liberābāmus	liberābar	liberābāmur
liberābās	liberābātis	liberābāris or -re	liberābāmini
liberābat	liberābant	liberābātur	liberābantur

FUTURE.

liberābō	liberābimus	liberābor	liberābimur
liberābis	liberābitis	liberāberis or -re	liberābimini
liberābit	liberābunt	liberābitur	liberābuntur

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.*

PERFECT.

liberāvi	liberāvimus	liberātus sum	liberātī sumus
liberāvisti	liberāvistis	liberātus es	liberātī estis
liberāvit	liberāverunt	liberātus est	liberātī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

liberāveram	liberāverāmus	liberātus eram	liberātī eramus
liberāverās	liberāverātis	liberātus erās	liberātī erātis
liberāverat	liberāverant	liberātus erat	liberātī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

liberāverō	liberāverimus	liberātus erō	liberātī erimus
liberāveris	liberāveritis	liberātus eris	liberātī eritis
liberāverit	liberāverint	liberātus erit	liberātī erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
liberem	liberēmus	liberer	liberēmur
liberēs	liberētis	liberēris or -re	liberēmini
liberet	liberent	liberētur	liberentur

IMPERFECT.

liberārem	liberārēmus	liberārer	liberārēmur
liberārēs	liberārētis	liberārēris or -re	liberārēmini
liberāret	liberārent	liberārētur	liberārentur

PERFECT.

liberāverim	liberāverimus	liberātus sim	liberātī simus
liberāveris	liberāveritis	liberātus sis	liberātī sitis
liberāverit	liberāverint	liberātus sit	liberātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

liberāvissem	liberāvissēmus	liberātus essem	liberātī essēmus
liberāvissēs	liberāvissētis	liberātus essēs	liberātī essētis
liberāvisset	liberāvissent	liberātus esset	liberātī essent

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
PRESENT.				
<i>2d pers.</i>	liberā	liberāte	<i>2d pers.</i>	liberāre liberāmini
FUTURE.				
<i>2d pers.</i>	liberātō	liberātōte	<i>2d pers.</i>	liberātor ———
<i>3d pers.</i>	liberātō	liberanto	<i>3d pers.</i>	liberātor liberantor
Infinitive.				
<i>Pres.</i>	liberāre		liberāri	
<i>Perf.</i>	liberāvisse		liberātus esse	
<i>Fut.</i>	liberātūrus (esse)		liberātum iri	
Participle.				
<i>Pres.</i>	liberāns		<i>Pres.</i> ——	
<i>Fut.</i>	liberātūrus, -a, -um		<i>Fut.</i> liberandus, -a, -um ¹	
<i>Perf.</i>	——		<i>Perf.</i> liberātus, -a, -um	

Gerund.

<i>Nominative</i>	———
<i>Genitive</i>	liberandi
<i>Dative</i>	liberandō
<i>Accusative</i>	liberandum
<i>Ablative</i>	liberandō

Supine.

<i>Accusative</i>	liberātum
<i>Ablative</i>	liberātū

20.**SECOND CONJUGATION.****moveō, move.****PRINCIPAL PARTS:** moveō, mōvēre, mōvi, mōtus.

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
		PRESENT.		
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	
moveō	movēmus	moveor	movēmur	
movēs	movētis	movēris	movēmini	
movet	movent	movētur	moventur	

¹ The future passive participle is commonly known as the gerundive.

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.*

IMPERFECT.

movēbam	movēbāmus	movēbar	movēbāmur
movēbās	movēbātis	movēbāris	movēbāmini
movēbat	movēbant	movēbātur	movēbantur

FUTURE.

movēbo	movēbimus	movēbor	movēbimur
movēbis	movēbitis	movēberis	movēbimini
movēbit	movēbunt	movēbitur	movēbuntur

PERFECT.

mōvī	mōvimus	mōtus {	sum	mōtī {	sumus
mōvistī	mōvistis		es		estis
mōvit	mōvērunt		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

mōveram	mōverāmus	mōtus {	eram	mōtī {	erāmus
mōverās	mōverātis		erās		erātis
mōverat	mōverant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

mōverō	mōverimus	mōtus {	ero	mōtī {	erimus
mōveris	mōveritis		eris		eritis
mōverit	mōverint		erit		erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

moveam	moveāmus	movear	moveāmur
moveās	moveātis	moveāris	moveāmini
moveat	moveant	moveātur	moveantur

IMPERFECT.

movērem	movērēmus	movērer	movērēmur
movērēs	movērētis	movērēris	movērēmini
moveret	movērent	movērētur	movērentur

PERFECT.

mōverim	mōverimus	mōtus {	sim	mōtī {	simus
mōveris	mōveritis		sīs		sītis
mōverit	mōverint		sit		sint

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***PLUPERFECT.**

<i>mōvissem</i>	<i>mōvissēmus</i>	<i>mōtus</i> {	<i>essem</i>	<i>mōtī</i> {	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>mōvissēs</i>	<i>mōviassētis</i>		<i>essēs</i>		<i>essētis</i>
<i>mōvisset</i>	<i>mōviassent</i>		<i>esset</i>		<i>essent</i>

Imperative.**PRESENT.**

<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>movē</i>	<i>movēte</i>	<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>movēre</i>	<i>movēmini</i>
-----------------	-------------	---------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------

FUTURE.

<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>movētō</i>	<i>movētōte</i>	<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>movētor</i>	
<i>3d pers.</i>	<i>movētō</i>	<i>moventō</i>	<i>3d pers.</i>	<i>movētor</i>	<i>moventor</i>

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>movēre</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>movēri</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mōvisse</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mōtus, -a, -um (esse)</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mōturus, -a, -um (esse)</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mōtum iri</i>

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>movēns</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	—
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mōturus, -a, -um</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>movendus, -a, -um</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	—	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mōtus, -a, -um</i>

Gerund.

<i>Nominative</i>	—
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>movendī</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>movendō</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>movendum</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>movendō</i>

Supine.

<i>Accusative</i>	<i>mōtum</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>mōtū</i>

21.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

dividō, divide.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : dividō, dividere, divīsī, divīsus.

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>		
PRESENT.					
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.		
dividō	dividimus	dividor	dividimur		
dividis	dividētis	divideris <i>or -re</i>	dividimini		
dividit	dividunt	dividitur	dividuntur		
IMPERFECT.					
dividēbam	dividēbāmus	dividēbar	dividēbamur		
dividēbās	dividēbātis	dividēbaris <i>or -re</i>	dividēbāmini		
dividēbat	dividēbant	dividēbātur	dividēbantur		
FUTURE.					
dividam	dividēmus	dividar	dividēmur		
dividēs	dividētis	divideris <i>or -re</i>	dividēmini		
dividet	divident	dividētur	dividentur		
PERFECT.					
divīsī	divīsīmus	divīsus	sum	divīsī	sumus
divīsistī	divīsistis		es		estis
divīsīt	divīsērunt <i>or -ēre</i>		est		sunt
PLUPERFECT.					
divīseram	divīserāmus	divīsus	eram	divīsī	erāmus
divīserās	divīserātis		erās		erātis
divīserat	divīserant		erat		erant
FUTURE PERFECT.					
divīserō	divīserimus	divīsus	erō	divīsī	erimus
divīseris	divīseritis		eris		eritis
divīserit	divīserint		erit		erunt

*Active Voice.***Subjunctive.***Passive Voice.***PRESENT.**

dividam	dividāmus	dividar	dividāmur
dividās	dividātis	dividāris or -re	dividāmini
dividat	dividant	dividātur	dividantur

IMPERFECT.

dividerem	dividerēmus	dividerer	dividerēmur
dividerēs	dividerētis	dividerēris or -re	dividerēmini
divideret	dividerent	dividerētur	dividerentur

PERFECT.

diviserim	diviserimus	divisus {	sim	divisi {	simus
diviseris	diviseritis		sis		sitis
diviserit	diviserint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

divissem	divissemus	divisus {	essem	divisi {	essemus
divisissēs	divisissētis		essēs		essētis
divisisset	divisissent		esset		essent

Imperative.**PRESENT.**

<i>2d pers.</i>	divide	dividite	<i>2d pers.</i>	dividere	dividimini
-----------------	--------	----------	-----------------	----------	------------

FUTURE.

<i>2d pers.</i>	dividitō	dividitōte	<i>2d pers.</i>	dividitor	———
<i>3d pers.</i>	dividitō	dividuntō	<i>3d pers.</i>	dividitor	dividuntor

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	dividere	<i>Pres.</i>	dividi
<i>Perf.</i>	divisisse	<i>Perf.</i>	divisus, -a, -um (esse)
<i>Fut.</i>	divisūrus, -a, -um (esse)	<i>Fut.</i>	divisum iri

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i>	dividēns	<i>Pres.</i>	———
<i>Fut.</i>	divisūrus, -a, -um	<i>Fut.</i>	dividendus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i>	———	<i>Perf.</i>	divisus, -a, -um

Gerund.

<i>Nominative</i>	—
<i>Genitive</i>	dividendi
<i>Dative</i>	dividendō
<i>Accusative</i>	dividendum
<i>Ablative</i>	dividendō

Supine.

<i>Accusative</i>	divisum
<i>Ablative</i>	divisū

22.**THIRD CONJUGATION IN *io*.*****capiō, take.*****PRINCIPAL PARTS: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captus.******Active Voice. Indicative. Passive Voice.***

PRESENT.			
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>caperis or -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>	<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbāris or -re</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>

FUTURE.

<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris or -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

PERFECT.

<i>cēpi</i>	<i>cēpimus</i>	<i>captus</i> {	<i>sum</i>	<i>capti</i> {	<i>sumus</i>
<i>cēpisti</i>	<i>cēpistis</i>		<i>es</i>		<i>estis</i>
<i>cēpit</i>	<i>cēperunt or -ere</i>		<i>est</i>		<i>sunt</i>

Active Voice.

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

PLUPERFECT.

captus	eram
	erās
	erat

Passive Voice.

capti	erāmus
	erātis
	erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō	ceperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

captus	erō
	eris
	erit

capti	erimus
	eritis
	erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

SING.	PLU.
capiam	capiamus
capias	capiatis
capiat	capiant

SING.
capiar
capiaris <i>or -re</i>
capiatur

PLU.
capiamur.
capiamini
capiantur

IMPERFECT.

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

caperer
caperēris <i>or -re</i>
caperētur

caperēmur
caperēmini
caperentur

PERFECT.

cēperim	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

captus	sim
	sis
	sit

capti	simus
	sitis
	sint

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

captus	essem
	essēs
	esset

capti	essēmus
	essētis
	essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

2d pers. cape	capite
---------------	--------

2d pers. capere	capimini
-----------------	----------

FUTURE.

2d pers. capitō	capitōte
3d pers. capitō	capiuntō

2d pers. capitor	—
3d pers. capitor	capiuntor

Active Voice.

Pres. capere
Perf. cēpisse
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um (esse)

Infinitive.*Passive Voice.*

Pres. capi
Perf. captus, -a, -um, (esse)
Fut. captum iri

Participle.

Pres. capiēns
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um
Perf. ———

Pres. ———
Perf. captus, -a, -um
Fut. capiendus, -a, -um

Gerund.

Genitive capiendi
Dative capiendō
Accusative capiendum
Ablative capiendō

Supine.

Accusative captum
Ablative captū

23.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

impediō, impede.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: impediō, impedire, impedivī, impeditus.

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Indicative.****PRESENT.**

SING. **PLU.**
impediō impedimus
impedis impeditis
impedit impediunt

SING. **PLU.**
impedior impedimur
impediris *or -re* impedimini
impeditur impediuntur

IMPERFECT.

impediēbam impediēbāmus
impediēbās impediēbātis
impediēbat impediēbant

impediēbar impediēbāmur
impediēbāris *or -re* impediēbāmini
impediēbātur impediēbantur

FUTURE.

impediam impediemus
impediēs impediētis
impediet impediēt

impediar impediēmur
impediēris *or -re* impediēmini
impediētur impediēntur

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.*

PERFECT.

impedi	impedivimus	impeditus	sum	impediti	sumus
impedivisti	impedivistis		es		estis
impedivit	impedivērunt or -ēre		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

impediveram	impediverāmus	impeditus	eram	impediti	erāmus
impediverās	impediverātis		erās		erātis
impediverat	impediverant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

impediverō	impediverimus	impeditus	erō	impediti	erimus
impediveris	impediveritis		eris		eritis
impediverit	impediverint		erit		erunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

impediam	impediāmus	impediar	impediāmur
impediās	impediatis	impediāris or -re	impediāmini
impediat	impediant	impediatur	impediantur

IMPERFECT.

impedīrem	impedirēmus	impedirer	impedirēmur
impedirēs	impedirētis	impedirēris or -re	impedirēmini
impediret	impedirent	impedirētur	impedirentur

impediverim	impediverimus	impeditus	sim	impediti	simus
impediveris	impediveritis		sis		sitis
impediverit	impediverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

impedivissem	impedivissēmus	impeditus	essem	impediti	essēmus
impedivissēs	impedivissētis		essēs		essētis
impedivisset	impedivissent		esset		essent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

2d pers. impedi	impedite	2d pers. impedere	impedimini
-----------------	----------	-------------------	------------

*Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***FUTURE.**

<i>2d pers.</i> impeditō	impeditōte	<i>2d pers.</i> impeditor	—
<i>3d pers.</i> impeditō	impediuntō	<i>3d pers.</i> impeditor	impediuntor

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> impedire	<i>Pres.</i> impedi
<i>Perf.</i> impedivisse	<i>Perf.</i> impeditus, -a, -um (esse)
<i>Fut.</i> impeditūrus, -a, -um (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> impeditum iri

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i> impediēns	<i>Pres.</i> —
<i>Fut.</i> impeditūrus, -a, -um	<i>Fut.</i> impediendus, -a, -um
<i>Perf.</i> —	<i>Perf.</i> impeditus, -a, -um

Gerund.

<i>Nominative</i>	—
<i>Genitive</i>	impediendi
<i>Dative</i>	impediendō
<i>Accusative</i>	impediendum
<i>Ablative</i>	impediendō

Supine.

<i>Accusative</i>	impeditum
<i>Ablative</i>	impeditū

24.**DEPONENT VERBS.**

<i>Conj. I</i>	cōnor	cōnāri	cōnātus sum	<i>attempt</i>
<i>Conj. II</i>	vereor	verēri	verītus sum	<i>to fear</i>
<i>Conj. III</i>	sequor	sequi	secūtus sum	<i>to follow</i>
<i>Conj. IV</i>	potior	potiri	potitus sum	<i>to get possession</i>

I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i> cōnor	vereor	sequor	potior
cōnāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potiris (-re)
cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
cōnāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Impf.</i>	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potitus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potitus eram
<i>F.P.</i>	cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potitus erō

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner	verear	sequar	potiar
<i>Impf.</i>	cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potitus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potitus essem

Imperative.

cōnāre, etc.	verēre, etc.	sequere, etc.	potire, etc.
--------------	--------------	---------------	--------------

Infinitives.*

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	potirī
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse

Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	potitus

Gerundive.

cōnandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
----------	----------	-----------	-----------

Gerund.

cōnandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
---------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

Supine.

cōnātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	potitum, -tū
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------

* Notice that deponent verbs have the active form of the future infinitive and the participles of both voices.

25.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sūm, esse, fui.*

Indicative.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
<i>fui</i>	<i>fuimus</i>	<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuērāmus</i>	<i>fuerō</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>	<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>	<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt</i>	<i>fuerať</i>	<i>fuerant</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>fuirim</i>	<i>fuirimus</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuiris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>	<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>	<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

Imperative.

PRESENT.	
<i>es, be (thou)</i>	<i>este, be (ye)</i>
FUTURE.	
<i>estō, thou shalt be</i>	<i>estōte, ye shall be</i>
<i>estō, he shall be</i>	<i>suntō, they shall be</i>

Infinitives.

Participles.

<i>Pres. esse, to be</i>	—
<i>Perf. fuisse, to have been</i>	—
<i>Fut. futūrus esse, to be about to be</i>	<i>futūrus, -a, -um, about to be</i>

26. volō, velle, volui, —, *to be willing, will, wish.*
 nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, *to be unwilling, will not.*
 mālō, mālle, mālui, —, *to be more willing, prefer.*
 possum, posse, potui, —, *to be able.*

Indicative.

<i>Pres.</i>	volō, <i>I wish.</i>	nōlō, <i>I will not.</i>	mālō, <i>I prefer.</i>	possum, <i>I am able.</i>
	vis	nōn vis	māvis	potes
	vult	nōn vult	māvult	potest
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	possumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	potestis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	possunt
<i>Impf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	poteram
<i>Fut.</i>	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.	poterō, poteris, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	volui	nōlui	mālui	potui
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	potueram
<i>F. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō	potuerō

Subjunctive.

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim	possim
	velis	nōlis	mālis	possis
	velit	nōlit	mālit	possit
	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus	possimus
	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis	possitis
	velint	nōlint	mālint	possint
<i>Impf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem	possem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	potuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	potuissem

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	——	nōli, nōlite	——	——
<i>Fut.</i>	——	nōlītō, etc.	——	——

Infinitives.

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle	posse
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	potuisse

Participle.

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns	——	potēns
--------------	--------	--------	----	--------

27. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, (ivī) īi, itus, to go.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Pres.</i>	eō, is, it imus, itis, eunt	eam, eās, eat eāmus, eātis, eant
<i>Impf.</i>	ibam, ibās, ibat ibāmus, ibātis, ibant	irem, irēs, iret irēmus, irētis, irent
<i>Fut.</i>	ibō, ibis, ibit ibimus, ibitis, ibunt	
<i>Perf.</i>	(ivī) īi	(iverim) ierim
<i>Plup.</i>	(iveram) ieram	(ivissem) iissem
<i>F. P.</i>	(iverō) ierō	

	Imperative.	Infinitive.
<i>Pres.</i>	ī, ite	<i>Pres.</i> ire
<i>Fut.</i>	itō, itō, itōte, euntō	<i>Perf.</i> (ivisse) iisse <i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse

	Participles.	Gerundive.
<i>Pres.</i>	iēns, euntis, euntī, etc.	eundum (neuter only)
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus, -a, -um	
		Gerund. Supine.
		eundi, etc. itum, itū

28. **Fiō**, *be made, become*, is the regular passive of **faciō**, *make*. Note the **i** before all vowels except **e** in the combination **-er**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: fiō, fieri, factus sum.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.
<i>Pres.</i>	fiō, fis, fit fimus, fitis, fiunt	fiam	<i>Pres.</i> fī, fite
<i>Imp.</i>	fiēbam	fierem	Infinitive.
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam		<i>Pres.</i> fieri
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum	factus sim	<i>Perf.</i> factus esse
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram	factus essem	<i>Fut.</i> factum iri
<i>F. P.</i>	factus erō		Participle.
			<i>Perf.</i> factus
			Gerundive.
			faciendus

29. PRINCIPAL PARTS : ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	feror	ferar
	fers	ferris	ferāris (-re)
	fert	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferimini	ferāmini
	ferunt	feruntur	ferantur
<i>Impf.</i>	ferēbam	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	feram	ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>F. P.</i>	tulerō	lātus erō	

Imperative.

<i>Pres.</i>	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō	fertōte	fertor	—
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus esse	lātum iri

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus, -a, -um
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus, -a, -um	<i>Ger.</i>	ferendus, -a -um

Gerund.

ferendi, -dō, -dum, -dō

Supine.

lātum, lātū.

30. MODELS OF ORIGINAL SCHEMES FOR FORM DRILL.

CONSECUTIVE DECLENSION.

VOCAB. FORMS.	SING.
1. pars	<i>Nom.</i> mercātor
2. lingua	<i>Gen.</i> animī
3. flūmen	<i>Dat.</i> bellō
4. prōvincia	<i>Acc.</i> causam
5. mercātor	<i>Abl.</i> proeliō

PLU.

6. animus	<i>Nom.</i> finēs
7. bellum	<i>Gen.</i> partium
8. causa	<i>Dat.</i> linguis
9. proelium	<i>Acc.</i> flūmina
10. finis	<i>Abl.</i> prōvinciis

CONSECUTIVE SYNOPSIS.

VOCAB. FORMS.	INDICATIVE.
1. sum	<i>Pres.</i> sunt
2. dividō	<i>Imperf.</i> dividēbant
3. incolō	<i>Fut.</i> incolent
4. appellō	<i>Perf.</i> appellāvērunt
5. instituō	<i>Pluperf.</i> instituerant
6. differō	<i>F. P.</i> distulerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

7. absum	<i>Pres.</i> absint
8. pertineō	<i>Imperf.</i> pertinērent
9. contineō	<i>Perf.</i> continuerint
10. gerō	<i>Pluperf.</i> gessissent

CONSECUTIVE INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

VOCABULARY FORMS.

11. contendō	13. obtineō	15. capio	17. vergō	19. spectō
12. prohibeō	14. dicō	16. attingō	18. orior	20. inducō

INFINITIVES.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> contendere	dici
<i>Perf.</i> prohibuisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i> obtentūrus esse	attactum iri

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
vergēns	_____ ¹
_____ ¹	spectātus
oritūrus	inducendus

CONSECUTIVE CONJUGATION.

VOCABULARY FORMS.

21. faciō	22. persuādeō	23. exeō	24. praestō	25. potior	26. fiō
<i>Perf. Ind. Act.</i>			<i>Imp. Subj. Passive.</i>		

SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
fēcī	praestitimus	fierem	praestārēmur
persuāsistī	(no active) ¹	(impers. in passive) ¹	potirēminī
exiit	fēcērunt	exirētur	fierent

¹ Note that it is quite as important to know where no form occurs as to know what is the proper form.

LIST OF FIVE HUNDRED WORDS.

Compiled from the Vocabulary of High-School Latin with the permission of the author, Dr. Gonzales Lodge, of the Teachers College, Columbia University. This classified list consists of words occurring in Caesar's First Campaign and used six or more times in the first five books of the Gallic War. The progressive and intelligent teacher will have no difficulty in appreciating the value of this word list as an aid in the acquisition of a practical vocabulary and in the annotation of sight passages, which may thus be marked with scientific accuracy.

VERBS.

Chap. 1.

1. sum
2. dīvidō
3. incolō
4. appellō
5. instituō
6. differō
7. absum
8. pertineō
9. contineō
10. gerō
11. contendō
12. prohibeō
13. obtineō
14. dicō
15. capiō
16. attingō
17. vergō
18. orior
19. spectō

Chap. 2.

20. indūcō
21. faciō
22. persuādeō
23. exeō

24. praestō

25. potior

26. fiō

27. inferō

28. possum

29. bellō

30. habeō

31. pateō

32. vagor

Chap. 3.

33. addūcō
34. permoveō
35. cōstituō
36. proficiscor
37. comparō
38. cōfirmō
39. cōficiō
40. dūcō
41. dēligō
42. suscipiō
43. occupō
44. accipiō
45. cōnor
46. dō
47. probō
48. perficiō
49. conciliō

50. iūrō

51. spērō

Chap. 4.

52. enūntiō
53. cōgō
54. sequor
55. oportet
56. condūcō
57. incitō

Chap. 5.

58. parō
59. incendō
60. portō
61. tollō
62. subeō
63. iubeō
64. ūtor
65. trānseō
66. oppugnō
67. recipiō

Chap. 6.

68. videō
69. existimō
70. eō
71. patior

72. conveniō

73. pācō

74. fluō

Chap. 7.

75. nūntiō
76. mātūrō
77. perveniō
78. imperō
79. mittō
80. rogō
81. licet
82. teneō
83. occidō
84. pellō
85. concēdō
86. putō
87. temperō
88. intercēdō
89. respondeō
90. sūmō
91. volō
92. revertor

Chap. 8.

93. perducō
94. dispōnō
95. veniō

96. ostendō
97. dēciō
98. iungō
99. repellō
100. dēsistō

Chap. 9.

101. impetrō
102. studeō

Chap. 10.

103. renūntiō
104. intelligō
105. praefficiō
106. ēdūcō

Chap. 11.

107. trādūcō
108. dēfendō
109. mereor
110. vāstō
111. expūgnō
112. dēbeō
113. dēmōnstrō
114. exspectō
115. statuō
116. cōnsūmō

Chap. 12.

117. iūdicō
118. impediō
119. aggredior
120. concidō
121. mandō
122. abdō
123. interficiō
124. ulciscor

Chap. 13.

125. cōnsequor
126. cūrō
127. commoveō
128. adior
129. ferō
130. dēspiciō
131. nitor
132. committō
133. cōnsistō
134. agō

Chap. 14.

135. accidō
136. caveō
137. dēcipiō
138. timeō
139. temptō
140. vexō
141. dēpōnō
142. cōnsuēscō
143. polliceor
144. discēdō
145. admiror
146. doleō

Chap. 15.

147. moveō
148. praemittō
149. insequor
150. cadō
151. lacescō
152. coepi

Chap. 16.

153. flāgitō
154. pōnō
155. āvertō
156. nōlō
157. cōnferō
158. cōmportō
159. instō
160. convocō
161. praesum
162. creō
163. accūsō
164. emō
165. queror

Chap. 17.

166. prōpōnō
167. valeō
168. dēterreō
169. perferō
170. dubitō
171. superō

Chap. 18.

172. sentiō
173. dimittō
174. quaerō
175. cupiō
176. advertō

177. perterreō
178. reperiō

Chap. 19.

179. cōgnōscō
180. removeō
181. petō
182. hortor
183. vereor

Chap. 20.

184. sciō
185. moneō
186. loquor

Chap. 22.

187. instruō

Chap. 24.

188. sustineō
189. mūniō

Chap. 25.

190. cohortor
191. pūgnō
192. vincō
193. resistō

Chap. 26.

194. vulnerō

Chap. 27.

195. trādō
196. ēgredior

Chap. 28.

197. redūcō

Chap. 29.

198. redeō

NOUNS.**Chap. 1.**

1. pars
2. lingua
3. flūmen
4. prōvincia
5. mercātor

6. animus
7. bellum
8. causa
9. proelium
10. finis
11. initium
12. Ōceanus
13. sōl
14. septentriō
15. mōns
16. occāsus

Chap. 2.

17. rēgnum
18. nōbilitās
19. civitās
20. cōpia
21. imperium
22. locus
23. nātūra
24. ager
25. lacus
26. rēs
27. homō
28. multitūdō
29. passus
30. lātītūdō

Chap. 3.

31. auctōritās
32. carrus
33. nūmerus
34. iter
35. frūmentum
36. pāx
37. amicitia
38. annus
39. lēgātiō
40. filius
41. pater
42. senātus
43. populus
44. frāter
45. profectiō
46. tempus
47. exercitus
48. orātiō
49. fidēs
50. iūs

Chap. 4.

51. mōs
52. ignis
53. diēs
54. cliēns
55. arma
56. magistrātus
57. mors

Chap. 5.

58. nihil
59. oppidum
60. vicus
61. aedificium
62. domus
63. spēs
64. periculum
65. mēnsis
66. cōsiliū
67. socius

Chap. 6.

68. vadum
69. pōns
70. vis
71. ripa

Chap. 7.

72. miles
73. legiō
74. adventus
75. princeps
76. maleficiū
77. voluntās
78. memoria
79. iugum
80. facultās
81. iniūria
82. spatium
83. lēgātus

Chap. 8.

84. mūrus
85. altitūdō
86. pēs
87. fossa
88. opus
89. praesidium
90. castellum
91. nāvis
92. ratis

93. nox
94. mūnitiō
95. concursus
96. tēlum

Chap. 9.

97. via
98. angustiae
99. sponte
100. grātia
101. beneficium
102. obses

Chap. 11.

103. auxilium
104. cōspectus
105. liberī
106. servitūs
107. hostis
108. fuga
109. fortūna

Chap. 12.

110. explorātor
111. vigilia
112. castrum
113. silva
114. pāgus
115. cāsus
116. calamitās

Chap. 13.

117. dux
118. insidiae
119. nōmen

Chap. 14.

120. contumēlia
121. victōria
122. commūtatiō

Chap. 15.

123. equitātus
124. agmen
125. eques

Chap. 16.

126. potestās
127. prex

Chap. 17.

128. libertās

Chap. 18.

129. concilium

Chap. 23.

130. captivus
131. equus
132. aciēs
133. impetus

Chap. 24.

134. impedimentum

Chap. 25.

135. pilum
136. gladius
137. pūgna
138. scūtum
139. signum
140. vulnus

Chap. 26.

141. vallum

ADJECTIVES and PRONOUNS.

Chap. 1.

1. omnis
2. trēs
3. qui
4. ūnus
5. alius
6. tertius
7. ipse
8. noster
9. hic
10. sui
11. fortis
12. longus
13. parvus
14. is
15. reliquus
16. cotidiānus
17. suus
18. inferus

Chap. 2.

19. nōbilis
20. tōtus
21. facilis
22. lātus
23. altus
24. alter
25. finitimus
26. cupidus
27. māgnus
28. angustus
29. mille
30. ducenti
31. quadragintā
32. octogintā

Chap. 3.

33. multus
34. amicus
35. idem
36. ille
37. firmus

Chap. 5.

38. duodecim
39. quadringenti
40. quisque

Chap. 6.

41. duo
42. singuli
43. nullus
44. bonus
45. quintus

Chap. 7.

46. ulterior
47. princeps
48. ūllus
49. quis
50. certus

Chap. 8.

51. novem
52. sedecim
53. invitus
54. complūrēs

Chap. 9.

55. novus

Chap. 10.	Chap. 17.	CONJUNC-	Chap. 2.
56. frumentarius	94. quantus	TIONS.	7. undique
57. hibernus	Chap. 21.	Chap. 1.	Chap. 3.
58. quinque	95. militaris	1. et	8. quam
59. superbus	Chap. 26.	2. quod	9. satis
60. ceterior	96. acer	3. atque	10. non
61. septimus		4. -que	11. item
62. primus		5. cum	Chap. 5.
Chap. 11.		6. aut	12. iam
63. liber		Chap. 2.	Chap. 6.
64. necessarius		7. ut	13. vix
65. consanguineus	PREPOSI-	8. autem	Chap. 8.
Chap. 12.	TIONS.	Chap. 3.	Chap. 9.
66. incredibilis	Chap. 1.	9. quin	15. itaque
67. uter	1. in	Chap. 4.	Chap. 10.
68. quartus	2. inter	10. ne	16. ubi
69. quattuor	3. ab	11. neque	17. inde
70. insignis	4. trans	Chap. 5.	Chap. 11.
71. solus	5. cum	12. ubi	18. ita
72. publicus	6. de	Chap. 6.	19. paene
Chap. 13.	Chap. 2.	13. vel	Chap. 14.
73. repentinus	7. apud	Chap. 7.	20. tam
74. viginti	8. ante	14. tamen	21. diu
75. aeger	9. ex	15. si	Chap. 15.
76. vetus	10. pro	Chap. 12.	22. circiter
77. pristinus	Chap. 3.	16. nam	Chap. 16.
78. improvisus	11. per	17. sed	23. interim
Chap. 14.	Chap. 4.	Chap. 14.	24. cotidie
79. gravis	12. ob	18. enim	25. modo
80. aliquis	Chap. 5.		26. quidem
81. recens	13. post		27. praesertim
82. secundus	Chap. 7.	ADVERBS.	Chap. 17.
Chap. 15.	14. sine	Chap. 1.	28. tum
83. posterus	15. sub	1. saepe	29. demum
84. alienus	Chap. 10.	2. prope	Chap. 21.
85. pauci	16. circum	3. quoque	30. postea
86. quingenti	Chap. 11.	4. propterea	
87. tantus	17. praeter	5. ferè	
88. audax		6. etiam	
89. quindecim			
90. amplius			
91. quin			
Chap. 16.			
92. maturus			
93. propinquus			

SYNTACTICAL SYLLABUS.

NOTE. — A knowledge of what constructions occur most frequently in Caesar enables the teacher by intelligent emphasis to increase the efficiency of his class in examinations and sight reading. Such accurate knowledge should be an indispensable qualification for one who sets an examination or test. Many constructions upon which we spend much time in teaching first and second year Latin are found so rarely as to deserve no attention. The statistics are drawn from Heynacher, one of those patient German toilers who would attempt to count and classify the sands of the sea, were scholarship to be aided thereby.

CASE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Nominative as Subject naturally most frequently.
Predicate Nominative also frequently.

Genitive:

- (1) **Possessive** more than 1000 times.
- (2) **Partitive** 366 times.
- (3) **Objective with Nouns or Adjectives** 200 times.

This construction with verbs such as remembering, forgetting, and impersonals occurs but 3 times, and in these phases may be disregarded.

- (4) **Quality: (*alias* Descriptive)** 82 times.

No other genitive occurs more than 3 times.

Dative:

- (1) **Compound Verbs** 225 times.
- (2) **Purpose** 88 times.
- (3) **Adjectives** 63 times.
- (4) **Special Verbs (*alias* Intransitives)** 40 times.
- (5) **Agent (only in the 2d periphrastic)** 26 times.
- (6) **Possessor with *sum*** 18 times.
- (7) **Interest (*alias* Advantage)** a few times.

The next most frequent construction is the Ethical Dative, occurring but 5 times.

Accusative:

- (1) **Direct Object** naturally most frequently.
- (2) **Place to Which** (Limit of Motion). . . very frequently.
- (3) **Compound Verbs** (ad-, circum-, per-, trans-) . . . 79 times.
- (4) **Extent** 37 times.

Under this construction may be grouped 52 occurrences of Extent in Degree, often called Adverbial Accusative, *e.g.* **multum, plūs, plūrimum.**

- (5) **Predicate** (Double Accusatives) 70 times.

The cognate accusative, two accusatives with verbs of teaching and concealing do not occur at all and should not be taught in first or second year work.

Ablative:

- (1) **Absolute** 770 times.
- (2) **Means**. 600 times.
- (3) **Agency** frequently.
- (4) **Separation** (including Place Whence) . . . 300 times.

Statistics fail to give precise figures for other ablative constructions, but with an aggregate of 7000 occurrences of this case, none of the constructions commonly taught in the grammars will be found to occur less times than many of the genitive and dative constructions already enumerated. So none may be safely neglected. The other common ablative constructions are:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (5) Accompaniment. | (11) Ūtor, etc. |
| (6) Specification. | (12) Quality. |
| (7) Cause. | (13) Manner. |
| (8) Time When. | (14) Comparison. |
| (9) Place From Which. | (15) Degree of Difference. |
| (10) Place In Which. | |

MODE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Subjunctive: (no detailed statistics—relative frequency only indicated).

- (1) **Subordinate Clauses Indirect Discourse.**
- (2) **Indirect Question.**
- (3) **Purpose:** (a) Pure Final, (b) Substantive, (c) Relative.
- (4) **Result.**

The following occur so much less frequently that no distinction as to types is advisable.

- (5) **Quod Causal.**
- (6) **Cum Causal and Concessive.** (Latter 18 times.)
- (7) **Cum Temporal** with secondary tenses.

With one exception **Conditions**, though very common in Caesar, are involved in the intricacies of Indirect Discourse and their study may in the judgment of the authors be more profitably postponed until the reading of Cicero. Meantime in Caesar they may be intelligently treated as Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse without explaining the subtleties of the tenses. Conditions have been introduced into the Caesar's First Campaign only with reluctance and in deference to conventional practice, leaving it to the individual teacher's judgment as to whether they should be taught. The same may be said of **priusquam** clauses, only 8 of which occur outside of Indirect Discourse in the four books. **Dum** in the sense of *until* occurs only 4 times; **quoad**, *until*, once; and **donec** not at all. The Hortatory, Jussive, Potential, and Optative Subjunctives occur only in Indirect Discourse.

Infinitive :

- (1) In Indirect Discourse.
- (2) **Complementary** (including infinitive as object).
- (3) As **Subject** of Impersonals.

The Historical Infinitive occurs but six times in Caesar.

Supines :

The supine in **um** occurs 10 times in the four books; that in **u** but once, I, 3, 6.

Gerunds and Gerundives :

- (1) **Accusative with ad** 86 times.
- (2) **Genitive of Gerund** modifying substantives
(inclusive of *causā* and *grātiā*) 128 times.
- (3) **Ablative with dē or in** 21 times.
- (4) **Gerundive with cūrō** 17 times.
- (5) The Gerundive in the genitive with **sui** . . . 10 times.

Other uses of the Gerund are very rare.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A., abbreviation for Aulus, -i, a Latin praenomen, or first name.

ā, *ab*, prep. with *abl.*, from, away from; with *passive verbs*, by.

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, put away, conceal, hide.

abdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead away, take away.

abeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, go away, depart.

abstineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus (*abs-teneō*), abstain, refrain.

absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, be away from, be absent, be wanting.

ac, same as *atque*, and.

accēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus (*ad-cēdō*), go to, approach, be added.

acceptus, -a, -um, acceptable, pleasing (*gov. dat.*).

accidō, -ere, -cidi (*ad-cadō*), fall to, happen.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (*ad-capiō*), take to, receive, accept.

accurrō, -ere, -curri and -cucurri, -cursurus (*ad-currō*), run to, hasten up to.

accūsō, 1, accuse, blame, find fault with.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, keen, sharp, active.

aciēs, -iī, *f.*, sharp edge, battle line, keenness (of the eyes).

ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, sharply.

ad, prep. with *acc.*, to, towards, up to, near; with *numerals*, an *adv.*, about.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead to, induce.

adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring to, report.

adficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (*ad-faciō*), affect, afflict, visit with.

adfinitas, -tātis, *f.*, relationship (by marriage).

adgredior, -i, -gressus sum (*ad-gradior*), go towards, approach, attack.

adhibeō, -ēre, -hibui, -hibitus (*ad-habeō*), have near, call in, apply.

admīror, -āri, -ātus, wonder at, marvel at.

admittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, let go, commit, admit.

adorior, -īri, -ortus sum, rise against, attack.

adsciscō, -ere, -scivi, -scitus, take to, add, adopt.

adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be near, assist, be present.

adulēscētia, -ae, *f.*, youth.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, a coming to, approach, arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite, unfavorable.

advertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, turn towards or to; *animum advertō*, notice.

aedificium, -i, *n.*, a building.

aedificō, 1, build, construct.

Aeduus, -a, -um, of the Aeduans; *subst.*, an Aeduan.

aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly.

Aemilius, -i, *m.*, one of Caesar's officers.

aequō, 1, make equal, equalize.

afferō, see *adferō*.

afficiō, see *adficiō*.

affinitas, see *adfinitas*.

ager, *agri*, *m.*, land, field.

aggredior, *see* **adgredior**.

agmen, **agminis**, *n.*, army on the march, column, line.

agō, -ere, **ēgi**, **actus**, drive, do, discuss.

aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another; strange, unfavorable.

aliquis, **aliquid** (-quod), somebody, some one, something; some, any.

alius, -a, -ud, another, other.

Allobrogēs, -um, *acc.* -as, *m.*, name of a Gallic tribe near Lake Geneva.

alō, -ere, **alui**, **altus**, nourish, support, sustain.

Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps.

alter, -era, -erum, the other (*of two*), the second; **alter** . . . **alter**, *correl.*, the one . . . the other; **alteri** . . . **altēri**, the one partly . . . the other partly.

altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall.

Ambarri, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Gauls related to the Aeduians.

amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

amicus, -i, *m.*, friend; *as adj.*, **amicus**, -a, -um, friendly.

āmittō, -ere, **āmisi**, **āmissus**, send away, lose, let go.

amor, -ōris, *m.*, love, affection.

amplē, *adv.*, largely, fully.

amplus, -a, -um, large; **amplius** (*neut. comp.*), more.

anceps, *gen.* **ancipitis**, twofold, double-headed, doubtful.

angustiae, -arum, *f.*, narrows, narrow pass, straits.

angustus, -a, -um, narrow.

animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, attend to, notice, punish.

animus, -i, *m.*, mind, spirit.

annus, -i, *m.*, a year.

annuus, -a, -um, for a year, annual.

ante, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, before.

antēa, *adv.*, before, previously.

antiquus, -a, -um, old, ancient, former.

apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed, unprotected.

appellō, 1, call, name.

Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of April; *abbr.* **Apr.**

apud, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the presence of, among, at, near.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul; on the Adriatic Sea.

Aquitāni, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aquitanians, a people living in the southwest part of Gaul.

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.*, the country of the Aquitanians.

Arar, -aris, *m.*, a river flowing into the Rhone at Lyons; modern Saône.

arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, judge, think.

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, implements, arms, weapons.

ascendō, -ere, **ascendī**, **ascēsus**, climb, mount, ascend.

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, acclivity.

atque or **ac**, *conj.*, and also, and.

attingō, -ere, **attigi**, **attāctus** (**ad-tangō**), touch upon, reach, border upon.

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority, influence.

audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring.

audācter, *adv.*, boldly.

audāx, *gen.* **audācis**, bold, daring.

audeō, -ēre, **ausus** sum, *semi-dep.*, dare.

audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, hear.

augeō, -ēre, **auxi**, **auctus**, *trans.*, increase, enlarge.

aut, *conj.*, or; **aut** . . . **aut**, either . . . or.

autem, *conj.*, but, moreover, on the other hand.

auxilium, -i, *n.*, aid, help; *pl.*, auxiliary forces.

āvertō, -ere, **āverti**, **āversus**, turn away, estrange.

avus, -i, *m.*, grandfather.

Belgae, -arum, *m.*, the Belgians, a people living in the northeast part of Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.
bellō, 1, make war, war.
bellum, -i, n., war.
bene, *adv.*, well.
beneficium, -i, n., service, kindness.
Bibracte, -tis, n., chief town of the *Aeduians*.
biduum, -i, n., a period of two days, two days.
biennium, -i, n., two years.
bipartitō (or **bipartitō**), *adv.*, in two divisions.
Biturigēs, -um, m., a tribe of Gauls west of the *Aeduians*.
Boii, -ōrum, m., a Celtic tribe.
bonitās, -tātis, f., goodness, fertility (of the soil).
bonus, -a, -um, good.
bracchium, -i, n., arm, forearm.

C., abbreviation for **Cāius** (**Gāius**), a Roman first name.

cadō, -ere, **cecidī** [**cāsūrus**], fall, happen.
Caesar, -aris, m., a Roman name.
calamitās, -tātis, f., disaster, misfortune.
capio, -ere, **cēpi**, **captus**, take, seize, catch.

captivus, -i, m., captive, prisoner.

caput, **capitis**, n., head.

carrus, -i, m., cart, wagon.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, of Cassius, with Cassius.

Cassius, -i, m., Lucius Cassius, consul 107 B.C.

castellum, -i, n., fort, redoubt, stronghold.

Casticus, -i, m., a chief of the *Sequani*.

castra, -ōrum, n. (sing. **castrum**), camp.

cāsus, -ūs, m., accident, chance.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., a chief of the *Sequani*.

Caturigēs, -um, an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, case (at law), *abl.* **causā**, preceded by a gen., for the sake of.

caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautus**, be on one's guard, guard against.

celer, **celeris**, **celere**, swift, quick.

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly.

Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celts or Gauls.

cēnsus, -ūs, m., numbering, census.

centum, *indecl. num.*, one hundred.

certus, -a, -um, sure, certain; **certiōrem facere**, to inform.

Ceutronēs, -um, m., an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

cibiārus, -a, -um, pertaining to food;

cibāria, -ōrum, provisions.

cibus, -i, m., food.

circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, about.

circuitus, -ūs, m., roundabout way, circuit.

circum, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, about.

circumveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventus, surround.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, nearer, hither; used of the Gallic province nearer Rome, *Cisalpine Gaul*.

citrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, this side, on this side of.

civitas, -tātis, f., citizenship, a state.

claudō, -ere, **clausī**, **clausus**, shut, close, shut up.

cliēns, -entis, m., a dependant, vassal.

coēmō, -ere, **coēmi**, **coēemptus**, buy up, purchase.

coepī, **coepisse**, **coeptus** (*no pres.*), began, have begun.

coērcēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, confine, restrain, check.

cognōscō, -ere, **cognōvī**, **cognitus**, learn, ascertain, recognize; *perf.*, know.

cōgō, -ere, **cōgī**, **cōactus**, collect, force, compel.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, exhort.

colligō, *see* **conligō**.

collis, -is, m., hill.

collocō, *see* **conlocō**.

colloquor, *see* **conloquor**.

combūrō, -ere, -bussi, -bustus, burn, burn up.
 commemorō, 1, mention, speak of, relate.
 commeo, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, go to and fro, resort.
 committō, -ere, -misi, -missus, join, trust, allow, commit.
 commodē, *adv.*, advantageously, conveniently, readily.
 commonefaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factus, re-, mind, admonish.
 commoveō, 2, move, stir, disturb, alarm.
 commūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, fortify.
 commutātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, a change, complete reverse.
 commutō, 1, change, exchange.
 comparō, 1, prepare, get ready, procure.
 comperiō, -ire, comperi, compertus, learn, discover.
 complexor, complexi, complexus sum, clasp, embrace.
 compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, fill up, cover.
 complūrēs, complūra, and complūria, many, several.
 comportō, 1, collect, bring together.
 cōnātum, -i, *n.*, an attempt, undertaking.
 cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, an attempt.
 concēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *intr.* with *dat.*, retire, withdraw from, yield to; *trans.*, concede, allow, give up.
 concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus, cut to pieces, kill.
 conciliō, 1, win over, secure, procure.
 concilium, -i, *n.*, a meeting, council.
 concursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, onset, charge.
 condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.
 condōnō, 1, pardon, forgive.
 condūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, bring together, collect, hire.
 cōnferō, -ferre, contuli, collātus, bring together, collect.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, crowded, dense.
 cōnficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, complete, accomplish, prepare, make.
 cōnfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum, *semi-dep.*, trust, rely on; with *dat.*, believe.
 cōnfirmō, 1, strengthen, establish, declare, assure.
 coniciō, -ere, conieci, -iectus (coniaciō), throw, cast, hurl.
 coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iunctus, join, connect, unite.
 cōniurātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy.
 conligō, 1, bind together, fasten together.
 conlocō, 1, place, arrange, give.
 conloquor, -loqui, locūtus sum, talk, confer.
 cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, try, attempt.
 conquirō, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitus (conquaerō), search for, hunt up.
 cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, kindred; as *noun*, kinsman.
 cōnsciscō, -ēre, -scivi, -scitus, resolve, take upon one's self; *mortem sibi cōnsciscere*, commit suicide.
 cōnscius, -a, -um, knowing, conscious, aware of.
 cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, enroll, enlist.
 cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, follow, overtake, secure.
 Cōnsidius, -i, *m.*, one of Caesar's officers.
 cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdi, -sessūrus, settle, halt, encamp.
 cōnsilium, -i, *n.*, plan, design.
 cōnsistō, -ere, -stiti, gain a footing, stand, halt; with *abl.*, consist.
 cōnsōlor, -āri, -ātus sum, comfort, console.
 cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.
 cōnspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, catch sight of, see.
 cōnstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitātus, place, establish, appoint, resolve, determine.
 cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētus, be-

- come accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont.
- cōsul**, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, *the chief Roman magistrate.*
- cōsūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus, waste, consume, destroy.
- contendō**, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, strive, hasten, contend.
- continenter**, *adv.*, continuously, continually.
- contineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (*conteneō*), keep together, restrain, bound.
- contrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, opposite, against, on the other hand.
- contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, indignity.
- conveniō**, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, come together, assemble; *trans.*, meet.
- conventus**, -ūs, *m.*, assembly, court.
- convertō**, -ere, -verti, -versus, turn around, change.
- convocō**, 1, call together, summon.
- cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, a supply, plenty; *pl.*, supplies, troops, forces.
- cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, full of supplies, wealthy, plentiful.
- corpus**, -poris, *n.*, body.
- cotidianus**, -a, -um, daily, customary.
- cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day.
- Crassus**, -i, *m.*, Marcus Crassus, *a wealthy politician and general.*
- crēdō**, -ere, crēdidi, crēditus, trust, believe (*with dat.*); suppose.
- cremō**, 1, burn, consume.
- creō**, 1, create, elect, choose, make.
- crēscō**, -ere, crēvi, crētus, grow, increase, become powerful.
- cultus**, -ūs, *m.*, cultivation, civilization.
- cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with.
- cum**, *conj. with indic.*, when, whenever, at the time when; *with subjunc.*, when, while, although, since, because.
- cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly.
- cupiditās**, -tātis, *f.*, eagerness, desire.
- cupidus**, -a, -um, eager, fond of, ambitious for.
- cupiō**, -ere, -ivi, -itus, desire, be eager for, wish well for.
- cūr**, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why.
- cūrō**, 1, take care, provide for; *with gerundive*, cause.
- custōs**, -tōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, watch, spy.
- damnō**, 1, find guilty, condemn.
- dē**, *prep. with abl.*, down from, about, concerning, of.
- dēbeō**, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitus, owe; *with infin.*, ought, must.
- decem**, *indecl. num.*, ten.
- decimus**, -a, -um, tenth.
- dēcipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (*dē-capiō*), deceive.
- decuriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a decurion, *commander of a squad of ten horsemen.*
- dēditicius**, -a, -um, surrendered, captive.
- dēditiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a surrender.
- dēfendō**, -ere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus, defend, ward off.
- dēfeticior**, dēfetisci, dēfessus sum, become exhausted, become weary.
- dēiciō**, -ere, -iēci, -iectus (*dē-laciō*), cast down, drive off; (*with spē*) disappear.
- deinde**, *adv.*, then, next, immediately.
- dēliberō**, 1, deliberate, consider.
- dēligō**, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus (*dē-legō*), choose, select.
- dēminuō**, -ere, -minui, -minūtus, lessen, impair.
- dēmōnstrō**, 1, point out, show, make known.
- dēmum**, *adv.*, at last, at length.
- dēnique**, *adv.*, at last, finally.
- dēponō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, lay down, lay aside.
- dēpopulor**, -āri, -ātus sum, ravage, lay waste.
- dēprecātor**, -ōris, *m.*, mediator, intercessor.
- dēsīgnō**, 1, indicate, mean.
- dēsistō**, -ere, dēstiti, cease, desist.

dēspērō, 1, cease to hope, despair.
dēspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectus, look down upon, despise.
dēstitūto, -ere, -stitui, -stitutus, abandon, desert.
dēstringō, -ere, -strinxi, -strictus, strip off, draw (a sword).
dēterreō, -ēre, -terrei, -territus, frighten off, prevent.
deus, -i, *m.*, a god.
dexter, *dextra*, *dextrum*, right (*not left*); *dextra* (*manus*), the right hand.
dicō, -ere, *dixi*, *dictus*, say, speak, name (*a day*); plead (*a case*).
dictō, -ōnis, *f.*, a speaking, pleading.
diēs, *diēi*, *m. and f.*, day, time.
differō, -ferre, *distuli*, *dilatatus* (*dis-ferō*), bear apart, defer, differ.
difficilis, -e, not easy, difficult, hard.
dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus (*dis-mittō*), send away, let go, dismiss.
discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, go apart, retire, depart.
discō, -ere, *didici*, learn.
disiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus (*dis-iaciō*), hurl apart, scatter, rout.
dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, place here and there, arrange, station.
dissimilis, -e, unlike.
diū, *adv.*, for a long time.
diūtius, *comp.* of *diū*, for a longer time, longer, too long.
dives, *gen.* *divitis*, rich; *superl.* *ditissimus*, richest.
Diviciacus, -i, *m.*, an Aeduan chief friendly to the Romans.
Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Swiss leader.
dividō, -ere, *divisi*, *divisus*, divide, separate.
dō, *dare*, *dedi*, *datus*, give.
doleō, -ēre, -ui, feel pain, suffer, grieve.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, grief, distress.
dolus, -i, *m.*, deceit, stratagem.
dubitō, 1, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain.

ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred.
dūcō, -ere, *dūxi*, *ductus*, draw, lead, conduct, consider.
dum, *conj.*, while, until, so long as.
Dumnorix, -rigis, *m.*, an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus, but unfriendly to the Romans.
duo, *duae*, duo, two.
duodecim, *indecl.*, twelve.
duodēviginti, *indecl.*, eighteen.
dux, *ducis*, *m.*, leader, guide.
ē, *prep.* with *abl.* See *ex*.
ēdūcō, -ere, *ēdūxi*, *ēductus*, lead out, bring out, take out.
effeminō, 1, make effeminate, weaken, enfeeble.
effērō, -ferre, *extuli*, *elātus* (*ex-ferō*), carry out, publish, elate.
ego, *mei*, *pers. pron.*, I.
ēgredior, *ēgredi*, *ēgressus sum* (*ex-gradior*), go out, depart.
ēgregius, -a, -um, distinguished, uncommon.
ēmittō, -ere, *ēmisi*, *ēmissus*, send forth, let go, hurl.
ēmō, -ere, *ēmi*, *ēemptus*, buy, purchase.
enim, *conj.*, for.
ēnūntiō, 1, make known, report.
eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
eō, *ire*, *ii* (*ivi*), *itus*, go.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
eques, -itis, *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.
equester, -tris, -tre, of the cavalry.
equitatus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
equus, -i, *m.*, horse.
ēripiō, -ere, *ēripiui*, *ēreptus* (*ex-rapiō*), snatch away, take from, rescue.
et, *conj.*, and; both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, also, even.
ēvellō, -ere, *ēvelli* and *ēvulsi*, *ēvulsus*, pull out.
ex (*ē*), *prep.* with *abl.*, out of, from.
exemplum, -i, *n.*, example, practice, precedent.
exeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go out, depart.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, opinion, estimate.
existimō, 1, judge, think, believe.
expeditus, -a, -um, unencumbered, easy, light-armed (*troops*).
explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout.
expūgnō, 1, take by storm, capture.
exsequor, **exsequi**, **exsecūtus sum**, follow out, follow up; **iūs exsequi**, enforce.
expectō, 1, look out for, wait, wait to see.
extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, outside of, beyond.
extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, last, at the end.
exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, *trans.*, burn up.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, easy.
faciō, -ere, **fēci**, **factus**, make, do.
facultās, -tātis, *f.*, power, opportunity; *pl.*, means, resources.
famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation.
familia, -ae, *f.*, body of slaves or vassals, household, retinue.
familiāris, -e, *adj.*, belong to a family, private, intimate; **rēs familiāris**, private property.
faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautus**, be favorable to, favor.
ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, generally.
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, bear, carry, endure, report.
ferrum, -i, *n.*, iron; *anything made of iron*: sword, dart.
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, belief, faithfulness, pledge, protection.
filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
filius, -i, *m.*, son.
finis, -is, *m.*, border, end; *pl.*, borders, territories.
finitimus, -a, -um, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors.
fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum**, be made, be done, become, happen (*pass. of faciō*).

firmus, -a, -um, strong.
flagitō, 1, demand, demand often.
fleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, weep, weep for.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
fluō, -ere, **flūxi**, **flūxus**, flow.
fortis, -e, strong, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, bravery.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, lot, fate; *pl.*, possessions, property.
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.
frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of a brother, brotherly.
frigus, -oris, *n.*, cold, cold weather; *pl.*, frosts, cold season.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, productive of grain; (*with rēs*) grain supply.
frūmentum, -i, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, standing grain.
frūx, **frūgis**, *f.*, fruit, produce; *pl.*, crops.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, running away.
fugitivus, -a, -um, runaway; *as subst.*, deserter.

Gabinus, -i, *m.*, one of the consuls of 58 B.C.
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, the ancient name for France, etc.
Gallicus, -a, -um, of the Gauls, Gallic.
Gallus, -i, *m.*, a Gaul, a native of Gaul; *adj.*, Gallic.
Garumna, *ae, m.*, the Garonne River.
Genāva, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva.
Germānus, -a, -um, German; *as noun*, a German.
gerō, -ere, **gessi**, **gestus**, bear, carry on, do, wage; **bellum gerere**, wage war, carry on war.
gladius, -i, *m.*, sword.
glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown.
gracilis, -e, slender.
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.
Graiocellī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.

grátia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, good-will, influence.

gravis, -e, heavy, severe, serious.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, severely, seriously, bitterly.

habēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, have, hold; *pass.*, be held, be considered.

Helvétii, -ōrum, *m.*, the Helvetians, a Celtic race inhabiting Switzerland in ancient times.

Helvétius, -a, -um, Helvetian, Swiss.

hibernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter; *neut. pl.*, hiberna, -ōrum, winter quarters.

hic, haec, hōc, this; he, she, it.

hiemō, 1, pass the winter, winter.

Hispania, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

homō, -inis, *m. and f.*, man, human being (*man or woman*).

honor, -ōris, *m.*, respect, honor, office.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, encourage, urge.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy, (*usually plu.*).

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, refinement.

humilis, -e, humble.

iactō, 1, toss, toss about, discuss, vaunt.
iam, *adv.*, already; *with a negative*, no longer.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow.

idem, eadem, idem, the same.

Idūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, 13th or 15th of the month.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.

ignorō, 1, fail to notice, not to know.

ille, -a, -ud, that; he, she, it.

illic, *adv.*, there, in that place.

immortalis, -e, immortal.

impedimentum, -i, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, (heavy) baggage.

impediō, 4, entangle, hinder, impede.

impendeō, -ēre, overhang.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general.

imperium, -i, *n.*, command, control, authority, power, empire.

imperō, 1, command; *with dat.*, order.

impetrō, 1, obtain a request, secure.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, charge.

importō (*in-portō*), 1, import.

improbus, -a, -um, wicked, reckless.

imprōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly.

in, *prep. with abl.* in, on, among, within; *with acc.*, into, on, to, against.

incendō, -ere, -cendi, -census, burn, set fire to, inflame, excite.

incitō, 1, set in motion, impel, arouse, incite.

incolō, -ere, -colui, inhabit, live, dwell.

incommodum, -i, *n.*, disadvantage, defeat, disaster, misfortune.

incrēdibilis, -e, incredible, marvellous.

inde, *adv.*, thence, from that place, from that time.

indiciū, -i, *n.*, information, evidence.

inducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead on, induce, draw on, cover.

inferior, -ius, lower, lower part of, weaker.

inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātus, bring, bring in, bring against; (*with bellum*), wage war upon.

inflectō, -ere, -flexi, -flexus, bend, bend down.

inflūō, -ere, -flūxi, -flūsus, flow into.

inimicus, -a, -um, hostile, unfriendly; *noun*, a personal enemy.

initium, -i, *n.*, beginning, origin.

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, insult.

iniussū, *m.*, only in *abl.*, without orders, without command.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, lack.

inopināns, *gen. inopinantis*, *adj.*, not suspecting, off one's guard, unaware.

insciēns, *gen. -entis*, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware.

insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, follow after, pursue.

insidiae, -ārum, *f.*, snare, trap, ambush, stratagem.

insigne, -is, *n.*, sign, badge, decoration.

insignis, -e, *adj.*, marked, distinguished, signal.

insolenter, *adv.*, insultingly, haughtily.

instituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, establish, appoint, teach, train, begin.

institutum, -i, *n.*, habit, practice, custom, institution.

instō, -āre, -stiti, -stātus, press on, be at hand, threaten.

instruō, -ere, -ūxi, -ūctus, arrange, draw up.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, learn, know, understand, realize.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among.

intercēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, go between, intervene, elapse.

intercludō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus (*interclaudō*), shut off, cut off, hinder.

interdiū, *adv.*, by day.

interdum, *adv.*, at times, meanwhile.

interea, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (*interfaciō*), kill, put to death.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.

intermittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, interrupt, stop, omit, let pass.

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.*, extermination, annihilation.

interpres, -etis, *m.*, interpreter.

intersum, -esse, -fui, be between, take part in.

intervallum, -i, *n.*, interval, distance.

invitus, -a, -um, unwilling.

ipse, -a, -um, himself, he himself, in person, the very.

ire, *see eō*, go.

is, *ea*, *id*, this, that, he, she, it.

ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly.

item, *adv.*, likewise, also.

iter, *itineris*, *n.*, march, journey, way, path, road, route.

iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus, bid, order, command *with inf. and acc.*

iudicium, -i, *n.*, judgment, trial, court.

iudicō, 1, judge, decide.

iugum, -i, *n.*, yoke, ridge, crest.

iumentum, -i, *n.*, a beast of burden.

iungō, -ere, iunxi, iunctus, join.

Iūra, -ae, *m.*, Jura, a chain of mountains in eastern Gaul.

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law.

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandi, *n.*, oath.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.*, justice, uprightness.

iuvō, -āre, iuvi, iūtus, help, aid.

Kalendae, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends, first day of the Roman month.

L., abbreviation for **Lūcius**, a Roman first name.

Labiēnus, -i, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army.

laccessō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, harass, attack, provoke.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, a tear.

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake.

largior, -iri, -itus sum, give freely, bribe.

largiter, *adv.*, abundantly.

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, generosity, lavish giving, bribery.

lātē, *adv.*, widely.

lātitudō, -inis, *f.*, width.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetians.

latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.

lōgatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy.

lōgātus, -i, *m.*, deputy, lieutenant-general, ambassador.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.

Lemannus, -i, *m.*, ancient name for Lake Geneva.

lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*, gentleness, smoothness.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.

liber, -era, -erum, free.

liberalitās, -ātis, *f.*, generosity, lavish giving.

liberē, *adv.*, freely, openly, without hindrance.

liberi, -ōrum, *m.*, children.
 liberō, 1, free, set free.
 libertās, -ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom.
 liceor, -eri, -itus sum, bid (*at an auction*).
 licet, -ēre, licuit, *impersonal verb*, it is allowed, it is permitted.
 Lingonēs, -um, *acc.* Lingonas, a *Gallie nation northwest of the Sequani*.
 lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
 linter, -tris, *m.*, *gen. pl.* lintrium, skiff, small boat.
 Liscus, 1, *m.*, chief magistrate of the *Aeduans 58 B.C.*
 littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter, epistle.
 locus, -i, *m.*, place, spot; *neut. pl.* loca, -ōrum, places, locality, region.
 longē, *adv.*, far, far away, by far.
 longitudō, -inis, *f.*, length.
 longus, -a, -um, long.
 loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
 Lūcius, -i, *m.*, Lucius, a *Latin first name*.
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus**, a *first name*.
 magis, *comp. adv.*, more, rather.
 magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistracy, magistrate.
 māgnopere, *adv.*, greatly.
 māgnus, -a, -um, large, great.
 māior, māius, *comp. of māgnus*, larger, greater; *pl.*, elders, ancestors.
 male, *adv.*, badly, ill.
 malefīcium, -i, *n.*, harm, mischief.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, prefer.
 malus, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked.
 mandō, 1, intrust, commit, order.
 manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band (*of soldiers*), force.
 Mārcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus, a *Latin first name*.
 matara, -ae, *f.*, spear, pike (*used by the Gauls*).

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
 mātīmōnium, -i, *n.*, marriage, matrimony.
 Matrōna, -ae, *m.*, the Marne, a river of *central Gaul*.
 mātūrō, 1, hasten, make haste.
 mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, early.
 māmē, especially, very.
 māmīus, -a, -um, largest, greatest, very great.
 medius, -a, -um, middle, in the middle; mediō colle, halfway up the hill.
 mellior, melius, *comp. adj.*, better.
 melius, *comp. adv.*, better.
 memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
 mēsis, -is, *m.*, month.
 mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, a trader.
 mereor, -ēri, -itus sum, win, earn, deserve, serve (*in the army*).
 meritum, -i, deserts, due.
 Messala, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala, *consul 61 B.C.*
 mētor, -īri, mēnsus sum, measure, deal, deal out, distribute.
 meus, -a, -um, my.
 mihi, *dat. of ego*, I.
 miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
 mīlia, *pl. of mille*.
 mīlītāris, -e, *adj.*, military.
 mille, one thousand.
 minimē, *superl. adv.*, least, by no means.
 minimus, -a, -um, *superl. of parvus*, least, very small.
 minor, minus, *comp. of parvus*, smaller.
 minuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, diminish, weaken, reduce.
 minus, *adv.*, *comp. of parum*, less.
 mīror, -āri, -ātus sum, wonder, marvel at, admire.
 mittō, -ere, misi, missus, send, throw.
 modo, *adv.*, only; just now, recently.
 molō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, grind.
 moneō, -ēre, -ui, -ūtus, warn, advise.
 mōns, montis, *m.*, a mountain.
 morior, mori (moriri), mortuus sum, die; moritūrus, *ful. part.*

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, linger, delay, detain.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom; *pl.*, customs, character.

moveō, 2, move, influence, break up (*camp*).

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, multitude, crowd, throng, large number.

multō, *adv.*, much.

multus, -a, -um, much; many (*in plu.*).

mūniō, 4, fortify.

mūnitio, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.

mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall.

nam, *conj.*, for.

Nammeius, -i, *m.*, a Swiss envoy.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.

-ne, *enclitic* used to mark the sentence as interrogative.

nē, *in independent sentences*, not; *introducing subordinate clause*, that not, lest.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, critical, pressing; *noun*, relative, kinsman, close friend.

negō, 1, say no, say not, deny.

nēmō, *dat.* nēmini, *acc.* nēminem, *m.* and *f.*, no man, no one, nobody.

neque or **nec**, *conj.*, and not, nor; *correl.*, neither . . . nor.

nervus, -i, sinew; *pl.*, force, power.

nēve, *continuing ut* or *nē*, or not, and not, nor.

nex, necis, *f.*, death, violent death.

nihil or **nīl**, *n.*, *nom.* and *acc. sing. only*, nothing.

nihiūm, -i, *n.*, nothing.

nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.

nītor, nīti, nīsus and nīrus sum, struggle, strive, exert one's self, rely upon.

nōbilis, -e, well known, noble, eminent.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*, nobility, the nobles.

nōbis, *dat.* and *abl.* of **nōs**.

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, wish not.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name.

nōminātim, *adv.*, by name, individually, expressly, in detail.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.*, ninety.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnne, *used to mark a question when the answer "yes" is expected.*

nōn nūllus, -a, -um, not none, some.

non nunquam, *adv.*, not never, sometimes.

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Norici.

Nōricus, -a, -um, of the Norici, Noric.

nōs, we, us.

noster, -tra, -trum, our; *plu.*, ours.

novem, *indecl. num.*, nine.

novus, -a, -um, new, recent, last.

novae res, revolution.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night.

noctu, *adv.*, by night.

nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unprotected.

nūllus, -a, -um, not any, none, no.

num, *used in direct questions when the answer "no" is expected; in indirect questions*, whether.

numerus, -i, *m.*, number.

numquam, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at the present time.

nūntiō, 1, announce, report.

nūntius, -i, *m.*, messenger, message, news.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently.

nūptum (*supine* of **nūbō**), to marry; **collocare nūptum**, arrange to marry (*used of women*).

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for.

obaerātus, -i, *m.*, debtor.

obiclō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus (**ob-iaciō**), throw in the way of, present, expose.

obsecrō, 1, implore, entreat.

obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*, hostage.

obstringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictus, bind.

obtineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (**ob-tenēō**), hold, occupy, secure.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting; **occāsus sōlis**, sunset, the west.

occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus (ob-caedō),
kill; **occisī**, the slain.

occultō, 1, conceal, hide.

occupō, 1, seize, occupy.

Oceanus, -i, m., the ocean.

Ocelum, -i, n., a town of the Gracoceli
on the western border of the province
of Cisalpine Gaul.

octō, indecl. num., eight.

octōgintā, indecl. num., eighty.

oculus, -i, m., eye.

**ōdi, ōdisse, ōsūrus, perf. form with
pres. meaning**, hate.

offendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus, strike
against, hurt, offend.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f., offence, loss.

omniñō, adv., altogether, at all, in all.

omnis, -e, all, every, as a whole.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, impersonal verb, it is
fitting, ought.

oppidum, -i, n., town, fortified town.

oppugnō, 1, attack, lay siege to.

ops, opis, f., aid, help, protection; **pl.**,
resources, power, wealth, means.

optimus, -a, -um, superl. of bonus,
best, very good.

opus, -eris, n., work, labor, fortifica-
tion.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., speech, address.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., a Swiss nobleman.

orior, -iri, ortus sum, arise, begin,
rise; **oriēns**, rising.

ōrō, 1, speak, beg, entreat.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, show
point out, declare.

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius**, a first
name.

pābulatiō, -ōnis, f., foraging, procuring
fodder.

pābulum, -i, n., fodder, green fodder.

pācō, 1, subdue, pacify.

paene, adv., almost, nearly.

pāgus, -i, m., district, canton.

pār, gen. paris, adj., equal.

parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.

pāreō, -ēre, -ui, obey, *with dat.*

pars, partis, f., part.

parum, adv., too little.

parvus, -a, -um, little, small.

passus, -ūs, m., pace (five Roman feet);
mille passūs, a mile.

pateō, -ere, -ui, be open, extend.

pater, -tris, m., father.

pator, pati, passus sum, suffer, bear,
allow, permit.

pauci, -ae, -a, few, a few.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsus, strike, beat,
drive out, defeat.

per, prep. with acc., through, by.

perducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead
through, construct.

perfacilis, -e, very easy.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bear
through, endure, submit to.

perficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus (perfaciō),
accomplish, finish, make, bring about.

perfringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus (per-
frangō), break through, violate.

perfuga, -ae, m., deserter, fugitive.

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgi, run away, flee.

periculum, -i, n., peril, danger.

peritus, -a, -um, experienced, skillful
with gen.

permovēō, 2, move, influence, arouse,
alarm.

perniciēs, -ēi, f., ruin.

perpauci, -ae, -a, very few.

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus, break
through, force a way through.

persequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, follow
up, pursue, attack.

perseverō, 1, persist, continue.

persolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus, pay,
suffer (a penalty).

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, per-
suade, *with dat.*

perterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territus,
frighten, terrify, alarm.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinui, tentus (per-
teneō), extend, pertain to, tend.

pervenitō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, arrive at, reach, come to.

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot.

petō, -ere, -ivi and -ii, -itus, seek, ask.

phalanx, -angis, *f.*, a phalanx, array of troops in close order.

pilum, -i, *n.*, javelin, *the distinctive weapon of the Roman legion.*

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Piso, consul in 61 B.C.

plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, *no pl.*, the common people, commons, plebeians.

plūrimum, *superl. adv.*, very much;

plūrimum posse, be most powerful.

plūrimus, -a, -um, very much, very many.

plūs, plūris, *neut. noun and adv.*, more; *pl.*, *adj.*, many, several.

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment.

polliceor, -ēri, -itus sum, promise.

pōnō, -ere, posui, -itus, put down, set, place; **castra pōnere**, pitch a camp.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.

populatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, ravaging.

populor, -ari, -ātus sum, ravage, devastate.

populus, -i, *m.*, people.

portō, 1, carry.

portōrium, -i, *n.*, customs, duty.

poscō, -ere, poposci, demand, claim.

possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, possession.

possum, posse, potui, be able, can.

post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, afterwards, after, behind.

postea, *adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, -a, -um, following, next, behind.

postquam, *conj.*, after.

postridiē, *adv.*, on the following day.

potēns, *gen. potentis*, *adj.*, powerful.

potentia, -ae, *f.*, power, influence.

potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power, ability.

potior, -iri, -itus sum, get possession of, *with abl.*; get control, *with gen.*

praecedō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, go before; surpass, excel, *with acc.*

praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (**praecapio**), anticipate, instruct.

praeficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**praefacio**), place at the head, put in command, *with dat.*

praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send ahead.

praeoptō, 1, choose before, prefer.

praesēns, *gen. praesentis*, *adj. and part.*, present, being present.

praesentia, -ae, *f.*, presence, the present time.

praesertim, *adv.*, especially.

praesidium, -i, *n.*, guard, aid, garrison.

praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitus and -stātus, excel, *with dat.*; furnish, exhibit, *with acc.*; (*impersonal*), it is better.

praesum, -esse, -fui, be at the head, be in command of, *with dat.*

praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, beyond, past, besides, except.

praeteritus, -a, -um (**praeteritō**), past, bygone; **praeterita**, things past, the past.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, general; a praetor, one of the chief Roman magistrates.

prex, *precis*, *f.*, prayer, entreaty. *Reg. in plu.*, rare in *sing. except abl.*

prēndō, -ere, -ndi, -nsus, seize, take, grasp; also **prehendō**.

pretium, -i, *n.*, price, value, reward.

pridiē, *adv.*, on the day before.

primum, *adv.*, first, at first.

primus, -a, -um, first.

princeps, *gen. principis*, *adj.*, first, chief, foremost; *noun*, prince, chief, foremost man.

principātus, -ūs, *m.*, leadership, supremacy.

prior, **prius**, *comp. adj.*, former, previous, prior.

pristinus, -a, -um, old, former.

priusquam, *conj.*, before, sooner than.

privātim, *adv.*, privately, as private persons.

privātus, -a, -um, personal, private;
noun, a citizen in private life.

prō, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, in behalf of,
 for, in view of, in proportion to.

probō, 1, prove, approve, show.

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give up, be-
 tray, hand down, transmit.

proelium, -i, *n.*, battle.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure.

proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum, start, set
 out, go, march.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (prō-habeō),
 restrain, keep off, prevent, check.

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (prō-iaciō),
 throw forward, cast down, abandon.

prope (*comp.* propius; *superl.* proximē),
adv., near; *also prep.* with *acc.*,
 near.

prōpellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive for-
 ward, drive off or back.

properō, 1, hurry, hasten.

propinquus, -a, -um, near, related; *pl.*,
 relatives.

prōponō, -ere, -posui, -positus, place
 before, state, explain.

propter, *prep.* with *acc.*, on account of.

propterea, *adv.*, on this account.

propterea quod, because.

prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look
 forward, provide for.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.

proximē, *superl. adv.*, lately, last, re-
 cently.

proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, last.

pūblicē, *adv.*, publicly, as a state.

pūblicus, -a, -um, of the people, public;
res publica, public interests, repub-
 lic.

puer, -eri, *m.*, boy, child.

pūgna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

pūgnō, 1, fight.

pūrgō, 1, make clean, free from blame.

putō, 1, reckon, think.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, Pyrenean; **Pyrē-
 naei** (montēs), the Pyrenees.

quā, *rel. adv.*, where, by which way.

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num.*, forty.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred.

quaerō, -ere, *quaesivī*, -itus, seek, ask,
 inquire.

quālis, -e, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, of what
 sort.

quam, *adv. and conj.*, how, than; *with
 superl.*, as much as possible; **quam
 diū**, as long as.

quantus, -a, -um, *rel. and interrog.
 adj.*, how great, how much, as great
 as, as.

quārē, *also quā rē*, on account of
 which thing, wherefore, why.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four.

quattuordecim, *indecl. num.*, fourteen.
-que, *enclit. conj.*, and.

queror, -i, *questus sum*, complain, la-
 ment.

qui, *quae*, *quod*, *rel. pron.*, who, which,
 that, etc.

quidam, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, a certain
 one, a certain thing.

quidem, *adv.*, certainly, indeed, at
 least; **nē . . . quidem**, not even;
emphatic word between.

quin, *conj.*, that, but that; **quin etiam**,
 nay even.

quindecim, *indecl. num.*, fifteen.

quingenti, -ae, -a, five hundred.

quini, -ae, -a, five each, five apiece.

quinque, *indecl. num.*, five.

quintus, -a, -um, fifth.

quis (*quae*), *quid*, (1) *interrog.*, who?
 what? (2) *indef. pron.*, any one,
 anything, some one, something.

quisquam, *quicquam*, *indef. pron.*, any
 one, anything.

quisque, *quidque*, *indef. pron.*, each one,
 each thing, each.

quō, *with subj.*, in order that; *used
 when clause contains a comparative.*

quod, *conj.*, because, that, the fact
 that; **quod si**, but if.

quōminus or **quō minus**, *conj.*, that not, in order that not, from.

quōmodo or **quō modo**, in what manner, how, as.

quoque, *adv.*, also, too.

quot, *indecl. rel. and interrog. adj.*, as many, as many as, how many.

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon (with four wheels).

rapina, -ae, *f.*, plundering.

ratio, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, reason.

ratia, -is, *f.*, raft.

Rauraci, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe on the Rhine.

recēns, *gen. -entis, adj.*, recent.

recipō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (*re-capiō*), take back, recover, receive; *sē recipere*, betake one's self, withdraw, retreat (*in good order*).

reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, give back, return, deliver.

redeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, go back, turn back, return.

redimō, -ere, -ēmi, -ēptus (*red-ēmō*), buy back, purchase, buy up.

redintegrō, 1, renew.

reditō, -ōnis, *f.*, a return, returning.

redūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead back, bring back.

referō, -ferre, rettuli, relātus, carry back, report; *pedem referre*, step backwards, *i.e.* retreat slowly.

rēgnō, 1, rule, be king, reign.

rēgnum, -i, *n.*, kingdom, rule, royal power.

reiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectus (*re-iaciō*), throw back, hurl back, drive back.

relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictus, leave, abandon.

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, the rest, future; *nihil reliqui*, nothing left.

removeō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, move back, remove, dismiss.

renūtiō, 1, bring back word, report.

repellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive back, repulse, repel.

repentinus, -a, -um, sudden, hasty.

reperiō, -ire, repperi, repertus, find, find out, learn.

reprehendō, -ere, -hendi, -hēnsus, restrain, blame.

repugnō, 1, resist, oppose.

rēs, rei, *f.*, thing, affair, circumstance, property; *res publica*, *see* publicus.

rescindō, -ere, -acidi, -scissus, cut down, destroy.

resciscō, -ere, -acivi and -scii, -scitus, discover, learn.

resistō, -ere, -stiti, stand still, stop; *with dat.*, resist.

respondeō, -ēre, -spondi, -spōnsus, answer, reply.

responsum, -i, *n.*, answer, reply.

rēspūblica, *reipūblīcae*, *f.*, state, republic, commonwealth, public interests.

restituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, set up again, restore.

retineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (*re-teneō*), hold back, detain, retain.

revertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, turn back, return (*usually deponent except in perf., plup., and fut. perf.*).

Rhēnus, -i, *m.*, the Rhine.

Rhodanus, -i, *m.*, the Rhone.

ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a stream*).

rogō, 1, ask, *with two accusatives*.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, of Rome, Roman; *subst.*, a Roman.

rūrsus, *adv.*, again, back again.

rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country (*as opposed to the city*).

saepe, *adv.*, often.

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

Santonēs, -um, *acc.* **Santonōs**, *m.*, a tribe of western Gaul, north of the Garumna.

sarcinae, -arum, *f.*, soldiers' packs, luggage (*borne on a staff*).

satis, *indecl. adj. and adv.*, enough, sufficiently.

satisfaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factus, satisfy,
make amends, apologize.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness.

sciō, -īre, -īvi, -itus, know.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.

sēcrētō, *adv.*, privately, separately.

secundus, -a, -um, following, second,
favorable.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdecim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen.

sēditō, -ōnis, *f.*, secession, mutiny,
insurrection.

sēditōsus, -a, -um, seditious, treasonable.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Gaul,
to the south of the Aedui.

sēmentis, -is, *f.*, a sowing, planting.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, the senate.

senex, senis, *m.*, an old man.

sēni, -ae, -a, six each, six apiece.

sentiō, -īre, sēnāi, sēnsus, perceive,
know, think.

sēparātīm, *adv.*, separately, privately.

septem, *indecl. num.*, seven.

Septentriō, -ōnis, *m.*, generally *plu.*,
Septentrionēs, -um, *lit.* the seven
plough oxen — the constellation of
the Great Bear, hence North.

septimus, -a, -um, seventh.

septuāgintā, *indecl. num.*, seventy.

sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial.

Séquana, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, a river of
Gaul.

Séquani, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of eastern
Gaul.

sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, fol-
low.

servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*, slavery, servitude.

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant.

seu, same as sive, or; seu . . . seu,
correl., either . . . or.

sex, *indecl. num.*, six.

sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty.

sextus, -a, -um, sixth.

sī, *conj.*, if.

sic, *adv.*, so, thus.

signum, -ī, *n.*, signal, military standard.

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest.

similis, -e, like.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time; simul
atque, *conj.*, as soon as.

sin, *conj.*, but if.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.

singuli, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by
one.

sinister, -tra, -trum, left (*not right*);

sinistra, *f.*, left hand.

sive, *conj.*, or if; sive . . . sive, *correl.*,
either . . . or.

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law.

socius, -ī, *m.*, ally, associate.

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun. *No gen. plu.*

solum, -ī, *n.*, soil, ground, bottom.

sōlum, *adv.*, alone, only.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister.

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, space of
time.

spectō, 1, look at, look toward, face.

spērō, 1, hope, expect.

spēs, spei, *f.*, hope.

spontis, *gen. of defective noun; abl.*

sponte, *f.*, of one's own accord, vol-
untarily, by one's own influence.

statuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, set up, think,
decide, pass judgment.

studeō, -ēre, -ui, be eager for, be de-
voted to (*with dat.*).

studium, -ī, *n.*, zeal, eagerness, study.

sub, *prep. with acc.*, under, towards;
with abl., under, at the foot of.

subducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, draw
up, withdraw.

subeō, -īre, -īvi and -īi, -itus, undergo,
endure.

subiciō, -ere, -lēci, -iectus, throw
under, throw from under.

sublātus, *see tollō.*

sublevō, 1, lighten, raise up, assist.

submoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, push
back, dislodge, repulse.

subsistō, -ere, -stīti, make a stand, halt.

subvehō, -ere, -vexi, -vectus, bring up, carry up.

succēdō, -ere, -cessi, come up, approach closely, take the place of.

sui, sibi, sē, sē, refl. pron. of the 3d pers., herself, himself, etc.

Sulla (Lucius Cornelius), *consul and dictator, 88 B.C.*

sum, esse, fui, be.

summa, -ae, f., total, sum, whole.

summus, -a, -um, highest, supreme, highest part of, top of.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take.

sūmptus, -ūs, m., expense.

superior, -ius, comp. adj., higher, earlier, stronger.

superō, 1, overcome, surpass.

supersum, -esse, -fui, be left over, remain, survive.

suppetō, -ere, -iī, -itus (sub-petō), be on hand, hold out.

suppliciter, adv., as a suppliant, as suppliants, humbly.

supplicium, -i, n., punishment.

suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (sub-capiō), take up, undertake.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus (sub-teneō), withstand, sustain, stop.

suus, -a, -um, refl. possessive adj., his, her, its, their own.

T., *abbr. for Titus, a Roman first name.*

tabula, -ae, f., board, writing tablet, list, record.

taceō, -ēre, tacui, be silent.

tam, adv., so, so much.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, yet.

tandem, adv., at length, finally.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, such.

tēlum, -i, n., a weapon, dart, missile.

temperantia, -ae, f., self-control, discreteness.

temperō, 1, control, refrain.

temptō, 1, try, attempt.

tempus, -oris, n., time.

teneō, -ēre, -ui, hold, have, keep.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

testis, -is, m. and f., witness.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of the Helvetians.

timeō, -ēre, timui, fear.

timor, -ōris, m., fear, alarm.

tolerō, 1, bear, endure.

tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublatus, lift up, elate, take, take away, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, -um, m., the inhabitants of Tolosa.

tōtus, -a, -um, all, the whole, total.

tradō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hand over, surrender.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus (trans-dūcō), lead across, transfer. *Ojten with double acc.*

trāgula, -ae, f., a Gallic javelin.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, on the other side of.

trānsēō, -ire, -iī, -itus, go across, cross, go over.

trānsfigō, -ere, -fixi, -fixus, pierce through.

trecenti, -ae, -a, three hundred.

trēs, tria, three.

triduum, -i, n., a period of three days, three days.

trigintā, indecl. num., thirty.

triplex, gen. triplicis, adj., threefold.

Troucillus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a Gaul.

tū, tui, tibi, tē, tē, pers. pron., thou, you.

Tulingi, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.

tum, adv., then.

tuus, tua, tuum, thy, thine, your, yours.

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv., where, when.

ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, punish, avenge.

ullus, -a, -um, any; as noun, any one.

ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther; Gallia ulterior, further Gaul (*north of the Alps*).

ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, most remote, last (*superl. of ulterior*).

ünā, *adv.*, together with, along with. unde, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, whence, from which.

undique, *adv.*, from every side, on all sides, everywhere.

ünus, -a, -um, one, alone.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city (*Rome in Caesar*).

ut, uti, *with indic.*, when, as; *with subjunc.*, that, in order that, so that, how.

uter, utra, utrum, *interrog. adj.*, which (*of two*)?

utroque, utraque, utrumque, each (*of two*), both.

uti, see ut.

ütör, -i, ütüs sum, use, employ, adopt *with abl. transl. as direct obj.*

utrumque, *adv.*, on both sides, on each side.

utrum, *conj.*, whether; *sometimes to be omitted in translation.*

uxor, -öris, *f.*, wife.

vacö, 1, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vadum, -i, *n.*, ford, shallow place, shoal.

vagor, -äri, -ätus sum, roam about, wander.

valeö, -äre, -ui, be strong, prevail, be well.

Valerius, -i, *m.*, a Roman name.

vällum, -i, *n.*, palisade, rampart, wall.

västö, 1, ravage, devastate, lay waste.

vectigal, -älis, *n.*, tax, tribute, revenue; vectigälës, taxpayers, tributaries.

vel, *conj. and adv.*, or, or even, even;

vel . . . vel, *correl.*, either . . . or.

veniö, -ire, veni, ventus, come.

Verbigenus, -i, *m.*, a canton of the Swiss.

verbum, -i, *n.*, word.

vereor, -eri, -itus sum, fear, dread.

vergö, -ere, slope, lie, be situated.

vergobretus, -i, *m.*, vergobret, chief magistrate of the Aeduians.

Verucloetius, -i, *m.*, an Helvetian.

vërüs, -a, -um, true.

vesper, -eris or -eri, *m.*, evening.

vester, -tra, -trum, your.

veteränus, -a, -um, veteran.

vetus, *gen. veteris, adj.*, old, former; *comp. vetustior; sup. veterrimus.*

vexö, 1, harass, annoy, ravage.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route.

victöria, -ae, *f.*, victory.

vicus, -i, *m.*, village.

videö, -äre, vidi, visus, see; *pass.*, be seen, seem.

vigilia, -ae, *f.*, a watch. The Roman divided the night into four watches from sunset to sunrise.

viginti, *indecl. num.*, twenty.

vincö, -ere, vici, victus, conquer; victi, *perf. pass. part. as noun*, the conquered.

vinculum, -i, *n.*, chain, bond.

virtüs, -ütis, *f.*, manliness, bravery, valor, virtue.

vis, vis, *f.*, strength, force, violence.

vita, -ae, *f.*, life.

vität, 1, shun, avoid.

vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty.

vöbis, *dat. and abl. of vös.*

vocö, 1, call.

Vocontii, -örum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe south of the Allobroges.

volö, velle, volui, will, be willing.

voluntäs, -ätis, *f.*, will, good will, consent.

vös, *pers. pron.*, you, yourselves.

vulgus (or vulgus), -i, *n.*, crowd, mass, common people.

vulnerö, 1, wound.

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

(able), be able, possum.
 about, *prep.*, circum, dē; *adv.*, circiter, ad.
 acceptable, acceptus, -a, -um.
 accomplish, perficiō, conficiō.
 accord, of one's own, sponte.
 (account), on account of, propter, ob;
expressed also by the ablative of cause.
 accuse, accūsō.
 across, trāns; lead across, trādūcō; go
 across, trānsēō.
 Aedui, Aedui.
 affair, rēs.
 affect, afficiō.
 afflict, afficiō.
 after, *prep. and adv.*, post; *subordinate*
conjunction, postquam; day after,
 postridīē.
 aid, *noun*, auxilium; *verb*, adsum.
 alarm, commoveō, permoveō.
 all, omnis; in all, omnīnō.
 Allobroges, Allobrogēs.
 allow, patior; it is allowed, licet.
 ally, socius.
 almost, ferō, paene.
 also, quoque.
 altogether, omnīnō.
 ambassador, lēgātus.
 among, inter, apud.
 and, et, atque, -que.
 announce, nūntiō.
 another, alius.
 anxious, cupidus; be anxious, cupiō.
 appoint, cōstituiō, dēligō.
 Aquitanians, Aquitāni.
 arise, orior.
 arm, armō.

arms, arma.
 army, exercitus.
 around, circum.
 arouse, commoveō.
 arrange, collocō.
 arrival, adventus.
 arrive, perveniō.
 ask, rogō, quærō, petō.
 assemble, conveniō.
 assembly, conventus, concilium.
 at first, primō.
 at once, statim.
 attack, *verb*, aggredior, oppugnō;
noun, impetus; make an attack,
 impetum faciō.
 attempt, *verb*, cōnor; *noun*, cōnātum,
 cōnātus.
 avenge, ulciscor.
 await, exspectō.
 (away), away from, ā (ab); be away,
 absum; carry away, tollō; keep
 away, prohibeō.
 (back), drive back, repellō, reiciō; go
 back, redeō.
 bad, malus.
 baggage (heavy baggage), impedimenta
 (*plu.*); luggage, sarcinae.
 band, manus.
 bank, rīpa.
 battle, proelium.
 be, sum; be away, absum; be able,
 possum; be on hand, suppetō; be
 in command of, praesum.
 bear, ferō; bear away, efferō; bear
 back, referō.
 beast (*of burden*), iumentum.

because, quod.
 become, fiō.
 before, *prep. and adv.*, ante; *adv.*,
 antea; *conj.*, antequam, priusquam.
 began, coepi.
 Belgian, Belga.
 between, inter.
 bitterly, graviter
 blame, accūsō.
 boat, nāvis.
 bold, audāx.
 boldly, audācter.
 border on, attingō.
 boy, puer.
 brave, fortis.
 bravely, fortiter.
 bravery, virtūs, fortitūdō.
 bridge, pōns.
 bring, ferō; bring back, referō; bring
 together, condūcō.
 broad, lātus.
 building, aedificium.
 burn, combūrō; burn up, exūrō.
 buy, cōēmō, emō.
 by, ab; or *ablative without prep.*

Caesar, Caesar.
 calamity, calamitās.
 call, appellō, vocō; call together,
 convocō.
 camp, castra (*plu.*).
 can, possum.
 capture, capiō.
 carry, portō; carry away, tollō; carry
 in, importō; carry on, gerō; carry
 out, efferō.
 cart, carrus.
 case, causa.
 Casticus, Casticus.
 cavalry, equitātus, *in sing.*; horsemen,
 equitēs, *in plu.*
 cavalryman, eques.
 Celts, Celtae.
 change, commūtātiō.
 (charge), be in charge of, praesum; put
 in charge of, praeficiō.

children, liberī.
 choose, dēligō.
 city, urbs.
 client, cliēns.
 collect, condūcō, cōgō, cōnferō.
 come, veniō.
 (command), be in command, praesum;
 place in command, praeficiō.
 common people, vulgus, plēbs.
 compel, cōgō.
 complain, queror.
 complete, cōficiō.
 conceal, abdō.
 concerning, dē.
 conquer, vincō, superō.
 conspiracy, cōiūrātiō.
 consul, cōsul.
 contend, contendō, pūgnō.
 control, imperium.
 council, cōncilium.
 country, rūs (*as opposed to city*); finēs.
 critical, necessārius.
 cross, trāseō.
 custom, mōs, Institutum.
 cut, caedo; cut off, prōhibeō, inter-
 clūdō; cut to pieces, concidō

daily, *adj.*, cotidiānus; *adv.*, cotidiē.
 danger, periculum.
 daughter, filia.
 day, diēs.
 death, mors; violent death, nex.
 decide, cōstituō, statuō.
 deep, altus.
 defeat, superō, vincō, pellō.
 defend, dēfendō.
 demand, poscō, petō.
 depart, proficiscor, abeō.
 departure, profectiō.
 desire, *verb.*, studeō (*with dat.*); cupiō;
noun, cupiditās.
 desirous, cupidus.
 desist, dēsistō.
 despise, despiciō.
 destroy, vāstō.
 devastate, vāstō, populor.

die, morior.
 (different), be different, differō.
 difficult, difficilis.
 difficulty, difficultās.
 direction, pars.
 disgrace, contumēlia.
 dismiss, dimittō.
 disposition, animus.
 distinguished, insignis.
 distress, dolor.
 Diviciacus, Diviciācus.
 divide, dividō.
 do, faciō, agō.
 down from, dē.
 draw up, instruō.
 drive, agō; drive back, repellō;
 rēciō.
 Dumnorix, Dumnorix.

eagerly, cupidē.
 easily, facile.
 easy, facilis.
 elate, tollō.
 elect, creō, dēligō.
 enemy, hostis (*public*), inimicus (*private*).
 enforce, exsequor.
 engage (in), committō, faciō.
 enroll, cōscribō.
 envoy, lēgātus.
 establish, cōfirmō, cōstituō.
 except, praeter.
 exhort, hortor, cohortor.
 experienced, peritus.
 extend, pertineō, pateō.

face, spectō.
 fall, cadō.
 far, longē.
 farther, *adj.*, ulterior; *adv.*, longius.
 father, pater.
 fear, timeō, vereor.
 fertile, frūmentārius.
 few, pauci; very few, perpauci.
 field, ager.
 fiercely, acriter.

fifteen, quindecim.
 fight, pugnō.
 find out, reperiō.
 first, primus; at first, primō.
 five, quinque.
 five hundred, quingenti.
 flight, fuga.
 follow, sequor.
 follow up, persequor, insequor.
 fond, cupidus.
 foot, pēs.
 for, *conj.*, enim (*postpositive*); nam.
 force, vis; forces, copiae.
 ford, vadum.
 form, faciō; form a plan, cōnsilium
 capiō.
 former, vetus, pristinus.
 fort, castellum.
 fortification, mūnitio, opus.
 fortify, mūniō.
 fortune, fortuna.
 four, quattuor.
 fourth, quārtus.
 free, *adj.*, liber; *verb* liberō.
 freedom, libertās.
 friend, amicus.
 friendly, amicus.
 friendship, amicitia.
 from, ab, dē, ex.

gain one's request, impetrō.
 garrison, praesidium.
 Gaul, Gallia.
 Geneva, Genāva.
 Germans, Germāni.
 get back, recipiō; get possession of,
 potior (*with abl.*).
 give, dō.
 go, eō; go often, commeō.
 god, deus.
 good, bonus.
 good will, voluntās.
 grain, frūmentum.
 great, magnus; great number, multi-
 tudō.
 grief, dolor.

grieve, doleō.

guard, praesidium.

hand, manus; **be on hand**, suppetō; **be at hand**, instō.

hand over, tradō.

happen, accidō, fiō.

harass, lacesō, vexō.

hasten, contendō; matūrō.

hate, ōdi.

have, habeo.

he, is, hic, ille.

hear, audiō.

heavy, gravis.

height, altitūdō.

help, *noun*, auxilium; *verb*, adsum.

Helvetian, Helvētius.

hem in, contineō.

hide, abdō.

high, altus.

himself *reflexive*, sē; *intensive*, ipse.

his, suus; *when not reflexive*, eius.

hither, ceterior.

hold, teneō, obtineō.

home, domus.

hope, *noun*, spēs; *verb*, spērō.

horse, equus.

hostage, obses.

hour, hora.

how, quomodō; **how great**, quantus.

hundred, centum.

hurl, iaciō.

I, ego.

if, si; if not, nisi.

immortal, immortalis.

impede, impediō.

import, importō.

in, in (*with abl.*); in all, omnino; in view of, pro.

influence, *noun*, auctoritās; *verb*, adducō, inducō.

inform, certiōrem faciō, commonefaciō.

inhabit, incolō.

insult, contumēlia.

intend, esse in animō.

interval, intervallum, spatium.

intervene, intercēdō.

into, in (*with the acc.*).

javelin, telum, pilum.

join, iungō; join battle, committō.

journey, iter.

keep away, prohibeo.

kill, interficiō, occidō.

kindness, beneficium.

know, intellegō, sciō; cognōscō (*in the perf.*).

Labiēnus, Labiēnus.

lake, lacus.

language, lingua.

large, magnus; large number, multitūdō.

law, lēx.

lay down, dēponō.

lay waste, vāstō.

lead, ducō.

leader, dux.

least, *adj.*, minimus; *adv.*, minimē.

leave, relinquo.

legion, legiō.

length, longitūdo.

less, *adj.*, minor; *adv.*, minus.

let, licet; patior; *or optative subjunctive*.

liberate, liberō.

lieutenant, lēgātus.

light-armed, expeditus.

like, similis.

likewise, item.

line of battle, aciēs; line of march, agmen, iter.

long, longus (*in distance*); diū (*in time*).

lower, inferior.

loyalty, fides.

magistrate, magistrātus.

make, faciō; be made, fiō.

man, homō, vir.

many, multi, plurēs.

march, iter; **make a march**, iter faciō;
line of march, agmen.

Marcus Messala, Marcus Messāla.

meanwhile, interim, interea.

memory, memoria.

merchant, mercātor.

messenger, nūntius.

mile, sing., mille passūs; *plu.* milia
passuum.

military, militāris.

mind, animus.

missile, telum.

month, mēnsis.

more, plūs.

most, *adj.*, plurimus; *adv.*, māximē.

mountain, mōns.

move, moveō.

much, *adj.*, multus; *abl. as adv.*, multō;
adv., multum.

name, *noun*, nōmen; *verb*, appellō.

narrow, angustus.

narrowly, angustē.

near, *prep. and adv.*, prope; *nearer*,
citerior, propior; *nearest*, proximus.

necessary, necessārius.

neighbor, finitimus.

new, novus.

next, proximus.

nine, novem.

nobility, nobilitās.

noble, nobilis.

Noreia, Nōreia.

not, nōn.

nothing, nihil.

now, nunc, iam.

number, numerus; **great number**,
multitūdō.

obtain, obtineō; **obtain one's request**,
impetrō.

ocean, Oceanus.

offer, offerō.

often, saepe; **go often**, commeō.

oh that, utinam.

on, in (*with the abl.*).

once (at once), statim.

one, unus.

onset, impetus.

opportunity, facultās.

oppose, resistō, repugnō.

or, aut; **either . . . or**, aut . . . aut.

order, iubeō *with acc. and infin.*; im-
perō, *with dat. and ut with subjunc-*
tive.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix.

other, alius (*of more than two*); alter
(*of two*); **the others**, reliqui.

ought, oportet, dēbeō.

our, noster.

out of, ex.

over, super; **be over**, praesum.

overcome, superō, vincō.

overhang, impendeō.

own, his own, their own, suus.

pace, passus.

part, pars.

peace, pax.

people, populus; **common people**,
vulgus, plēbs; **multitude**, multi-
tūdō.

perceive, videō, intellegō, perspicio.

permit, patior; **is permitted**, licet.

persuade, persuādeō.

pieces (*cut to pieces*), concidō.

pitch, pōnō.

place, *noun*, locus; *verb*, collōcō, pōnō;

place in command, praeficiō.

plan, cōnsilium, ratiō.

plead, dicō.

plot, coniūratiō, cōnsilium.

popularity, grātia.

possession, possēssiō, fortūna.

possible, *with superlatives*, quam.

power, potestās; **royal power**, rēgnum.

powerful, potēns.

prefer (*wish more*), mālō; **choose in**
preference, praeoptō.

prepare, comparō, parō.

prepared, parātus.

present, *noun*, praesentia; *verb*, dō.

prevent, prohibeō, impediō.
 previous, superior, posterus.
 promise, polliceor.
 prosperity, secundae rēs.
 protection, praesidium.
 province, prōvincia.
 punishment, poena.
 purchase, coēmō.

quantity, cōpia.
 quarters (winter quarters), hiberna.
 quickly, celeriter.

raft, ratis.
 rampart, vāllum.
 ravage, vāstō, populor.
 reach, perveniō (*with ad and acc.*);
 attingō, capiō.
 ready, parātus.
 reason, causa.
 receive, accipiō.
 recent, recēns.
 refinement, hūmānitās.
 relative, necessārius, propinquus.
 rely, nitor.
 remarkable, insignis, egregius.
 remember, memoriā teneō (*with acc.*).
 remove, removeō, tollō.
 reply, respondeō.
 request (obtain one's request), impetrō.
 rescue, ēripiō, servō.
 resist, resistō, repugnō.
 resort, commeō.
 rest of the, reliquus.
 retainer, cliēns.
 retreat, sē recipere, pedem referre.
 return, revertor, redeō; give back,
 reddō.
 revolution, novae rēs.
 Rhine, Rhēnus.
 Rhone, Rhodanus.
 rich, dives.
 right, iūs.
 ripe, mātūrus.
 river, flūmen.
 road, iter, via.

Roman, Rōmānus.
 Rome, Rōma.
 royal power, rēgnum.

safety, salūs.
 same, Idem.
 Santones, Santonēs.
 say, dicō.
 scout, explōrātor.
 second, alter.
 see, videō.
 seek, petō, quærō.
 Seine, Sēquana.
 seize, occupō.
 select, dēligō.
 senate, senātus.
 send, mittō; send ahead, praemittō.
 separate, dīvidō.
 Sequanian, Sēquanus.
 (set), set fire to, incendō.
 set out, proficiscor.
 seventh, septimū.
 several, plūrēs.
 she, ea, haec, illa.
 shield, scūtum.
 ship, nāvis.
 show, ostendō, dēmōnstrō.
 side, latus, pars.
 sight, cōspectus.
 since, cum.
 sixteen, sēdecim.
 skilled, perītus.
 skillful, perītus.
 snatch, ēripiō.
 so, ita, tam; so great, tantus.
 soldier, miles.
 space, spatium.
 Spain, Hispānia.
 spear, tēlum.
 speed, celeritās.
 spirit, animus.
 standard, signum.
 state, civitās, rēs pūblica.
 sudden, subitus.
 suddenly, subitō, dē improvīsō.
 sunset, occāsus solis.

supply, cōpia.
 surpass, praecēdō (*acc.*); praestō (*dat.*).
 sustain, sustineō.
 swift, celer.
 swiftly, celeriter.
 Swiss, Helvētius.
 sword, gladius.

 take, capiō; take away, tollō.
 ten, decem.
 tenth, decimus.
 territories, finēs.
 than, quam.
 that, *pron.* is; ille; *conj.* (in order that), (so that), ut.
 their, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *not reflexive*, eōrum, eārum.
 them, eōs, eās, ea; themselves, *reflexive*, sē; *intensive*, ipsī.
 there (to that place), eō; (in that place), ibi.
 they, ei, eae, ea; hi, hae, haec; illi, illae, illa.
 thing, res.
 think, arbitror, existimō, putō.
 third, tertius.
 this, hic, is.
 those, ei, illi.
 (thoroughly), thoroughly frightened, perterreō.
 though, quamquam, etsi, cum.
 thousand, mille.
 three, trēs.
 through, per.
 throw, iaciō, coniciō.
 throw down, dēiciō.
 time, tempus.
 to, ad.
 together, unā; bring together, cōdūcō, cōnferō.
 too little, parum.
 touch upon, attingō.
 toward, ad.
 town, oppidum.
 trader, mercātor.

treachery, perfidia, insidiae.
 trench, fossa.
 triple, triplex.
 troops, cōpiae.
 try, cōnor.
 twelve, duodecim.
 two, duo.
 two hundred, ducenti.

 under, sub.
 undergo, subeō.
 unfavorable, adversus.
 unlike, dissimilis.
 unsuccessful, adversus.
 unwilling, invitus; to be unwilling, nōlō.
 upon, in.
 us, *see* I.
 use, ūtor (*abl.*).

 very, *ordinarily expressed by the superlative of an adjective or adverb*;
 very easy, perfacilis; very few, perpauci.
 victory, victōria.
 village, vicus.
 violence, vis.

 wage, gerō.
 wait, expectō.
 wall, mŭrus.
 wander, vagor.
 war, bellum.
 (waste), lay waste, vāstō.
 (watch), night watch, vigilia.
 we, *see* I.
 weaken, effēminō.
 weapon, tēlum; weapons, arma.
 when, *relative*, cum, ubi; *interrogative*, quāndō.
 which, *relative*, qui; (of two), uter.
 while, dum, cum.
 who, *relative*, quī; *interrogative*, quis.
 whole, tōtus.
 why, cūr, quārē.
 wide, lātus.

width, lātitudō.

(will), be willing, volō.

win, conciliō.

wing, cornū.

winter quarters, hiberna; *verb*, winter;
(pass the winter), hiemō.

wish, volō.

with, cum.

withdraw, discēdō.

within, in; *usually abl. without prep.*

without, sine.

withstand, resistō, sustineō.

wonder, admiror.

woods, silva.

worst, *see* bad.

wound, *noun*, vulnus; *verb*, vulnerō.

year, annus; yearly, annuus.

yoke, iugum.

you, *sing.*, tū; *plu.*, vōs.

zeal, studium.

zealous, be —, studeō.

INDEX.

(The references are to sections.)

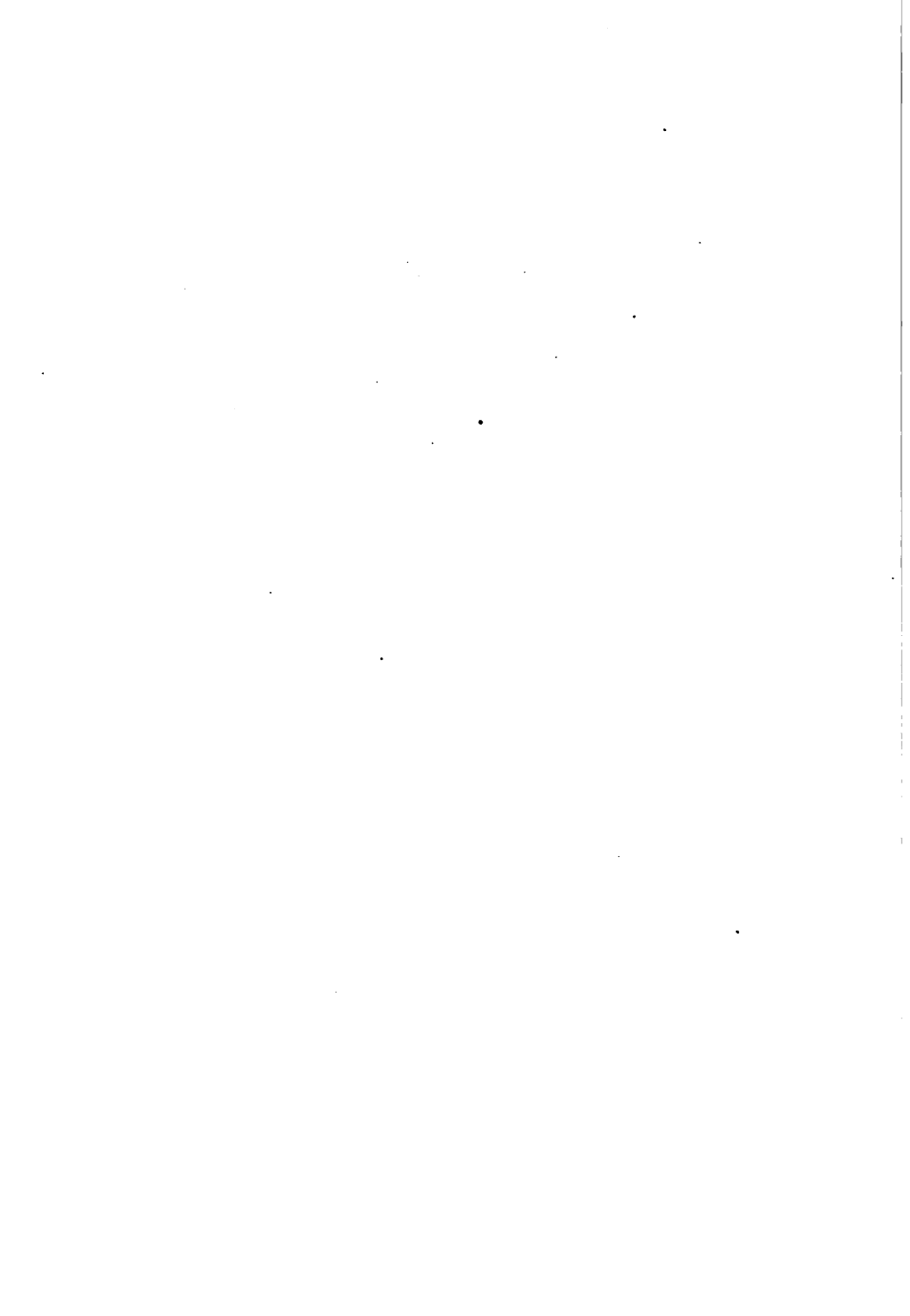
- Ablative case, 1.**
 absolute, 260-262.
 of accompaniment, 89.
 of agent, 193.
 of cause, 137.
 of comparison, 351.
 of degree of difference, 364.
 of description or quality, 303.
 of manner, 318.
 of means or instrument, 97.
 of measure or difference, 364.
 of place from which, 235, 236.
 of place in which, 243, 244.
 of separation, 68.
 of specification, 122.
 of time, 202.
 with deponents, 295.
 with *utor, fruor*, etc., 295.
- Accent, general laws of, Introduction, 10.**
 in contracted genitive and vocative of nouns in *-ius*, 87 (2).
- Accusative case, 1.**
 direct object, 18.
 double object, 504-507.
 extent of time and space, 174.
 place to which, 235, 236.
 subject of infinitive, 285.
 with compounds, 459.
- Acies, declension of, see *dies*, 181.**
 explanation of, 570.
- Adjectives, first and second declension, 43, 56, 106, App. 7.**
 third declension, 66, 222, 309, App. 10.
 one termination, App. 10.
 two terminations, 61, App. 10.
 three terminations, App. 10.
 irregular (genitive in *-tus*), 144-145.
 possessive, 473.
 predicate, 24 (3), 45.
 compared. *See* Comparison.
- Adverbs, comparison, 336, App. 13.**
 formation, 336.
- Agreement, of adjectives, 45.**
 appositives, 25, 38.
 participles, 45.
 predicate noun, 25.
 relative pronoun, 83.
 verbs, 11 (2).
- Apposition, 25, 38.**
- Base, 2.**
 distinguished from stem, 49, note.
- Causā. *See* Vocabulary.**
- Causal clauses with *cum*, 372.**
 with *quod*, 520-522.
- Commands and exhortations, 466.**
 Comparative, declined, 105, 329.
 special meaning, 328.
- Comparison of adjectives, regular, 104,**
 irregular, 309, 310, 326, 327, 335.
 of adverbs, regular, 336, irregular, App. 13.
- Complementary infinitive, 269-270.**
- Compounds, of *faciō*, 417.**
 of *ferō*, 379.
- Conditional sentences, 479-482.**
- Conjugation, I, *liberō*, App. 19.**
 II, *mōveō*, App. 20.
 III, *dividō*, App. 21.
 in *io*, *capiō*, 95, 172, App. 22.
 IV, *impediō*, App. 23.
 deponent verbs, 292, 293.
 irregular verbs. *See* *Ferō*, *Fiō*, etc.
- Consecutive declensions, synopses, conjugations, participles, etc., App. 30.**
- Consonant stems, 49, 50.**
- Contraction in genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 87.**

- Cum*, enclitic, with pronouns, 82, note 1, 184, obs. 3, 474, obs. 4.
Cum, with indicative, 320.
 with subjunctive, 320, 372.
- Dative case, 1.
 of agent, 425.
 of indirect object, 33.
 of possessor, 386.
 of purpose, 457.
 retained in passive, 498.
 with adjectives, 278.
 with compounds, 394.
 with special verbs, 254.
- Declension, definition, 2.
 I declension, 4, App. 1.
 II declension, 30, 42, 87, App. 2.
 III declension, 49, 50, 60, App. 3, 4.
 IV declension, 152, App. 5.
 V declension, 181.
 of adjectives, 43, 56, 61, 106, 222, 309.
 of comparatives, 105, 329.
 of pronouns, demonstrative, 66, 74, 199, 211.
 indefinite, 435.
 intensive, 183.
 interrogative, 433, 435.
 personal, 472.
 reflexive, 182.
 relative, 81.
- Defective verbs, 497.
 Deponent verbs, 292, 293.
Dividō. See Conjugation.
Domus, declined, 234.
domi, 243, obs.
Duo, declined, App. 9.
- Enclitic, 77, note.
Eō, 311.
Esse omitted, 323, note 2, 289, note 1.
- Fearing, verbs of, 443.
Ferō, 378.
 compounds of, 379.
Fiō, 416, 417.
 Future indicative active, formation of, 158, 164.
 Future perfect indicative active, formation of, 127-128.
 passive, 190-191.
- Gender, general rules, Introduction, 10.
 in first declension, 3.
 in second declension, 29.
 in third declension, Third Review, VII, p. 75.
 in fourth declension, 151.
 in fifth declension, 180.
- Genitive case, descriptive, 303.
 general meaning, 1.
 limiting, 2, 25.
 of the whole, 166.
 possessive, 76.
 subjective and objective, 450.
 with adjectives, 450.
- Gerund, 400, 401.
 Gerundive, as attributive adjective, 400, 401.
 as predicate with *sum*, 423.
 with *ad*, 401.
- Hic*, declension and use, 67-68.
- Id*, undeclined, 74.
Ille, declension, App. 16.
 distinguished from *hic*, 211.
 Imperative mood, 465.
 Impersonal verbs, 498.
 Indefinite pronouns, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 434, 435.
- Index of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, First Review, pp. 27-28.
 Indirect discourse, infinitive in, 284, 285.
 subjunctive in, 520.
 Indirect questions, 487, 488.
 Infinitive, formation, 268.
 historical, 511, note.
 tenses, 284-286.
 uses, 269, 270, 285, 343.
- Interrogative pronouns and particles, 433-436.
- Ipsē*, declension, App. 16.
 use of, 184.
Is, declension, 66.
I-stems, 60, 61.
- Liberō*. See Conjugation, App. 19.
 Locative case, 233 and note; form, 243.
 in what words used, 243, 244.
- Mālō*, 342.
Mille, as adjective, 167.
 plural as noun, 167.
Mōvō. See Conjugation, App. 17.

- Nē*, with subjunctive, 220, 443, 466.
-ne in questions, 436.
Nōlō, conjugation, 342.
nōlī, with infinitive, 466.
 Nominative case, 1.
 as predicate, 24, 25.
 as subject, 11.
Nōnne, in questions, 436.
Noster, declension, 56, App. 8.
 Numerals, 528, App. 14.
- Participles, declension, 252.
 formation, 251, obs.
 in deponent verbs, 293, obs.
 tenses, 251.
 uses, 250.
- Passive voice, 22.
 Perfect indicative active, formation of,
 113-114.
 passive, 190-191.
 Periphrastic conjugations, 423.
 Place to which, from which, in which,
 236, 244.
 Pluperfect indicative active, formation
 of, 127-128.
 passive, 190-191.
Plūs, declined, 329.
 Possessive adjectives, 473.
Possum, 276.
Postquam clauses, 534-535.
 Predicate adjectives, 10, 45.
 nouns, 24, 25.
 Principal parts of verbs, 112.
Priusquam clauses, 534-535.
 Pronouns, demonstrative, *is*, *idem*, etc.,
 66, 74, 199, 211.
 indefinite, *quis*, *aliquis*, etc., 435.
 interrogative, 433, 434.
 personal, 472.
 reflexive, 182.
 relative, 81.
 Pronunciation, Introduction, 4.
 Purpose, expressed by gerundive with
 ad, 401.
 relative clauses of, 358.
 by subjunctive, 220, 442, 443.
 by supine, 409.
 various ways of expressing, 410.
- Quantity, Introduction, 8.
-que, enclitic, 17.
 position, footnote, 77.
- Questions, direct, 436.
 indirect, 487, 488.
Qui, declension, 81.
- Relative clauses of purpose, 358.
 Relative pronoun, 81.
 Result, expressed by subjunctive, 227-
 228.
Rūs, 235, 236.
rūri, 243, 244.
- Sē*. See *Suā*.
 Sequence of tenses, 219, obs. 3, 489,
 490, 491.
Spērō, construction, 221.
 Stem, defined, 49, note 1.
 in conjugation, 16, obs. 3, 37, obs. 2,
 112.
 in declension III, 49, note 1, 60.
 perfect, 113.
 Subjunctive, formation of imperfect,
 217-218.
 formation of present, 209, 210.
 formation of perfect and pluperfect,
 226.
 general use, 208.
 hortatory subjunctive, 466.
 in conditions, 479-482.
 indirect discourse, 520-522.
 indirect questions, 487, 488.
 of purpose, 220, 442, 443.
 of result, 228.
 optative, 513, 514.
 various uses, 536.
 with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 534,
 535.
 with *cum*, 320, 372.
 with verbs of fearing, 466.
 Substantive clauses, 442-443.
Suā, declined, 182.
 distinguished from *is* or *ille*, 184,
 obs. 5.
 from *ipse*, 184, obs. 2.
Sum, App. 25.
 imperfect and future indicative, 120.
 perfect indicative, 103.
 present indicative, 8.
Supine, 407-409.
Suus, distinguished from *eius* or *illius*,
 184, obs., and Summary, 472, 473,
 formation and meaning, 473.
 Syllables, Introduction, 7.

- Synopses, 200.
consecutive, App. 30.
syntactical syllabus, pp. 279-281.
- Temporal clauses with indicative, 320, 535.
with subjunctive, 320, 535.
- Tenses, of infinitive, 284-286.
of participles, 251.
of subjunctive, 219, obs. 3, 489, 490, 491.
- Tense-signs, future, 158, obs. 164, obs.
imperfect, 135, obs.
- Tōtus*, declension, 144.
Trēs, declension, 63 (2), App. 9.
Ūnus, declension, 144, App. 9.
Utinam, with optative subjunctive, 513-514.
- Verb, rule for agreement, 11-12.
Vīs, declension, 301.
Vocative case, 1, 30, obs. 2.
Volō, 342.
Vowels, Introduction, 3, 8.
- Wishes, 513, 514.
Word list, pp. 275-278.





TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

A Latin Grammar for Schools.

By ANDREW FLEMING WEST, Ph. D., LL. D.,
Professor of Latin and Dean of the Graduate School,
Princeton University. 12mo. Cloth, 90 cents.

This book has been prepared for *schools* and for beginners in Latin. It is limited to the things most essential for the young pupil to know—the things he can grasp and use in reading his school authors.

The aim has been to state only the essentials, to define them as simply as the facts warrant, and to give as much explanation as will fasten them firmly in the mind. This involves the rejection of all unnecessary technical terms, unimportant exceptions, formal and pedantic modes of expression, and all refinements of doctrine that properly enter only after the school stage. As far as possible, everything has been put in a concrete way, that the pupil may see in his grammar the satisfying explanation of living usage, rather than the dissection of a lifeless material.

This grammar has kept strictly in view the developments in the teaching of Latin in our schools during the last ten years. It is planned to carry out fully the spirit of the resolutions on the subject adopted by the National Educational Association on recommendation of the American Philological Association. The author has taught Latin in both the Western high school and the Eastern academy, as well as in the college. During his whole career, his relations with secondary school work, particularly with the formulation of the program of Latin studies recently adopted by the National Educational Association, have been most intimate and constructive.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

Caesar's Commentaries.

By JOHN H. WESTCOTT, Ph.D., Professor of Latin and Tutor in Roman Law, Princeton University. Edition of seven books, \$1.25. Edition of four books, \$1.10.

In the introduction to this volume the editor presents the character of Cæsar to the student not merely as the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries, but as a real human being—one of the most powerful factors in the history of the world. Two editions have been issued: one containing the whole of the seven books; the other the first four books only, omitting text and notes of Books V, VI, and VII, leaving the introduction and vocabulary the same. The vocabulary is brief and compact, without such scientific and philological matter as would be beyond the grasp of the average high-school pupil. The text is fully and appropriately illustrated, notably in regard to the account of Cæsar's army, its organization, tactics, military engineering, etc. The notes to Books I and II are unusually full and comprehensive, containing many grammar references; the notes to the last books are briefer, directed mainly to following the narrative and allowing more rapid reading of the text. A bibliography is given, suggesting the best books for the teacher's collateral reading or study.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
NEW YORK. BOSTON. CHICAGO. LONDON.



